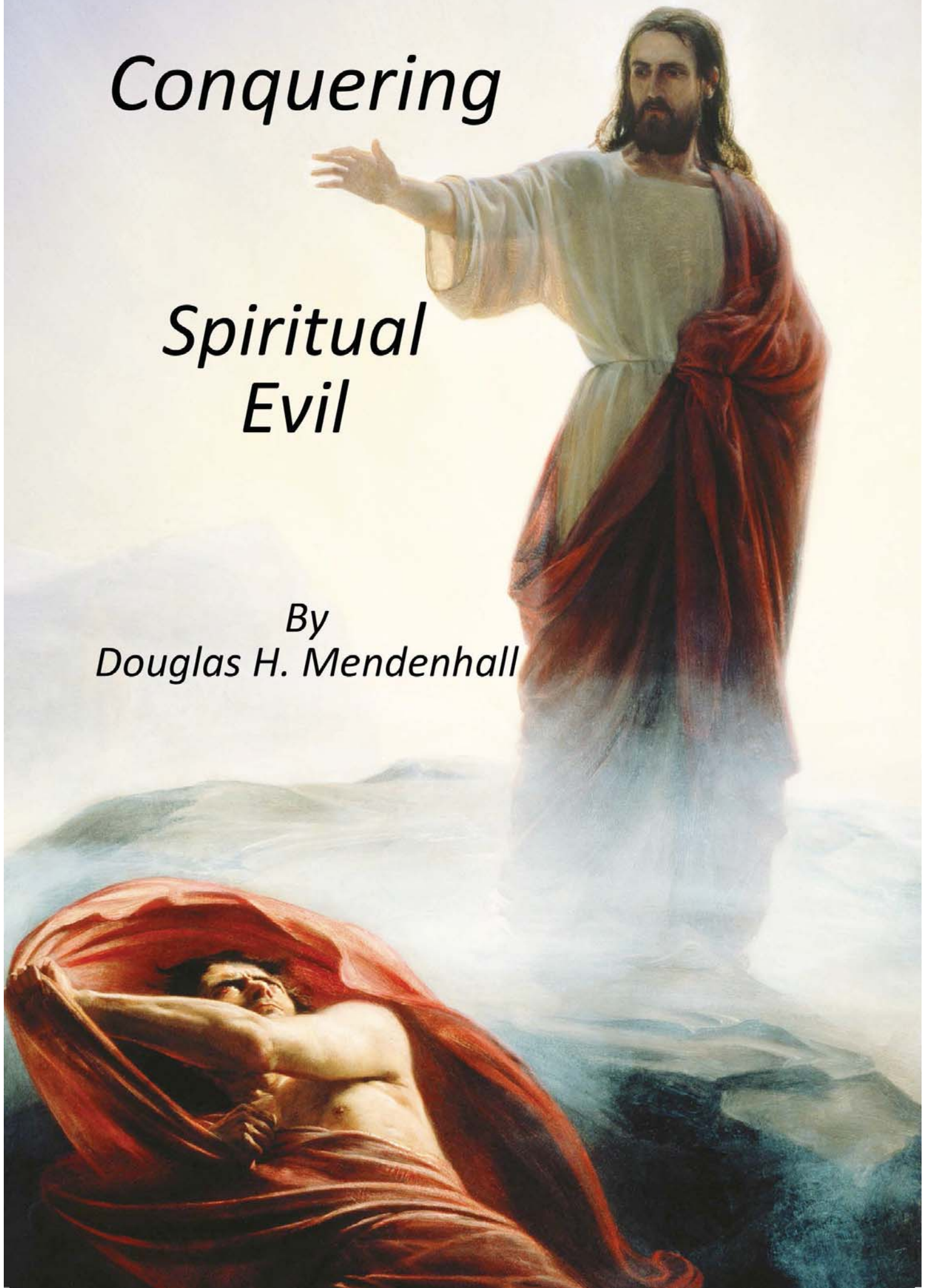


Conquering

*Spiritual
Evil*

*By
Douglas H. Mendenhall*



Conquering Spiritual Evil

Conquering Spiritual Evil



By Douglas H. Mendenhall

“...A man is saved no faster than he gets knowledge, for if he does not get knowledge, he will be brought into captivity by some evil power in the other world, as evil spirits will have more knowledge and consequently more power than many men who are on earth. Hence it needs revelation to assist us, and give us knowledge of the things of God.” Joseph Smith (DHC 4:588)

“The things of God are of deep import and time and experience and careful and ponderous and solemn thought can only find them out. Thy mind O man if thou wilt lead a soul into salvation must search into and contemplate the darkest abyss and the broad expanse of eternity, thou must commune with God.”

Joseph Smith (DHC 3:295)

Envision Press
West Valley City, Utah

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Copyright © 2011, 2012 by Douglas H. Mendenhall

All rights reserved under International and Pan-American Copyright Conventions. No part of this book may be used or reproduced in any manner whatsoever without written permission except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews. For information address the author at PO Box 282, Mt Pleasant UT 84647.

Published in the United States by Envision Press
West Valley City, Utah, USA

2nd Edition

Cover: “Casting Away Satan” by Carl Bloch
Used with permission

Table of Contents

PREFACE

Chapter 1

BE NOT AFRAID

~1~

Chapter 2

IS SPIRITUAL EVIL REAL?

~7~

Chapter 3

HOW DEEP DOES THE RABBIT HOLE GO?

~32~

Chapter 4

THE BEGINNING

~43~

Chapter 5

SPIRITUALLY GIFTED

~50~

Chapter 6

THE REALITY OF WAR WITH EVIL

~56~

Chapter 7

CHARACTERISTICS OF EVIL ENTITIES

~64~

Chapter 8

SPIRITUAL SHIELDING

~73~

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Chapter 9

EMOTIONS, SHIELDS AND FIERY DARTS

~90~

Chapter 10

INVITING LIGHT OR DARK

~105~

Chapter 11

LIGHT OF THE SPIRIT

~120~

Chapter 12

“POSSESSION”

~128~

Chapter 13

COMPLETE POSSESSION AND INTEGRATION

~153~

Chapter 14

SENDING DEMONS AND DEVILS TO THE LIGHT

~189~

Chapter 15

LITTLE CHILDREN AND POSSESSION

~197~

Chapter 16

EARTHBOUND SPIRITS

~213~

Chapter 17

HELPING EARTHBOUND SPIRITS MOVE ON

~229~

Chapter 18

LAYERED POSSESSION

~ 236~

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Chapter 19

PRIESTHOOD, WOMEN AND FAITH

~243~

Chapter 20

AGENCY

~253~

Chapter 21

BE SPECIFIC

~260~

Chapter 22

LETTING DARKNESS IN

~268~

Chapter 23

COVENANT AND CORDS

~284~

Chapter 24

IMPS AND OTHER ODDITIES

~290~

Chapter 25

PURE EVIL

~297~

Chapter 26

WEAPONS OF LIGHT

~308~

Chapter 27

LEARNING TO DISCERN

~330~

Chapter 28

NOTHING INDECOROUS

~241~

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Chapter 29

JESUS IS THE PATTERN

~350~

Chapter 30

CONCLUSION

~359~

APPENDIX I

~369~

Summary of Abbreviations Used:

DHC: the History of the Church

TPJS: the Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith

WOJS: the Words of Joseph Smith

JD: the Journal of Discourses

PREFACE

This book has taken over two years to write, nearly three to be honest. It is an effort that has taken this long because of the content. At first I didn't really want to acquaint people with spiritual evil, because most of those in the LDS church I've talked to don't want to know. It seems that we enjoy our ignorance and love keeping our head in the sand about some things, this being one of those at the head of the line. But as Joseph Smith said, we must "contemplate the darkest abyss" in order to understand the light.

It is finished, to the relief of my dear wife, who has suffered more than anyone else over this effort. It seems that spiritual darkness does not want the light of truth to shine upon it and they will do all in their power to thwart any effort to shine that light. I am grateful to Dianne for her patience, love, and understanding while I labored with this.

Thank you, Stephanie and Bev for your efforts with this unskilled craftsman. You both truly were a godsend, and it never would have happened without you. Hopefully you both can get back to your life now. I still find it amusing driving up to Bev's home and her coming out after reading the "Complete Possession" chapter. My, what big eyes you had! I didn't know if you would continue with it or not. Thank you, David for your kind efforts and willingness to help. You are certainly a true Saint.

Please forgive any and all errors, typos, etc. We are not professional people doing this work. It was written because we love the Lord and because He requested it.

I so appreciate all those willing to share their stories in order to help other people. It takes real courage to share what you have. It will help others, no doubt. Some names have been changed in the book to keep privacy.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

One of the hardest parts about writing this was how so much of the material overlaps. Therefore, some quotes are used more than two or three times. Please forgive me for that, they seem to fit each occasion. This work is my own effort and is not part of any church or organization. I don't purport to teach LDS doctrine in this book. I am just relating our experiences and those of others with spiritual evil, and hopefully offering some ideas that we have used in our lives in regards to conquering it. This comes from my own understandings and experiences. I hold no position in the church or community that would warrant anyone giving me any notice. I am grateful for that anonymity.

I am grateful for Ron Poulton, and him allowing me to use his paper "Experiencing Spiritual Evil in the Context of Psychotherapy." When I first read it I called him and said, "You are writing the theory and my family and I are living the reality." It has been a great friendship where I have learned much. Thank you.

It is my prayer that through sharing all of us can learn to not fear that which we don't know and understand. With that in mind I hope you read with an open mind, as there are concepts in this book you may not have thought about or understood before.

Douglas H. Mendenhall

Mt. Pleasant, Utah

October 12, 2011

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Definitions

Aura: The electromagnetic force field that emanates from living people, animals and plants. People with spiritual sight can often see the aura which reflects your health, thoughts, emotions, interests, and other information. It acts as a shield against outside negative influences, especially earthbound spirits, devils and daemons.

Bonds: A promise, obligation, or covenant which binds you to someone or something else.

Casting Out: The act of commanding dark entities to leave a human host, dwelling, or property.

Contracts: An enforceable agreement between two parties.

Cords: A long slender metaphysical structure connecting or attaching two objects to each other. They are made of astral and etheric energy and connect two people's spiritual bodies. Cords stretch between two people like an umbilical cord does between a mother and her baby. The cord will transfer emotional energy and possibly other types of energy between the two. Distance is not a factor in the effectiveness of a cord because it is not physical. Even after an umbilical cord is cut a baby will still have a "spiritual" cord attaching them to their mother. A husband and wife will have spiritual cords between them after sharing lives together and intimacy. Dark entities use cords to connect with us and to drain our energy. There are many types of cords but whatever the cause it is a connection between two beings on a spiritual level that allows for an exchange of emotional energy.

Curse: A prayer to dark powers for injury, harm or devices to come or to be placed upon someone.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Daemon or Demon: A creature of evil from other worlds or dimensions. They come from other spheres to help out the devils and Lucifer.

Device: A piece of evil/dark spiritual equipment or mechanism implanted for a special purpose. They mainly cause harm, inflict pain or other problems. They come in all shapes, sizes and are multi-functional.

Devils: The one third of our brothers and sisters that followed Lucifer in the pre-mortal war in Heaven and were cast out. They reside on this planet and are here to try to take our agency away from us and occupy our bodies.

Discerning of Spirits: The Prophet Joseph Smith spent a great deal of time attempting to describe how to discern between good and evil spirits. George A. Smith, Joseph's nephew reported, "There was no point upon which the Prophet Joseph Smith dwelt more than the discerning of Spirits (Minutes of Meetings held in Provo City, 28 November 1869, Church Archives; see also WJS, p. 21)

The Prophet Joseph Smith stated, "...A man is saved no faster than he gets knowledge, for if he does not get knowledge, he will be brought into captivity by some evil power in the other world, as evil spirits will have more knowledge, and consequently more power than many men who are on the earth. Hence it needs revelation to assist us, and give us knowledge of the things of God." (DHC 4:588)

Earthbound Spirit: The spirit of a person who has died which stays bound to this earthly realm and cannot or will not move on to the spirit world for various reasons.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Evil: In spite of the many definitions of evil, in this text evil will be described as events or experiences involving demons, devils, or unclean spirits, those entities that have an absence of light, working for or doing the bidding of the adversary.

Ghost Hunters and Debunkers: Entire industries have been built on this phenomenon. For example, Bill Murray, Dan Aykroyd, and Harold Ramais in Columbia Pictures' 1984 release of Ghostbusters, attempted to clear or cleanse areas where these earthbound spirits and devils haunt or reside. TV shows and Hollywood portrayals sensationalize these spiritual phenomena in an attempt to entertain the idle and curious. But the premise of the author is that spiritual phenomena exists as a natural part of the mortal experience and that anyone can utilize the power of God through knowledge, spiritual gifts, and power of the spoken word in the name of Jesus Christ to cast out evil from their own lives. With this knowledge, one can be aware of what is actually going on and, therefore, make conscious choices as they "listen" to these "promptings" and can choose good from evil. (Moroni 7:12-13, 15-19).

Hex: An evil spell or curse designed to bring bad luck on someone.

Imp: A small demon, usually trained to do one specific task.

Implant: Usually a dark spiritual device inserted into a human host to facilitate dark growth or absorption. It is usually implanted below the surface of the skin, sometimes quite deep.

Lucifer: Our brother who rebelled against God and was cast out of His presence to this sphere along with one third of our brothers and sisters. Referring to Lucifer the scriptures record, "How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the

Conquering Spiritual Evil

morning!” (Isaiah 14:12), and of his followers they refer, “for he had drawn away many after him.” (Moses 4:6) One third part followed him, “...For he rebelled against me, saying, Give me thine honor, which is my power; and also a third of the hosts of heaven turned he away from me because of their agency.” (D&C 29:36) This third part gave their agency to Lucifer; they lost the light they possessed and were cast to this earth to torment man and are Lucifer’s agents or devils.

Near-death experience: The experience of nearly dying; suffering a clinical death with the loss of all vital signs, commonly called an NDE. Typically the person’s spirit will transition through a white light, have relatives or friends there to greet them, or meet the Savior. Most believe they have gone to heaven, but in reality they have only visited the spirit world or spirit prison. We only go to “heaven” after we are resurrected and receive our inheritance.

Portal: An entry way into our physical world. Think of the “tunnel of light” that people have reported they enter when they have had a near death experience. This is a portal from our world to the spirit world of paradise and prison. On the other side of the spectrum, the dark side, portals are created to move from their realm to ours. Earthbound spirits and devils are already here. Demons and others have need of portals to enter our existence to do their evil deeds and inflict their pain.

Possession: When a demon, devil, or earthbound gets through your aura and either enters your body or attaches to it with the intent to control. The more it assimilates with the person the more control it has over that individual.

Reality of Evil: From an LDS perspective, one cannot accept the existence of divine angels without accepting the reality of

Conquering Spiritual Evil

demons. All things have their opposites, or as our scriptures declare, there “is opposition in all things.” If one desires to see and experience celestial climes, one must also comprehend the depth of hellish spheres.

While enduring one of the most grueling experiences of his life, the Prophet Joseph Smith wrote an epistle to the Church from Liberty jail dated March 25, 1839. In it he taught, “the things of God are of deep import; and time, and experience, and careful and ponderous and solemn thoughts can only find them out. Thy mind, O man! if thou wilt lead a soul unto salvation, must stretch as high as the utmost heavens, and search into and contemplate the darkest abyss, and the broad expanse of eternity...”. (DHC 3:289-305; see also TPJS p. 137)

When one embraces the idea that angels and devils from an unseen realm actually exist, many events in this mortal sphere begin to make sense. Events no longer become just occurrences or coincidences, but can be seen as tests, trials, afflictions, all blessings that can be used to bless our lives through the grace and power of God.

Spirits: Spirits, or as some call them, energy bodies, are the true personalities or life substance that animates a mortal body. They have intelligence and are the intelligences that have lived forever. Abraham saw these spirits or intelligences and described his vision. “Now the Lord had shown unto me, Abraham, the intelligences that were organized before the world was...” (Abraham 3:22) Furthermore, he saw that there were gradations of intelligences. Some were more advanced than others with divisions of responsibility (Abr. 3:24) and God was “more intelligent than they all” (Abr. 3:19). Some radiated with more light or at a higher frequency than others.

We learned from Abraham that before we were born into this mortal body we co-existed with God and other individual spirits. While there we learned, made choices, and in

Conquering Spiritual Evil

many cases, developed spiritual powers and abilities or gifts to one degree or another. The common thread among us experiencing mortality on earth was that each of us desired a body and were therefore born into this life, each having different degrees of power, intelligence, talents and desires, some being influenced more for good and others for evil.

Spirit has substance and can only be seen or perceived by those individuals with spiritual gifts to do so or who have no veil. “All spirit is matter, but it is more fine or pure, and can only be discerned by purer eyes. We cannot see it; but when our bodies are purified we shall see that it is all matter.” (D&C 131:7-8) Everything is comprised of spirit and physical matter. Spirit has a frequency and can be felt and seen. The spirit gives the body animation. When our spirit leaves our physical body and we transition beyond the veil from time back into eternity, we will be once again able to see our surroundings as they are and be able to move and communicate without restraint.

Spirit Communication: Spirits do not need to use vocal chords, sound waves and words to communicate. They use thoughts. When a concept is transferred from the other side of the veil to this temporal side of the veil, it is received through a process known as revelation. It can be compared to a download of a computer. It is received by a person’s spirit and is often manifested as a thought in a person’s mind. Joseph taught about spiritual things, “All things whatsoever God in his infinite wisdom has seen fit and proper to reveal to us, while we are dwelling in mortality, in regard to our mortal bodies, are revealed to us in the abstract, and independent of affinity of this mortal tabernacle, but are revealed to our spirits precisely as though we had no bodies at all; and those revelations which will save our spirits will save our bodies.” (April 8, 1844, DHC 6:318-320; see also TPJS p. 355)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Spirit of God: The “Spirit of God” in this passage represents all those beings of light from higher or heavenly realms that can and do assist in our earthly journey. Two categories of heavenly beings exist. “There are two types of beings in heaven, namely: Angels, who are resurrected personages, having bodies of flesh and bones—Secondly, the spirits of just men made perfect, they who are not resurrected but inherit the same glory.” (D&C 129:1, 3)

This may also include a class of spirits to whom some refer as guardian angels. These may be relatives, friends, or unknown spirits whose role in our life is to guard, protect, warn, inspire, and assist us during our mortal existence.

Spiritual Gifts: Some individuals have held that spiritual gifts are exclusive to the righteous or only certain members of specific sects or religions. This mistaken belief has caused some level of contention among some members of the LDS community also. The scriptures teach that all people are children of God and are therefore entitled to certain individual gifts. While it is true that all spiritual gifts can be experienced in the church, gifts are not limited to any one people, sect, or religion. Because we are all spirit beings and children of God, we are all connected. Every man, woman and child ever born into this sphere comes with a gift whether recognized, developed, or ignored. “And all gifts come by the Spirit of Christ; and they come unto every man severally, according as he will.” (Moroni 10:17) Severally means individually, independent, or apart from others. Why is every person given a different gift? “For verily I say unto you, they are given for the benefit of those who love me and keep all my commandments, and him that seeketh so to do; that all may be benefited that seek or that ask of me.” (D&C 46:17) They are given to each person to benefit and help others.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Spiritual Shield: A spiritual device of energy or light that can surround our being preventing physical and spiritual harm to us. It can operate as the person intends it to operate, meaning several layers thick or it can be reflective, meaning it allows nothing of darkness to come through while allowing light to do so. The variations are only limited by our imagination and what we desire to create.

Spiritual Sight: Most all mortals miss much that is going on about them because the temporal realm veils the spiritual realm until we learn to “see” again. Some refer to our spiritual eyes or third eye being opened to when we see or perceive spiritual things. This spiritual sight can be bestowed spontaneously or developed. I have seen both. There are those who never lost their spiritual sight from birth or as they matured physically. There are more who have limited sight as a result of God spontaneously bestowing a gift on them or their having developed this gift to see. Whether a person never lost this sight or whether it came as a gift, we will refer to all of these people as “gifted” or to those who “can see” or who “have spiritual sight.” They can see what is going on in the spiritual realm particularly with angels or spirits while many are still blind to spiritual things in this temporal realm. Many can see and understand energies, the human aura, and other things we may not have considered to be in the spiritual realm, but certainly are.

Some have questioned these gifted people who can “see” while they themselves cannot. Some have asked in curiosity while others asked in skepticism, unbelief, and jealousy. Most people can develop this gift to some extent but with limited capabilities. However, those who do see with unlimited sight bear a weighty burden and contend mightily with evil forces along with their enjoying the association of angels. It is a gift that is a two-edged sword that cuts both ways.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Tools/Weapons of Darkness: These are dark spiritual tools and weapons created by the adversary and his minions to inflict pain on other beings whether they are mortal or spiritual. The scriptures refer to the arrows and darts of the adversary. These are just two of a myriad of tools and weapons employed by darkness to inflict pain and injury on others. (Eph. 6:16; 1 Nephi 15:24; D&C 3:8) Though the tools and weapons are spiritual they can cause physical discomfort and injury.

Types of Spirits: The Prophet Joseph explained in elementary terms that there are three types of spirits. He instructed, “There are three independent principles—the spirit of God, the spirit of man, and the spirit of the devil. All men have power to resist the devil. They who have tabernacles have power over those who have not.”

In this mortal plane we, “the spirit of man,” experience different levels or dimensions of spirituality. A full spectrum exists. Different entities that we encounter from spiritual realms possess different frequencies. They range in this spectrum from pure godliness and purity, “the spirit of God,” to pure evil and darkness, “the spirit of the devil.” Some are helpful in life’s journey while other’s purpose is to detract and destroy.

Veil and the Spirit of Man: The spirit of man represents each of us who have been born into mortality. We each have a body of spirit, light, intelligence, and energy along with a body of flesh and bones. The veil of the spirit body is the body of flesh and bones. This veil inhibits one’s ability to “see” spiritual realms so that each individual can live by faith rather than by sight in perfecting the flesh by obedience to the commandments of God. This body primarily uses the sensory means of touch, taste, smell, sight and sound. When we die, nothing more than a separation of mortal body and spirit occurs, our spirit lives on and we can again enjoy spiritual powers and abilities we once

Conquering Spiritual Evil

enjoyed before we were limited by our mortal bodies in a spiritual sphere.

Weapons of Light: Those tools given to us by our Savior that allow us to combat darkness. They range from His Spirit, the Holy Ghost, and temple garments to more “metaphysical” things such as spiritual shields and swords.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Chapter One

BE NOT AFRAID

“For the thing which I greatly feared is come upon me, and that which I was afraid of is come unto me.” (Job 3:25)

“For as he thinketh in his heart, so is he...”
(Proverbs 23:7)

Those who have studied the human mind and how the subconscious works know the above scriptures are true. We do bring upon us whatever it is we fear the most. Scientific tests have confirmed that the heart does have its own neurological system and thinks for itself. That is quite fascinating when one contemplates the scriptures talking about our heart and what it does for us, who dwells there and who will write in the “fleshy tablets of our heart”. If we add in the new discoveries in the field of quantum physics, we soon realize that we truly are a conglomeration of our thoughts and desires.

“In humans as well, the fundamental behaviors, beliefs, and attitudes we observe in our parents become ‘hard wired’ as synaptic pathways in our subconscious minds. Once programmed into the subconscious mind, they control our biology for the rest of our lives...unless we can figure out a way to reprogram them. Anyone who doubts the sophistication of this downloading should think about the first time your child blurted out a curse word picked up from you. I’m sure you noted its sophistication, correct pronunciation, its nuanced style, and context carrying your signature.

Given the precision of this behavior-recording system, imagine the consequences of

Conquering Spiritual Evil

hearing your parents say you are a ‘stupid child,’ you ‘do not deserve things,’ will ‘never amount to anything,’ ‘never should have been born,’ or are a ‘sickly, weak’ person. When unthinking or uncaring parents pass on those messages to their children, they are no doubt oblivious to the fact that such comments are downloaded into the subconscious memory as absolute ‘facts’ just as surely as bit and bytes are downloaded to the hard drive of your desktop computer. During early development, the child’s consciousness has not evolved enough to critically assess that those parental pronouncements were only verbal barbs and not necessarily true characterizations of ‘self.’ Once programmed into the subconscious mind, however, these verbal abuses become defined as ‘truths’ that unconsciously shape the behavior and potential of the child through life.

...By the time children reach adolescence, their subconscious minds are chock-full of information that ranges from the knowledge of how to walk to the ‘knowledge’ they will never amount to anything or the knowledge, fostered by loving parents, that they can do anything they set out to do.” (Lipton, 2008, p. 134-135)

When we are children, our parents, culture, belief system, friends, family, and teachers have all written in our hearts. We are like little sponges taking it all in, believing all that has been said about us. Loving parents can really help us get ahead in this life, while not so loving parents can handicap us until the day we pass on. (And after this life if the “issues” aren’t cleared up.) All of these beliefs are stored in our hearts. If a fear for all new things was placed there, then we seem to close ourselves to any new possibilities, learning anything new, or any new experiences.

Many of us experienced being “scared” when we were young. Older siblings and even some parents seem to enjoy scaring

Conquering Spiritual Evil

little children. Add to that movies filled with fear, evil, tension, and darkness that we were exposed to. We learned at quite a young age to fear things that “go bump in the night.”

All of this imprinted on our subconscious mind, so as an adult those feelings will come back when something evil is encountered or perceived, real or not. I remember seeing dark entities in my closet, and I absolutely knew they were also under the bed. These things are so real that even now I hear of sixteen-year-old boys hiding under the covers while turning off the bedroom light with a long pole made for that purpose. Some may think this is humorous, but to those who have encountered evil or mischievous earthbound spirits, it loses all sense of humor. It is real and is something that needs to be dealt with and overcome.

When this fear dwells in us, we will attract what we fear the most. These entities feed off of our fear. It energizes them and sustains them. (They have been doing this for eons of time and they know how to get into our heads. They know what will cause us problems and how to multiply that fear for its sustaining power).

It is for this reason that fear is addressed first in this book. Elder F. Enzo Busche, (2004) now an emeritus Seventy, had an encounter with evil with a missionary who was possessed. He found the best way to overcome and conquer what was happening was to stay out of fear and to be in a space of perfect love. He wrote:

“In that moment, two scriptures came into my mind. One scripture was very simple: Moroni 8:16, ‘Perfect love casteth out all fear.’ And the other was the same: 1 John 4:18, ‘Perfect love casteth out fear.’ But I did not have love. I had fear. What do we do when we have fear but not love? My mind was drawn to Moroni 7:48, where the Lord points out how we can gain love: ‘Wherefore,...pray unto the Father with all the energy of heart, that ye may be filled with this love.’

Conquering Spiritual Evil

I prayed with all the energy of my heart, ‘Father, fill my soul with love.’ I cried from the depths of my being, without wasting any time. It all happened in a split second. After that, it was as if my skull was opened and a warm feeling poured down into my soul—down my head, my neck, my chest. As it was pouring down, it drove out all of the fear. My shivering knees stopped shaking. I stood there, a big smile come to my face—a smile of deep, satisfying joy and confidence.” (p. 269)

Joseph Smith taught that we need to “contemplate the darkest abyss” in order to understand the eternities. I realized as a young man that if I was to ever receive the Second Comforter, I would also have to encounter the Adversary. This is something that I never wanted because of my innate and programmed fear of all things dark. I now realize the importance of being prepared as much as we can for both encounters and the need to stay completely out of fear. We do need to be worthy of receiving the Lord, but we should also be ready for the encounter with darkness because the Lord has declared that opposition is required in all things and that would certainly qualify as opposition to receiving the Lord.

In 1881, the son of Heber C. Kimball, David, had several encounters with evil spirits that caused him to enter a state of fear that nearly cost him his life. It is recounted in a book by Solomon F. Kimball (1918):

“A host of evil spirits made their appearance. They were determined to destroy me, but I had power of mind to pay no attention to them, and let them curse all day without heeding them any more than possible. Five times they made a rush en masse to come into the wagon, the last one, where I was. . . . About 2 p.m. I told my boy to stop and we would water our horses. We used for

Conquering Spiritual Evil

this purpose barrels that we had along with us. After this I walked to the west side of my wagons, and looking to the east, I saw and heard the evil spirits floating in the air and chanting curses upon Brigham Young. I saw two other groups of the same kind, but did not hear them. Then I looked to the south and the whole atmosphere was crowded with fallen spirits, or those who had not obtained bodies (devils). Others who tried to torment me were spirits who had lived upon the earth (earthbound spirits). Having seen so many and being complimented by my guard for seeing so well, I became a little timid and asked my spiritual friends (family he saw the night before in vision) if they had any help. The answer was, 'Yes, plenty.' I now told my boy to drive on – and soon after I was so exhausted that I fell into a troubled sleep and must have slept quite a little while.

After I awoke I seemed to be left alone, and was lying on my back, when, all at once, I saw an old man and two young girls (evil spirits). This vision coming on me so suddenly, I was startled, and finding my guard gone, I jumped out of the wagon and got up on the spring seat beside my boy. But I could not get away from them. I was told in a coarse, gruff voice that the devil was going to kill me, and that he would follow me night and day until he destroyed me. I remembered the promise father had made me the night before – that he intended to visit me the next evening – and I nerved up and tried to pay no attention to my persecutors, **but I must confess I was frightened.**

We arrived at Wickenburg just at sundown. The old man and girls were tormenting and tantalizing me all the way, but never coming very near me. . . . During the fore part of the night I heard the horses running as though they were frightened. My son was asleep, but I got up and put my overcoat across my shoulders and went out

Conquering Spiritual Evil

where they were and got them quieted down. I was about to return to the wagon, when that same old man with gray whiskers, who had tormented me before, stepped between me and the wagons. He had a long knife in his hand. **I was frightened and fled**, he pursuing me and telling me he was going to kill me. What I passed through I cannot describe, and no mortal tongue could tell. I wandered two days and three nights in the Salt River desert, undergoing the torments of the damned, most of the time, which was beyond anything that mortal could imagine.” (pp. 47-48, 51-52; emphasis added)

Therefore in this life we need to overcome our own subconscious programming from our youth and adult life, our own propensity to sin, our unrighteous desires and conquer the Adversary. **Much of this involves overcoming fear.** This book will give you some tools to help in this battle. It is my hope that as you read, you will stay out of fear and in a state of love because love does conquer fear. In fact it might be necessary to keep negative emotions out of all aspects of our psych, the spiritual self, emotional self, physical self and mental self.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Chapter Two

IS SPIRITUAL EVIL REAL?

In the front of this book there is a glossary of terms that are used throughout this work. It is important to understand some of these before reading very far. There have been many other books defining what different authors believe dark entities are. Some of them like Robert Bruce's excellent work "Practical Psychic Self-Defense" lump all dark entities into one category. He calls all of them "Negs", short for Negative Entity.

There are, however, other types of spirits besides "negs." It is important to know what they are and understand what their purpose is. Therefore, we need to define what it is we are in a war against.

Basically there are three categories of dark entities that we will deal with in this book. The first one is **earth-bound spirits**. Earthbound spirits are our brothers and sisters that came here like us and passed over (died). When a mortal dies or transitions, there are basically two things his spirit can do. It can move on to the light and to spiritual realms of paradise/prison or stay behind tied to the physical world and not move on and progress. Some earth-bounds have suffered a traumatic death and are trapped, waiting for help to move on. Many of these have no idea they have died; they are confused and lost. Many stay because they have addictions that were not taken care of during their physical earth life, and their only desire is to inhabit someone else's body to satisfy their addiction through that person. These addictions can be power, control, drugs, sex, alcohol, eating, and any other disorder you can think of. Earthbound spirits seek out those with their same addictions to attach to. Some of these are quite malicious or malevolent and cause as many problems as they can for mortals. The scriptures call this class of dark entities "unclean spirits." Others are just plain

Conquering Spiritual Evil

confused, not believing, accepting, or knowing they have died. It is possible to help many of these beings transition to the light and their progression.

The second classification of dark entities is the one-third of our brothers and sisters that chose to follow Lucifer. We will call them **devils**, for they are Lucifer's and belong to him who is the Devil.

“And it came to pass that Adam, being tempted of the devil—for, behold, the devil was before Adam, for he rebelled against me, saying, Give me thine honor, which is my power; and also a third part of the hosts of heaven turned he away from me because of their agency; and they were thrust down, and thus came the devil and his angels; and, behold there is a place prepared for them from the beginning, which place is hell.” (D&C 29:36-38)

The third classification is **daemons or demons**. There are many levels or gradations of daemons. The small ones are **Imps** and are quite easy to dismiss, while others require much effort through Christ. Demons are of many different shapes, sizes, and can assume many different forms. They come in all sizes, strengths, experience, and evil. These have the ability to change shapes and become the most hideous evil ever experienced. They are here to destroy, inflict pain, and cause mortals all the problems they can. Satan's name truly is the Destroyer.

Many don't believe that these things exist, or if they do, they really don't cause us much of a problem now because they were dealt with anciently or that they are just problems of the mind, or psychological issues which are controlled by drugs or counseling. If you are having “hallucinations”, “psychological disorders”, or “tricks of the mind”, there is a drug to take care of them and make them go away. Are you hearing voices? There is a drug and

Conquering Spiritual Evil

counseling for that one, too. My daughter ended up in their program. When the counselor found out that she could “see” and “hear” things, they wanted to give her a chemical lobotomy to “make her normal”, to make the voices and hallucinations go away. Never once would they entertain the idea that she just might be gifted and was really able to see through the veil. That was not even in their realm of possibilities. She did take their drugs for a week and became a “zombie” and immediately stopped taking them. She said it did take away her ability to see through the veil and more importantly to feel the Spirit.

It is a sad situation that most of the church leaders that I have encountered and many members don’t believe these things exist either. I have been told to my face more than once that I have made these things up, that my wife and I are liars, that I embellished our experiences in order to get rich off of books, and that my daughter just makes these things up.

Recently I had a call from a mother whose eighteen-year-old daughter was taken to a neuropsychologist for treatment of her hallucinations--seeing spirits and auras. They put her on several psychotropic drugs to take them away. It changed her personality. She is so depressed as a result of what they have tried on her, she would like to exit this life. It is a really sad situation. If we could just open our minds to the possibility that these things exist and are very real and do cause problems, many more people could be helped.

On the other side of the issue we have the “ghost-buster” industry. These people are delving into the unknown by creating a “ghost hunting” industry and trying to quantify and document different types of paranormal phenomena. Radio shows are devoted to this agenda to entertain us or perhaps even scare us with their experiences. All kinds of electronic devices have been invented in order to capture images of “ghosts” or spirits, to hear their voices (EVP), or show their energy. Most of these people use it as an entertainment medium.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Then there are those who are quite serious researchers on this topic. One example is Dr. Gary Schwartz, who is a psychologist, psychiatrist, and surgeon who teaches at the University of Arizona. He has been studying the spiritual realm for several years now using the latest technology that was developed to study and try to understand quantum physics. Dr. Schwartz uses extremely delicate instruments to study spiritual phenomena and has established protocols so others can replicate his results. He has performed experiments that show in the laboratory the reality of the spirit world. These have been duplicated elsewhere using his protocols. His work is beyond the scope of this book but nevertheless is quite interesting and worth investigating.

Somewhere in the middle we have our clairvoyants, psychics, and mediums. Some of these are charlatans who seem to get caught up in the money aspect and notoriety of this centuries-old business. So this aspect of “ghost busting” has received a bad name, rightly so in many instances. Yet there have been some who have tried to document psychic phenomena and have some interesting things to share. One such person is Carl Wickland, M.D. His wife was a psychic who could go into a trance-like state and have departed spirits talk through her. He used her in his medical practice with much success. His book, “30 Years Among the Dead” is quite intriguing and insightful. But even with this, we each need to tread carefully so we are not deceived, always asking for the gift of discernment as directed by the scriptures. Some spirit entities will do all they can to deceive us, and it is quite easy for them to pretend to be something they aren’t to a gullible soul.

Satan has declared that he would reign with blood and horror on this earth and that he would buy up industries and religions. **He also declared that he would possess the bodies that God has created for us.** I don’t believe it is a stretch to see how he controls the drug industry and has put it into the minds of men to create chemicals to stop our spiritual growth, to make us blind to the Spirit. I am not saying that there isn’t some value

Conquering Spiritual Evil

within that industry, just maybe not in its “cure all” claims. I remember reading in the newspaper how some attorneys pointed out that Utah has a much higher consumption per capita of psychotropic drugs than the rest of the nation, specifically Sandy, Utah. They even went so far as to call Prozac “Relief Society candy.” I even read on an LDS website the comment that “God made us sisters, Prozac makes us friends.” As we joke about our reliance on pharmacology to make us friends, our ability to feel the Spirit and hear Him diminishes to near zero. There are other problems with drugs that most people never dreamed about that we will discuss later in this book, both prescription and illegal.

Dr. Bruce Lipton (2008) makes a great statement in his book.

“As you know, spiritualists and scientists approach life in vastly different ways. When life is out of whack for spiritualists, they beseech God or some other invisible force for relief. When life is out of whack for scientists, they run to the medicine cabinet for a chemical. It is only with a drug like Roloids that they are able to spell relief.” (p. 155)

A friend waited several years to see the department head of the Family Therapy program at a major LDS Church University. After being ushered into her office, he finally had the opportunity to ask the question that he had waited two years for.

He asked, “Why don’t we ask for or bring the Spirit into this work?”

The department head got up, walked around her desk and closed the door. Pointing to all her degrees and awards on the wall, she told him that if he wanted any of those degrees in order to be recognized or accredited and to be able to work and help people in this field, he could not bring the Spirit into the work.

My friend was floored. He felt that he could be so much more productive in helping others if he brought God into the work.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

To him it felt that even the field of family therapy had been bought off by Satan. It was as if they were saying that “if we ignore it, it isn’t real.” The truth might be that our desire for Babylon’s accreditation is so intense that we have chosen to keep God out of the classroom. A good friend once said that you won’t find God in the library, finding God requires getting on your knees.

Another friend, Ron Poulton, wrote:

“Some time ago, my wife and I attended a dinner which was hosted by the Association of Mormon Counselors and Psychotherapists (AMCAP) in connection with its semi-annual conference. We were seated with a psychiatrist, three clinical psychologists and a social worker. We shared several minutes of conversation getting to know one another. It was evident that they all loved their profession. They practiced it in a manner that was informed by their belief in God and energized by their testimonies of the restored gospel of Jesus Christ. Several expressed gratitude for AMCAP and the values espoused by the Association. As the spouse of an AMCAP member I was glad to be with so many professionals and to have the opportunity to ask them a question that had been on my mind for some time, knowing that I would not have to worry whether they were listed as preferred providers with my health insurance company.

At what I thought was an appropriate time I asked my question, ‘How do you deal with the problem of unclean spirits in your practices?’ Quiet came to the table almost immediately. One of the psychologists looked puzzled and asked me to say more. When it became clear to them that they had not misunderstood my question, their responses came quickly. The overarching conclusion common to all the responses was that this was a subject outside of the domain of their common discourse and professional world view. It held no prominent

Conquering Spiritual Evil

place within their practices. I was surprised by their resolute opinions that there was no such problem.

...The first response was: **‘At the time the scriptures were written, the people mistook mental disease and biologically based defects for possession by evil spirits.’**

This view reflects the predominant view of many modern religionists and mental health professionals. There have been significant advances made in psychopharmacology which have produced remarkable symptom relief for depression, anxiety and schizophrenia. These developments do seem to strengthen the contention that it was lack of sophistication or an inadequate understanding of physiology and biochemistry that led to a mistaken diagnosis that physical or mental illnesses were caused by evil spirits. However, that conclusion without additional explanation is unwarranted; it makes the logical error of affirming the consequence. ‘The situation is similar to that of a person who takes aspirin for a headache. Generally, the medicine will relieve the pain and ‘cure’ the ailment. Still, the fact that taking aspirin eliminated the pain hardly means that the pain was caused by a lack of aspirin in the first place.’ (Liebert & Speigler, 1987, p. 517).

A further problem with this response is that it fails to explain the distinction gospel writers made between the heavenly power over devils and the power to heal the sick. Although these powers are often enumerated together and appear to be exercised jointly in many instances, there is a consistent and pervasive distinction maintained between freeing the afflicted from evil spirits and healing sickness through divine power: ‘And he healed many that were sick of divers diseases, and cast out many devils; and suffered not the devils to speak, because they knew him’ (Mark 1:34).

Conquering Spiritual Evil

...Most of our encounters with evil spirits go unnoticed, not because they are rare, but because they are so common place. We are, in some ways, desensitized to the direct intrusions of the adversary in our lives. Such intrusions are often accepted by us because of our willingness to accept rival explanations for our encounters with evil and spiritual discomforts. A child's scream from a sound sleep is not caused by the passing of an unclean presence, but by a bad dream, an upset stomach, thirst, etc. A pathogenic belief which limits the growth or freedom of a client may be the result of a childhood trauma, a lack of proper idealization in the parental transference, but it is not considered to be a lie communicated by an unclean spirit standing next to the person. . .

Modern psychotherapy has been marked by a move away from concepts grounded in religion and morality toward the embrace of concepts borrowed from medicine and science (Szasz 1978). Thus, behavior that was once described as sin is now frequently viewed in terms of symptom or illness (Menninger 1973). The secularized idea of the devil is reduced to nothing more than 'an ancient moral construct' and evil diluted to 'simply the absence of good' (Gallagher, 1999, p. 121). And it is assumed that evil can be studied and understood merely as a matter of human interaction, without reference to spiritual reality (Baumeister 1997). The very idea of evil spirits strikes many persons overseeing accreditation at universities, state licensing authorities and insurance carriers as being primitive, unprofessional and unscientific. A speaker at an AMCAP conference said recently that he had proposed to conference organizers to speak on the subject of possession by evil spirits, but he was informed that the topic was rejected because it would not qualify for continuing education credit (Watts 2000).

Conquering Spiritual Evil

In some respect, the efforts to gain mainstream professional credibility may have left LDS therapists well regarded, but no more effective than any other segment of the profession. Unfortunately, it appears that some are satisfied to express belief in God and Christ, but shrink in embarrassment at the doctrine they revealed of an equally and immanent adversary. This is a mistake. Psychologists have surveyed the current state of psychotherapy and asked, 'Why doesn't therapy succeed more often?' and 'Why does it so often fail to make a difference in people's lives?' (Gendlin, 1981, p. 3). The answers to such queries may be found in the failure of psychotherapists to consider the domain of the adversary encountered in the world." (Poulton, pp. 2-3, 18-19)

Ron's entire paper is well worth reading and studying. Some of it will be included throughout this book. Someone handed it to me several years ago and after reading it I had to contact him. I told him that he was writing the theory and that we were experiencing the reality of what he had written. I will email it to those desiring a copy.

It seems that modern psychotherapy, modern medicine, and possibly even church members have reduced Satan to just stories from the Bible and from early church history. I have talked to many people that feel it is not something you are really bothered with unless you are extremely evil. As quoted above by LDS therapists, **"At the time the scriptures were written, the people mistook mental disease and biologically based defects for possession by evil spirits."** If we persist in this belief, Satan will win many souls.

I have a daughter that works with wayward teenagers in a group home. She originally worked in a home for girls. She watched as the counselors worked with these girls, only getting them so far on the road to mental health recovery. One night she

Conquering Spiritual Evil

talked with the counselor and dared mention unclean spirits and demons. The counselor told her that she knew the girls had “possession problems” but that there was nothing she could do about it; it wasn’t a subject that could even be broached. She knew the girls could never be completely “healed” as long as this issue was not addressed.

Recently I spent five hours with a woman that had worked as a psych-nurse for over thirty years. The last few were with a group that handles mental issues for LDS missionaries. **She stated that she knows most of the psych-problems she dealt with were a result of possession.** She is blessed with discernment and carries much light and knows this is to be a fact. The problem was she was just a nurse and was never allowed to assess anything — her job was to hand out pills and do what the doctor ordered. I listened to dozens of stories about the people she had encountered that were possessed, and there wasn’t one thing she was allowed to do. As she told me, possession is not even in most doctors’ consciousness.

Even in one of our own recent LDS general conferences we are told, “Today the only power Satan and his followers have is the power to tempt and try us.” (October 2010 LDS General Conference, Robert D. Hales, Agency: Essential to the Plan of Life)

I’m not quite sure if Elder Hales really meant that Satan can’t possess us, enter into our bodies like he declares in the Temple that he will and that he really only can “tempt and try us.” That would make things so much easier for all of us.

This is very similar to what Brigham Young declared many years ago:

“I know very well that, whether we are active or not, the invisible spirits are active. And every person who desires and strives to be a Saint is closely watched by fallen spirits that came here when Lucifer fell, and by the spirits of wicked persons who have been here in tabernacles and

Conquering Spiritual Evil

departed them, but who are still under the control of the prince of the power of the air. Those spirits are never idle; they are watching every person who wishes to do right, and are continually prompting them to do wrong. This makes it necessary for us to be continually on our guard—makes this probation a continual warfare.” (JD, 7: 239)

As Brigham Young said, “This probation is a continual warfare.” If we don’t know that or even ignore that fact, we will still be affected by it. The adversary never rests, never quits. He and his minions are always pushing at us.

Brigham Young also said that we never had an ache or pain that wasn’t put there by darkness or the adversary and his minions. (JD 4:133). They have the ability to possess us--something even declared by Satan in the Temple ceremony. We will see in this work that they also have the ability to cause us physical harm, psychological harm, and like Brigham Young said, aches and pains and all kinds of physical discomforts. It appears that they do have the ability to do more than to just “tempt and try us.”

Parley P. Pratt (1965) said just such things:

“Many spirits of the departed, who are unhappy, linger in lonely wretchedness about the earth . . . and especially about their ancient homesteads. . . . They will sometimes enter human bodies, and will distract them, throw them into fits, cast them into water, into the fire, etc. They will trouble them with dreams, nightmares, hysterics, fever, etc. They will also deform them in body and in features, by convulsions, cramps, contortions, etc., and will sometimes compel them to utter blasphemies, horrible curses, and even words of other languages. . . . Some of these spirits are adulterous, and suggest to the mind all manner of lasciviousness, all kinds of evil thoughts and temptations.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

A person looking another in the eye, who is possessed of an evil spirit, may feel a shock, a nervous feeling, which will, as it were, make his hair stand on end, in short, a shock resembling that produced in a nervous system by the sight of a serpent. Some of these foul spirits, when possessing a person, will cause a disagreeable smell about the person possessed, which will be plainly manifest to the senses of those about him, even though the person thus afflicted should be washed and change his clothes every few minutes.

. . . Some of these spirits cause deafness, others dumbness, etc. We can suggest no remedy for these multiplied evils, to which poor human nature is subject, except a good life, while we are in possession of our faculties, prayers and fastings of good and holy men, and the ministry of those who have power given them to rebuke evil spirits, and cast out devils, in the name of Jesus Christ.” (pp. 117-120)

We invite evil into us in hundreds of different ways, but the main ones are disobedience to the Lord, anger, and fear. These will be discussed several times in this book. Once we have allowed the adversary a foothold, he can really go to work on us physically, mentally, emotionally, and spiritually.

We need to understand that “The devil cannot compel mankind to evil, all was voluntary. Those who resist the spirit of God, are liable to be led into temptation, and then the association of heaven is withdrawn from those who refuse to be made partakers of such great glory—God would not exert any compulsory means and the Devil could not; and such ideas as were entertained by many were absurd.” (WOJS, p. 72)

This book comes from the stance that these things are real. In this continual warfare it is important to know your enemy and how he operates. It might be important to understand, contemplate, and meditate on all aspects of spiritual evil. Even

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Joseph Smith spent more time on this subject than most other subjects during his life, according to George A. Smith, the Prophet's nephew.

Joseph also said:

“The things of God are of deep import and time and experience and careful and ponderous and solemn thought can only find them out. Thy mind O man if thou wilt lead a soul into salvation must search into and contemplate the darkest abyss and the broad expanse of eternity, thou must commune with God.” (DHC 3:295)

If the discerning of spirits was that important to the head Prophet of this last dispensation, why is it something we tend to completely ignore? Once in a great while a returned missionary will tell a story about being attacked by an evil spirit while out on his mission. That is about all we hear.

I have talked with members that have experienced severe “poltergeist” activity in their homes and have asked for help from local priesthood leaders, who then came and said a prayer over the home. Nothing changed. If these people are open to asking others, they will usually be directed to a person that does “energy work.” Individuals that do energy work are familiar with dark entities and spirits because of the work they do in helping people become free of such problems. But our church membership by and large seems to be ignorant of the problem or refuses to believe it exists. Though some do know it exists because it haunts them daily. They just don't know where to turn for help, and therefore remain silent.

One woman was so beside herself from the poltergeist/demonic activity in her home that she called the local LDS authorities, the local Catholic Priest, and anyone else she could find--all to no avail. She just wanted help in alleviating the problem, but no one seemed to know what to do or what they did had zero

Conquering Spiritual Evil

effect. I was so new in this area at that time that I had no advice to give her. She told me she was going to move.

Oliver B. Huntington (1878-1900) quoted Joseph Smith:

“When I was a boy I heard Joseph Smith say, speaking with regard to moving into old houses that other people had lived in, that had been inhabited by wicked people, they leave spirits in the house like unto themselves and as the wicked are always opposed to God and the good, we ought to dispossess the spirits of wicked persons before we move into their haunts, or else they will try and kill the most innocent and pure. That when wicked men and women inhabit a house, invisible spirits congregate there also, that are of the same stamp as the living. Kindred spirits mingle together and the invisible look on, laugh at and enjoy the wicked sports of the living and when the living, or people in bodies, move away, the others often stay in the house having acquired a sort of right by possession and are the agents by which others that move in are afflicted.” (p. 17)

Another woman became quite possessed with multiple demons, and her husband had no idea what to do about it. He called his ecclesiastical leaders, and they were also dumfounded. It wasn't until her son showed up who had seen such things in the mission field in Brazil and supposed he knew how to deal with the problem that anything was done. He said that his mother was possessed, and they needed to cast the demons out. Unfortunately, even though he had the right idea, he didn't know the total process. There were several things he needed to do before casting out. We will discuss those in this book, giving the reader practical knowledge to help take care of this problem or to help others.

It is your choice as the reader to accept or reject what is written in this book. If the Spirit doesn't verify what is before you,

Conquering Spiritual Evil

feel free to throw it out. But be extremely careful about throwing out something that is of God.

We should walk softly and seek the Spirit in these matters and not declare flippantly that if we are to know something, God will tell the prophet and then he will tell the rest of us. Yes, God does reveal His will through His servants, the prophets (Amos 3:7). Yet the scriptures also declare that if you have the testimony of Jesus Christ, you are also a “prophet” for yourself, not the world, as that is the privilege of the current head of the LDS Church.

“And Moses went out, and told the people the words of the Lord, and gathered the seventy men of the elders of the people, and set them round about the Tabernacle.

And the Lord came down in a cloud, and spake unto him, and took of the spirit that was upon him, and give it unto the seventy elders: and it came to pass, that, when the spirit rested upon them, they prophesied, and did not cease.

But there remained two of the men in the camp, the name of the one was Eldad, and the name of the other Medad: and the spirit rested upon them; and they were of them that were written, but went not out unto the tabernacle: and they prophesied in the camp.

And there ran a young man, and told Moses, and said, Eldad and Medad do prophesy in the camp.

And Joshua the son of Nun, the servant of Moses, one of his young, answered and said, My lord Moses, forbid them.

And Moses said unto him, enviest thou for my sake? **would God that all the Lord’s people were prophets, and that the Lord would put his spirit upon them.”** (Numbers 12:25-29, emphasis added)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Moses understood this concept of being a prophet when you have a testimony of Christ and the Spirit is upon you. Today Moses would declare “Would God that all the (LDS) people were prophets and that the Lord would put his spirit upon them.”

And again in Rev. 19:10 we read, “And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said unto me, See thou do it not: I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren that have the testimony of Jesus: worship God: **for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.** (Emphasis added)

The LDS Bible dictionary says, “In a general sense a prophet is anyone who has a testimony of Jesus Christ by the Holy Ghost.” The Lord is telling us that a testimony of Jesus Christ by the Holy Ghost IS the spirit of prophecy. That would make all who have this testimony a prophet in their own stewardship. While it is true that they are not allowed to declare church beliefs or doctrine to the world, they certainly can offer insights not yet revealed or discovered to the world. Hugh Nibley through study, hard work, and inspiration from the Spirit gave us many insights through the “spirit of prophecy.” He had one of the strongest testimonies in the Church of the Gospel, Book of Mormon, and especially Jesus Christ gained by the Holy Ghost. He was a champion of the Book of Mormon during a time when others didn’t think much of it. His testimony would make him a prophet, as each one of us should be, in that sense of the word.

In a very specific sense Joseph declared that “salvation cannot come without revelation; it is in vain for anyone to minister without it. No man can minister of Jesus Christ without being a Prophet. No man can be a minister of Jesus Christ except he has **the testimony of Jesus; and this is the spirit of prophecy.** Whenever salvation has been administered, it has been by testimony. Men of the present time testify of heaven and hell, and have never seen either; and I will say that no man knows these things without this. (TPJS p. 160, emphasis added)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

We have had incredibly insightful men and women like Hugh Nibley, Cleon Skousen, and Sheri Dew that have offered wonderful insights into the gospel through the Spirit. Because of their testimony of Jesus Christ, they would be considered to be prophets and through that testimony have given us doctrinal insights that bless all of our lives. During the early days of the LDS church in Nauvoo and Utah, Eliza Snow was considered to be and even called a prophetess, but she did not declare doctrine for the church.

Concerning these prophetic gifts to women, “[Joseph Smith] gave a lecture on the Priesthood shewing how the sisters would come in possession of the privileges, blessings, and gifts of the Priesthood, and that the signs should follow them, such as healing the sick, casting out devils, & C., and that they might attain unto these blessings by a virtuous life and conversation and diligence in keeping all the commandments.” (WOJS p. 119)

I have had more than one person tell me concerning my daughter who is gifted in many ways that “God doesn’t speak to or through ten-year-old girls.” Or they have declared that God would not speak through these gifted people that I have met who are like her.

Be very careful about making such declarations. The Lord has declared, “For my thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways my ways, saith the Lord. For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts. (Isaiah 55:8-9)

How dare we as humans suppose that we know the mind of God? Many of us will apply our puny minds (when compared to God) to a problem and immediately jump to the wrong conclusion. Or we declare that it requires a degree from an institution of higher learning, or you must be an intellectual or educated to know what the scriptures say or to understand the mind of God. We might declare, “You must be trained in the ministry!” To declare that God would not speak to a ten-year-old girl only shows our

Conquering Spiritual Evil

ignorance about our Heavenly Father and His ways. God operates through farmers, fishermen, plough-boys, fourteen-year-old boys, and yes, even you and me as illustrated and declared in Alma 32:23.

“And now, he imparteth his word by angels unto men, yea, not only men but **women also**. Now this is not all; **little children** do have words given unto them many times, which confound the wise and the learned.” (Emphasis added)

Furthermore, when individuals declare that they know God would not do “such and such,” they are bringing upon themselves their own damnation, meaning stopping their progression. For example, if I declared, “I know that God would never tell Nephi to kill Laban,” I would not be following the Spirit of the Lord and am presuming I can tell God or His Spirit how to operate or what to do.

“The wind bloweth where it listeth, and thou hearest the sound thereof, but canst not tell whence it cometh, and whither it goeth; so is every one that is born of the Spirit.” (John 3:8)

We will show that there are things we can do to help in this “war” and even go on the offensive in preventing attacks or keeping them from occurring in our home and stewardship. If we are attacked or know of someone that is being attacked, we will have some knowledge of what to do and how to do it. By “attack” I don’t mean a full blown possession. We are nudged daily, subtly influenced by dark entities. What you see in the cartoons might be more real than you think when they show a little devil on one shoulder and an angel on the other. How many of us have had children who have little playmates that really don’t exist—at least we can’t see them? A good friend has the ability to see spirits, as does his father and siblings. When they were quite young, he and

Conquering Spiritual Evil

his sister would play with a dark little entity that came out of the curtains until their father found out and put a stop to it. He told his children that those little dark entities really weren't their friends, and he and his sister should stay away from them.

I believe what this book will offer is an alternative view of what ails us, what causes us problems, and how to combat them. Allopathic (Western) medicine chose a long time ago to eschew the spiritual aspect or component of our lives. When our God makes a statement that everything He does is spiritual, it makes one wonder what medicine might be missing. "Wherefore, verily I say unto you that all things unto me are spiritual..." (D&C 29:34) If we choose just the biological aspect of our being without contemplating the spiritual side, we are missing a huge part of what and who we are, maybe even what and who the Lord is. Many books have been written about how to bring His Light into our lives. If we can eliminate the darkness or at least know how to eject it or combat it, maybe we can bring more light into our world, even into our hearts and eventually bind him who is the harbinger and author of all darkness. "And Satan shall be bound, that he shall have no place in the hearts of the children of men." (D&C 45:55) Until the day comes, a war is being waged, and the Lord needs more warriors armed with knowledge and especially Light, His Light.

Evil is very real. If it is not understood and controlled it can not only influence a person, but can also completely overcome the soul, "for the spirit and the body are the soul of man" (D&C 88:15). This is not a figurative statement. Satan is the author of evil and has one singular objective, "...he goeth up and down, to and fro in the earth, seeking to destroy the souls of men" (D&C 10:27). And why does he do this? As stated before, his goal is to possess the bodies that God created for Adam and Eve and their posterity, thus attempting to destroy the plan of God which is to "bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man" (Moses 1:39). Satan and his hosts bring people under bondage and with the objective of

Conquering Spiritual Evil

destroying man both in body and in spirit. This is what “being overcome by evil” means.

Is it possible to avoid being overcome by evil and learn to resist its influence? The answer is, “Yes!” We can overcome evil by learning what evil is and how to control it, then by fortifying oneself with good.

“Therefore, that we should waste and wear out our lives in bringing to light all the hidden things of darkness, wherein we know them; and they truly manifest from heaven—

These should be attended to with great earnestness.

Let no man count them as small things; for there is much which lieth in futurity, pertaining to the saints, which depends upon these things.”
(D&C 123:13-15)

Joseph Smith also taught:

“As far as we degenerate from God, we descend to the devil and lose knowledge, and without knowledge we cannot be saved, and while our hearts are filled with evil, and we are studying evil, there is no room in our hearts for good, or studying good. Is not God good? Then you be good; if He is faithful, then you be faithful. Add to your faith virtue, to virtue knowledge, and seek for every good thing.”

“...A man is saved no faster than he gets knowledge, for if he does not get knowledge, he will be brought into captivity by some evil power in the other world, as evil spirits have more knowledge, and consequently more power than many men who are on the earth. Hence it needs revelation to assist us, and give us knowledge of the things of God.”
(DHC 4:588)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

This book is not about the study of evil and how to use it. The purpose of this book is firstly, to expose the workings of evil **under the light of God** so that a person may recognize it when it is present, and secondly, to explain powerful tools he and others may use to deal with evil and its effects. This volume is not meant to be comprehensive in nature. Personal experiences and the experiences of others will provide context and basis for this book. Scriptures and statements from the prophets of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints demonstrate that these situations are not unique and can provide guidance for working through the experience. The author's expectation is that after reading this book, readers will be able to begin to recognize and control evil in their own lives and will seek to pierce the veil themselves and enjoy the company of Gods and His angels.

There are those who will scoff, criticize and take offense at the contents of this book. Notwithstanding, this book is a compilation of the author's experiences, other's experiences, personal opinions, and spiritual tools that the author has found helpful from firsthand experience. This book is not an expose' of doctrine, policy, or teachings of any church and more specifically the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Some experiences related herein involve members of the LDS Church who were at that time in leadership positions. At no time are these experiences meant to reflect negatively on the Church, its leaders, or the doctrines of Jesus Christ. The author boldly acknowledges that the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints and the doctrines restored by the Prophet Joseph Smith contain the gospel of Jesus Christ and furthermore, that prophets and others within its confines receive divine revelation. However, imperfections caused by the weaknesses of man and their lack of understanding do and will exist. Therefore, all men, no matter what their ecclesiastical position, including this author, make mistakes because of traditions, culture, perceptions, personally held beliefs and opinions, and are therefore subject to err.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

The author is neither attempting to draw attention or a following to himself, nor influence others away from any true principles and doctrines. This is an attempt to share personal opinions by relating experiences that have had meaning in his life and in the lives of others. The author holds no ecclesiastic position that should influence the reader by church authority to agree with or comply with any of his conclusions. **Any successes in overcoming evil are a direct result of the influence of Jesus Christ.** Readers are cautioned that this is not a church authorized or approved book or a book explaining church doctrine. Therefore, readers may disregard any of all of the book's contents including the author's opinions and conclusions. Any truth for personal application may only be discerned by inspiration and revelation received in a manner consistent with the scriptures. The Book of Mormon prophet Moroni stated, "...he will manifest the truth of it unto you, by the power of the Holy Ghost. And by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things. And whatsoever thing is good is just and true; wherefore, nothing that is good denieth the Christ but acknowledgeth that he is." (Moroni 3:4-6)

If a person has an understanding of what they are dealing with and how they can confront and combat evil, they can then be armed with knowledge and can approach situations in faith and with the confidence that only God can provide. Knowledge then, becomes the key to understanding how to control, not only what is spiritually going on around us, but how to control what we subject ourselves to and what we can do if we are attacked or someone around us is struggling with evil spirits. Quite literally, "Knowledge is the power of God unto salvation." (as quoted by Martha Jane Knowlton Coray, Notebook, Church Archives, from a discourse by Joseph Smith in Nauvoo, Illinois, May 21, 1843, also see WOJS. p. 207).

One last experience before we begin our journey. This was recently related to me by a man who is still confused by his

Conquering Spiritual Evil

experience and illustrates the importance of not only the knowledge of these entities, but also the “how to” knowledge we need to have. One day a woman showed up at his home and asked for a blessing, telling him that she was possessed and didn’t know what to do about it.

She told him she knew she had entities on her but didn’t know how to get rid of them and asked if he would give her a blessing or cast them off. The man laid his hands on her head and in the name of Jesus Christ cast the demons off of her. She said she could feel them leave and looked up at him and said they were gone. The moment he took his hands off her head, she felt them come back in. She told him they were back, so he put his hands on her head and cast them off again. She said they were gone, so he pulled his hands away, but she told him she felt them come back again. So he cast off again only to have them return the moment he pulled his hands off her head. This happened several more times.

He was extremely frustrated and called the Bishop who wasn’t home. So he called the Bishop’s counselor and the Elders Quorum President. He considered these men to be two of the most powerful priesthood holders in the ward. After they arrived he explained what had happened previously. They looked at him like he had caused the problem and asked why he was dealing with it in that manner.

He sat on the couch as he didn’t have enough energy to deal with this any longer. The two men laid their hands on the woman’s head and voiced a small blessing to her, never mentioning the Lord or any casting out. They then had her leave, and they went home.

A while later she was still being bothered by the voices and feelings inside of her. One night she was told to go to the kitchen and get a huge butcher knife and to kill her daughter; the voices had told her that her daughter was evil and should be killed. She got the knife and tried to kill her daughter.

The woman now resides in an insane asylum.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

It might be wise to read this book with an open mind, asking continually for the Spirit so as to not be deceived. Yet do so with no preconceived ideas or notions, otherwise we stop the flow of the Spirit and what it might teach us.

There is much to understand about this subject, much to learn and contemplate about it.

And thus the journey begins...

HOW DEEP DOES THE RABBIT HOLE GO?

It would be well for anyone interested in spiritual realms to first read and understand the teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith as recorded from those who attended meetings where instruction occurred in addition to scripture and revelation he received from the Lord. We can begin with informational sources including History of the Church, Joseph Fielding Smith's edited compilation of talks and writings as found in Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith and other sources including a compilation of first-hand accounts from journals and papers of those attending Joseph's instructive discourses. This book is not meant to be an exhaustive course of instruction or a spiritual guide to the unseen world, but many of Joseph's teachings, scriptural references and personal experiences are used to assist in explaining what might be happening on the other side of the veil as well as providing some useful tools in navigating these hidden truths.

I am going to put forth a hypothesis about how the spiritual side of things might be set up. This is not the doctrine of any church, especially the church I belong to. They are just some ideas that have been floating around in my head that I am going to bring forth. Feel free to dismiss them or take a long look at them. If they don't fit into your paradigm just forget about them or put them on the shelf. If they help make things easier to understand then the Lord has blessed us both.

As stated previously, Joseph said, "There are three independent principles—the spirit of God, the spirit of man, and the spirit of the devil. All men have power to resist the devil. They

Conquering Spiritual Evil

who have tabernacles have power over those who have not.” (May 16, 1841, William Clayton’s Private Book)

It seems as though the spirit of man is in the middle of what is going on spiritually between God and the devil--on one side of him is the spirit of God and on the other is the spirit of the devil. The Lord said, “For it must needs be, that there is an opposition in all things. If not so, my first-born in the wilderness, righteousness could not be brought to pass, neither wickedness, neither holiness, nor misery, neither good nor bad...it must needs be that there was an opposition; even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life; the one being sweet and the other bitter.” (2 Nephi 2:11, 13)

“And it must needs be that the devil should tempt the children of men, or they could not be agents unto themselves; for if they never should have bitter they could not know the sweet.” (D&C 29:39)

We have been taught that going spiritually towards God are three Kingdoms, the Telestial, the Terrestrial, and the Celestial. (See D&C 88; 1 Cor. 15:40-41) If everything really has its opposite, then does it stretch the imagination to see there might be three kingdoms of the Satan in the opposite direction? Why is it that when a person receives the blessing of the Second Comforter that he also experiences the opposite? Once again, opposition is required in all things. Denver Snuffer points this out quite plainly in his book “The Second Comforter, Conversing with the Lord Through the Veil”:

“Nephi is an example of this process, of facing the downside before receiving the upside. **The path to heaven passes through hell.** Joseph didn’t see the Father and the Son until after first being attacked by Satan (JSH 1:15.) Moses didn’t receive an audience with God without also being subjected to Satan’s temptations and efforts to mislead him. (Moses 1:12-22.) Christ didn’t receive angels to minister to Him before His ministry began

Conquering Spiritual Evil

until after “the tempter came to him.” (Matt. 4:3-11.) And Joseph and Sidney were not shown the vision of the Celestial Glory (D&C 76:50-70) until after they beheld the sons of perdition and their punishment (Id., v. 43-49). It is not just that you reach upward. There is a bracket to these things, and it requires what is below, in addition to what is above. This is the necessary balance. Lehi taught: “For it must needs be that there is an opposition in all things.” (2 Nephi 2:11) **You can’t get to heaven without passing through hell.** You can’t develop the required faith without the necessary opposition. You must choose between the apparent failure of faith, and the desire to persist, though it may be painful to endure. You must face the physical dilemmas and difficulties of life while viewing them in their true spiritual setting. You must rend the veil.” (pp. 79-80, emphasis added).

In March of 1839 Joseph Smith was in Liberty jail. When he heard of the persecution and travails the Saints were experiencing, he questioned the Lord, “O God, where art thou? And where is the pavilion that covereth thy hiding place? How long shall thy hand be stayed, and thine eye, yea thy pure eye, behold from the eternal heavens the wrongs of thy people and of thy servants, and thine ear be penetrated with their cries? O Lord God Almighty, maker of heaven, earth, and seas, and of all things that in them are, and who controlllest and subjectest the devil, and the dark and benighted dominion of Sheol—stretch forth thy hand; let thine eye pierce; let thy pavilion be taken up; let thy hiding place no longer be covered; let thine ear be inclined; let thine heart be softened, and thy bowels moved with compassion toward us. Let thine anger be kindled against our enemies; and, in the fury of mine heart, with thy sword avenge us of our wrongs. Remember thy suffering saints, O our God...” (D&C 121:1-6)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Joseph is told by the Lord that these afflictions “shall be but a moment.” Then in Section 122 the Lord goes on to mention all kinds of what we would call awful things that could happen to Joseph and ends with, “know thou, my son, that all these things shall give thee experience, and shall be for thy good. The Son of Man hath descended below them all. Art thou greater than he?” (D&C 122:7-8)

This lesson must have really impressed Joseph because he wrote an epistle to the Church from Liberty jail during this same time dated March 25, 1839. In it he taught, “The things of God are of deep import; and time, and experience, and careful and ponderous and solemn thoughts can only find them out. Thy mind, O man! if thou wilt lead a soul unto salvation, must stretch as high as the utmost heavens, and search into and contemplate the darkest abyss, and the broad expanse of eternity—thou must commune with God. How much more dignified and noble are the thoughts of God, than the vain imaginations of the human heart! None but fools will trifle with the souls of men.” (DHC 3:295; see also TPJS p. 137).

Br. Snuffer uses the above passage from Joseph in his book *Eighteen Verses*:

“This is the process by which men and women come to know God. They move in both directions at once. As their minds expand upward, they must deal with the struggles and opposition associated with gaining insight into God’s will. This is the great difference between scholarly knowledge and Divine insight. In the one, it is possible to obtain a lifetime’s study without ever encountering the opposition of evil. **But in the other, as you encounter God, you will have to suffer from demonic opposition.** Devils don’t bother you at the library. They do, however, on the way to the Temple.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

A Savior who would not save Himself is best understood by gifted people whose gifts cannot relieve them of their own sufferings. He is seen most clearly by the ones who hold authority; receive honor and respect, but who are powerless to reclaim their health and vigor. The irony of heavenly success is coupled with earthly disappointments and sorrows is the theme from the Book of Job to the modern revelations in Liberty Prison. How can one be both blessed and chosen, and cursed and spit upon? It is ironic. Yet it is the way of the Savior.

The ‘Suffering Servant’ passage of Isaiah 53 is not just a description of the Savior. It is also a description of those who follow Him. All who would be part of His kingdom must understand what it means to be men and women of sorrow and acquainted with grief. They must know what it means to have others turn their faces from them, in judgment and dismissal. For without receiving a part of His sufferings in this life, we cannot expect to have a part with Him in the eternities. He asks us to: “Take my yoke upon you, and learn of me; for I am meek and lowly in heart: and ye shall find rest unto your souls.” (Matt. 11:29.)” (pp. 300-301, emphasis added)

I once had the opportunity to have a three-hour lunch with a Seventy from my Church. After telling him of our experiences, the only advice he offered me was, “I need to let you know that as wide as heaven opens to you and your family, hell will open just as wide.” We had learned the truth of that statement during the 3 years prior to our lunch together. Hell indeed had opened just as wide. After a while it just came to be expected. Later when we started to do the Ezekiel Seminars about Christ, we could determine how spiritual the seminar would be by the amount of opposition my family and the speakers experienced the week or two before. It

Conquering Spiritual Evil

got to be a running joke among us after a while. “Wow, this one must be good because we sure are going through hell to get there.”

Does the “darkest abyss” that Joseph said we need to “contemplate and search into” go as deep and as dark as the Celestial Kingdom is high and full of light? Do we really need to contemplate and search them in order to understand their opposite nature and be able to dwell there? Apparently it does, at least according to the scriptures and the Prophet Joseph. Brigham Young even weighed in with his opinion: “So when individuals are blessed with visions, revelations, and great manifestations, look out, then the devil is nigh you, and **you will be tempted in proportion to the vision, revelation, or manifestation you have received.** Hence thousands, when they are off their guard, give way to the severe temptations which come upon them, and behold they are gone.” (JD Vol. 3, p. 206, Emphasis added)

When the adversary makes a statement that he wears an emblem of his priesthoods and power, does that reflect the opposites of Aaronic and Melchizedek Priesthoods? Do his priesthoods fulfill the mandate from God that there be opposition in all things? Obviously he has great power and uses it to influence, deceive, tempt, and try to destroy mankind. Many individuals seek for this power because they feel it is easy to obtain, and they want to control, influence, deceive, dominate, and use others for their benefit. But the adversary has power only because God allows it. One day that will end, and Satan and his host will be cast into outer darkness.

“It would seem also, that wicked spirits have their bounds, limits and laws by which they are governed or controlled, and know their future destiny; hence, those that were in the maniac said to our Savior, ‘Art thou come to torment us before our time,’ and when Satan presented himself before the Lord, among the sons of God, he said that he came, ‘from going to and fro in the earth, and from

Conquering Spiritual Evil

wandering up and down in it;’ and he is emphatically called the prince of the power of the air; and, it is very evident that they possess a power that none but those who have Priesthood can control, as we have before adverted to, in the case of the sons of Sceva.” (HC 4:576) The Lord also said in D&C 122:9, “...for their bounds are set, they cannot pass.”

It appears that the adversary and his minions have their own bounds, limits, and laws that control and govern them just as the Lord does with His angels. This very plainly shows the concept of opposition in all things. As previously mentioned in D&C 121:4 it states: “O Lord God Almighty, maker of heaven, earth, and seas, and of all things that in them are, and who controllest and subjectest the devil, and the dark and benighted dominion of Sheol...” It is the Lord God Almighty that sets the bounds, limits, laws, dominions, and controls of the devil and his hosts.

God also sets the bounds of angels and what they are allowed to do, say, and minister. Joseph and many of his companions pierced the veil and saw angels, conversed with them, and were administered to by them. “Angels shall guard his (Bishop Whitney’s) house, and shall guard the lives of his posterity. (HC 2:288, 21 January 1836) Many of my brethren who received the ordinance [of anointing] with me saw glorious visions also. Angels ministered unto them as well as to myself. . .Others, [high councilors] were ministered unto by holy angels. (HC 2:288, 381, 382) Yet as previously mentioned they also have their bounds, limits, and laws by which they operate. For example, Joseph Smith indicated, “If an Angel or spirit appears offer him your hand; if he is a spirit from God he will stand still and not offer you his hand back. If from the Devil he will either shrink back from you or offer his hand, which if he does you will feel nothing, but be deceived. A good Spirit will not deceive. Angels are beings who have bodies and appear to men in the form of man. (WOJS, p. 44) Also in the

Conquering Spiritual Evil

minutes of the General Conference in Nauvoo, [President Joseph Smith] explained the difference between an angel and a ministering spirit; the one a resurrected or translated body, with its spirit ministering to embodied spirits—the other a disembodied spirit, visiting and ministering to disembodied spirits. Jesus Christ became a ministering spirit (while His body was lying in the sepulcher) to the spirits in prison, to fulfill an important part of His mission, without which He could not have perfected His work, or entered into His rest. After His resurrection He appeared as an angel to His disciples.” (HC 4:425) Therefore, “[God] set the ordinances to be the same forever and ever, and set Adam to watch over them, to reveal them from heaven to man, or to send angels to reveal them. ‘Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation?’ (Hebrews 1:14).

These angels are under the direction of Michael or Adam, who acts under the direction of the Lord. From the above quotation we learn that Paul perfectly understood the purposes of God in relation to His connection with man, and that glorious and perfect order which He established in Himself, whereby he sent forth power, revelations, and glory.” (HC 4:208)

From these quotes we can see a gradation in spirits, translated beings, and resurrected beings of light. I am sure there are many “levels” within each of these realms, depending on the amount of light and understanding we gained while in this mortal probation. We discuss angels and archangels in our church, with Michael being declared an archangel. “But, behold, verily I say unto you, before the earth shall pass away, Michael, mine archangel, shall sound his trump, and then shall all the dead awake, for their graves shall be opened, and they shall come forth—yea, even all.” (D&C 29:26)

Since there is a hierarchy among beings of light, would the same be true with beings of darkness? Years ago I was discussing with my daughter, Denise, the concept of a gradation of dark entities. When the Lord declared that some only come out “by

Conquering Spiritual Evil

fasting and prayer,” He showed us that this is a true principle. Denise made the comment that there are “little devils” that she called a “number one” and said that they go all the way up to the adversary which she called a “number ten.” Later she would tell me that she really should have said that their gradation should go from one to one-hundred. She mentioned that the nines and tens on her former scale were devils you didn’t want to mess with; they were extremely powerful. That would make sense if we look at these as being the opposite of the Lord and His archangels, otherwise it would be impossible to be “tempted in proportion to the vision, revelation, or manifestation you have received.” (JD Vol. 3, p. 206) There is a balance that is required even in these things.

We also discussed possible reasons why the average person can’t see beings of light or beings of darkness. She mentioned how she had been shown how everything vibrates at a different rate and light beings vibrate at a higher rate or frequency than we do. It requires our spiritual eyes to be opened to see them. As Joseph F. Smith said in D&C, section 138, verse 11: “As I pondered over these things which are written, the eyes of my understanding were opened...” Or with Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery in section 110, verse 1: “The veil was taken from our minds, and the eyes of our understanding were opened.” And finally with Joseph and Sidney Rigdon in section 76, verse 12: “By the power of the Spirit our eyes were opened ...” Shortly after talking to Denise I listened to a scientist talk about a discovery through experiments that the energy/light spectrum is huge and that we see very little of it. He went on to explain that if the full energy/light spectrum that has been measured was as tall as the Empire State building which is one hundred stories tall, and the energy /light spectrum that we humans see was shown on the side of that building it would be tiny in comparison. He stated that the energy/light spectrum that we humans can detect is about the thickness of a grain of sand. That means there is so much more out there that we can’t see or even imagine. King Benjamin was right; man really is small when

Conquering Spiritual Evil

compared to the workings of God. We really are a speck of sand on the seashore. Yet God knows us and loves us as much as any of His creations. His only desire is to “bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man.” (Moses 1:39)

When one embraces the idea that angels and devils from an unseen realm actually exist, events in this mortal sphere begin to make sense. Events no longer become just occurrences or coincidences, but can be seen as tests, trails, afflictions, and blessing that can be used to bless our lives through the grace and power of God.

Unfortunately, however, many still scoff at all spiritual phenomenon as being “evil” thereby labeling those who have such experiences as weird, crude, spiritually unsophisticated, or primitive and judging them as superstitious, naïve, deceived, or under the influence of Satan. Some even claimed that they have such spiritual understanding and insight that they 1. “understand what is going on.” Which means nothing because they deny spirits exist; or 2. “don’t need such experiences” because they are spiritually beyond such experiences; or 3. are tolerant or curious enough to acknowledge that they have these experiences/encounters but proclaim that these occurrences are “so sacred that they should not be shared or spoken about.” Curiously, I have also heard of esteemed individuals who blatantly deny that such occurrences really happened to early Saints or admit that if they really did happen, then “it is because the people at that time needed these experiences to strengthen their faith and show power unneeded in today’s world.” All of these rationales are attempts to either deny the existence of spiritual experiences or deny the power of God and Satan. Some, however, may only use these excuses to cover their fear and don’t want to understand how both the temporal and spiritual worlds interact.

A good friend recorded on his blog that “within a year (middle 1970’s) of joining [the church] I’d received visits from angels, and been attacked by the adversary and a hoard of his

Conquering Spiritual Evil

minions. My life was threatened by those who are darkness itself, and was delivered by beings of light. As a new convert, who had recently joined after studying Joseph Smith's experience, I thought this was normal for Mormons. I thought this kind of stuff happened to everyone. I learned, however, that it was not and I should not talk about such things because some became easily offended."

We LDS tend to sweep these kinds of things aside. If we have entertained angels, it is considered too sacred to talk about. If we have experienced the adversary, we must be of an evil nature. Neither assumption is true. If it was too sacred we would not have the Joseph Smith story or the scriptures, and everyone that attains light in their life will have to confront the darkness.

Evil can be disturbing, even scary at times. I know when a number "9" or higher is after a person, it can be downright scary and intimidating, especially if knowledge about how evil works and how to control it is labeled as taboo or is intentionally disregarded, ignored, or locked behind the closed doors of piety with the warning that it should not be discussed lest one be taken or overcome by it, or even worse, decide to become part of it. This is no more than a lack of understanding or the use of fear to exercise control on other individuals. Ignorance can be extremely scary and sometimes dangerous. When we gain knowledge, we can stay out of fear and overcome what is being thrown at us. Ignoring the problem will not make it go away. **These things must be brought to light in order to dispel the falsehoods and ignorance that surrounds them.** Even the Lord stated this in D&C 123:13-15: "Therefore, that we should waste and wear out our lives in bringing to light all the hidden things of darkness, wherein we know them; and they are truly manifest from heaven—these should then be attended to with great earnestness. Let no man count them as small things; for there is much which lieth in futurity, pertaining to the saints, which depends upon these things."

Conquering Spiritual Evil

As we grow in spiritual understanding and have experiences with angels, the Lord, and others beyond the veil, our confidence will grow. We will understand that it is just part of the process of growth in the gospel of Christ, knowing that these things are required.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Chapter Four

THE BEGINNING

“Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of this might. Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil.

For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, **but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.”**
(Ephesians 6:10-12, Emphasis added)

On a November afternoon in 1999 I was thrust into a world I really knew nothing about—a world of spiritually sighted, gifted people. It all started with my ten-year-old daughter, Denise, who had not been feeling well for months. We were told by two RNs and a doctor in our ward (church) that she just had the flu bug and to keep giving her liquids and let her rest. We did what they suggested, but she never seemed to feel well. This went on for several months.

On November 5, Denise stayed home from school, not feeling very well. She played a little that morning, watched a movie and laid down for a nap. Dianne called me into her room a short while later saying that she could not wake Denise up from her nap. We called a friend and told him about Denise and that we wanted him to voice a blessing to her before we went to the hospital. I remember driving the car to his home at over one hundred miles per hour. At his home I carried her in, and he voiced a short blessing to her, saying that all damage would be stopped at the point where it was. I remember thinking that it was kind of a strange blessing. In fact the other Priesthood holder who helped with the blessing thought the same thing and said that they “could

Conquering Spiritual Evil

have healed her instantly.” My friend just said he followed the Spirit.

At Primary Children’s Medical Center they took her away to assess the problem. After a while they told us that she was in a diabetic coma but that the coma wasn’t the worst of her problems; she had suffered a stroke at the base of her left brain. The Neurologists told us that her left brain had been pretty much destroyed and that she would never walk or talk again — if she lived. They said she would most likely pass away within twenty-five hours; all of her organs were shutting down and her brain was swelling. If she did live by some miracle, she would spend the rest of her life as a vegetable. I found out later that they had prepared papers for us to sign for organ donation.

Denise looked terrible with a breathing tube out of her mouth and a feeding tube in her nose. They had literally screwed a “bolt” into the top of her head, above her forehead, to measure the pressure on the brain. It was hooked up to wires. She also had an IV in her arm.

Many friends and family members wanted to see her for the last time; I was overwhelmed. I took two people at a time into the Intensive Care Unit to see her. The questions were endless from them and from the doctors. Even though I was overwhelmed and troubled, I was really amazed to see and **feel** the love from everyone. This love was palpable.

Later that night I had to go some place quiet and think about my daughter’s prognosis. I went outside to the back of the hospital to be alone. While contemplating all of the events of the day, I was nearly overcome with all of it. I knelt and asked Heavenly Father why He was going to take my daughter. If just **one** medical person that we had talked to weeks before would have said the word “diabetes,” this would not be happening.

The only Heavenly answer I received was to “be grateful”; now I was really puzzled. Be grateful that she was dying? Grateful

Conquering Spiritual Evil

for those that I had asked what might be wrong, and they said it was just a flu bug? Again I was told to be grateful.

So I knelt there and started to express gratitude for my daughter, for the ten years I had lived with her and all the joy she had brought into our lives. I expressed gratitude for many other things. I told my Father in Heaven that I was giving my daughter to Him and His will be done, not mine.

Suddenly I felt an “energy” or love come over my entire body. It was Peace, the Lord’s Peace. The scriptures talk about His peace that goes beyond understanding; this was that peace.

“Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you: not as the world giveth, give I unto you. Let not your heart be troubled, neither let it be afraid.” (John 14:27)

“And the peace of God, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus.” (Philippians 4:7)

At that moment I knew that our Father was in charge and that if Denise passed away, it was alright. If she lived and was a vegetable the rest of her life, that was okay, too, because that would be His will, and He was in charge. All fear, trouble, and anxiety had left me. It really was a “peace” that was beyond all understanding as it permeated every cell in my being, both spiritual and physical. I don’t have words to describe how profound it was.

Later I found my wife, and somehow she had experienced the same peace I had been given. A day later our Bishop privately talked to us about being “in denial” about Denise and her condition. He was concerned about our own mental health because we didn’t cry over her. He stated, “She is going to die, and you two don’t seem to care.” He was afraid that we might need some counseling. If I hadn’t received the Lord’s peace, I would have thought the same thing.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

I tried to explain the peace we had received, that we knew it was in the Lord's hands, and we were content with that. He said he had no idea what I was even talking about. I felt like I should just be quiet about it. We learned to focus on the love coming in through prayers and that would cause us to cry appropriately when people were around. We didn't want to be "in denial", but we just could not explain this peace our Father had given to us through His Son, Jesus Christ.

After three days in the coma, Denise popped open her eyes, looked at me and said, "I'm hungry." I had been sitting by her side in the PICU.

I whispered back to her, "I love you, 'Niece'".

"I love you too, Daddy," she said and went back to sleep.

The nurse assigned to her bed in the Intensive Care Unit looked up and asked if she had spoken. I told her what Denise had said, and suddenly the whole place was abuzz with all kinds of activity. She called the doctors, and everyone descended upon Denise to check her out. They told me there was no explanation for her doing what she had just done.

The next day she woke up and stayed awake, though she could not talk. She was indeed a vegetable and had to relearn everything. Denise was a ten-year old newborn baby. She didn't even know her ABC's. To say the medical personal were shocked would be a major understatement. They didn't seem to know what to think. The neurologist talked to us and said, "Don't get your hopes up. She has lost half of her brain, and we know that brain cells can't duplicate themselves." They told us that they didn't think she would even be able to swallow again. She proved them wrong. That week a friend brought us a magazine article that said scientists had discovered that brain cells can duplicate themselves.

Denise recovered rapidly. After several weeks of physical therapy, she learned to walk again. She was learning to talk, she was relearning her alphabet and how to read and write, even to cross a road safely. We left the hospital twenty-five days after going in; she

Conquering Spiritual Evil

was our little miracle girl. The morning we left the hospital, Denise was sitting on the floor tying her shoelaces when her doctor came in. The doctor just stood there looking at Denise, shaking her head in disbelief and then turned around and walked away, not saying a word to us or to Denise. If I hadn't been there to witness all of it, I probably wouldn't have believed it either.

We took her home on November 30, 1999. That is when we entered what I affectionately call the "Twilight Zone." We soon found out that she could see the energy field around people's bodies, their aura. That was kind of cool at first. Then we found that she had spent the time during her coma with Jesus and had seen much of His life and much more. I had a harder time with that one until she told me things that a ten year old would never know. She took me into the living room and put on several church videos of the crucifixion. She "critiqued" the videos saying at several points how they had it wrong. She mentioned how the crown of thorns had fallen off at one point and several other things that were different in the videos compared to what she had been shown.

"Daddy, the nails were this big (showing me with her fingers how long they were and how big around they were) and they put one here (pointing to the center of her palm) and another one here (pointing to the middle of her wrist)."

It was then I knew she had really seen these things because I knew she had not been taught in Primary or in our home that Jesus was double nailed to the cross.

A few days later we also found that some of her veils had dropped, and she could see spirits—good and bad ones. That really stretched my belief system. I had grown up in the LDS Church and knew of such things. But to hear and have our daughter see these things was really hard to believe. But we had so many experiences, encounters, and episodes that we couldn't deny they were real. The best evidence was the witness from the Spirit that what she was experiencing was real. Alma was right: "And now, he imparteth his

Conquering Spiritual Evil

word by angels unto men, yea, not only men but women also. Now this is not all; **little children do have words given unto them many times**, which confound the wise and the learned.” (Alma 32:23, Emphasis added)

Just recently in the April 2011 LDS general conference Elder Richards talked about a young girl that saw through the veil. He was referencing an article from the June 1995 Ensign magazine about a young girl named Sherrie that had endured a long surgery. Elder Richards explained:

“Following the surgery, Clayne and Debbie spent the day praying fervently and taking turns keeping vigil at Sherrie’s bedside. As he watched his red-haired daughter sleep in a curtained cubicle that night, Clayne worried that she might die, as Dr. Walker had warned. But Sherrie awoke the next morning and immediately began speaking. A feeling of reverence engulfed the cubicle. For a moment, Clayne was puzzled by Sherrie’s words.

‘Daddy, Aunt Cheryl is here,’ she told her father. ‘And another lady I don’t know is with her.’ Clayne and an attending nurse, the only ones at Sherrie’s bedside, glanced at each other. Sherrie continued.

‘Grandpa Norman [Sherrie’s deceased great-grandfather] and Grandma Brown [Sherrie’s deceased great-great-grandmother] are here. And Daddy, who is that standing beside you?’

‘I don’t know, honey,’ Clayne replied. ‘Who does he look like?’

‘He looks like you, only taller.’ Sherrie paused, then continued. ‘He says he’s your brother, Jimmy.’

Clayne was three when Jimmy, ten years his senior, died of cystic fibrosis. ‘I doubt that during Sherrie’s life Jimmy’s name had ever been mentioned,’ Clayne says. ‘She had never even seen a picture of him.’

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Clayne, feeling that Sherrie's death was imminent, hurried from the intensive care unit to awaken Debbie, who was sleeping in the hospital's parent room. 'There are visitors,' he told his wife. 'I can't see them, and I doubt that you can see them. But I can feel them.'

For nearly an hour, Sherrie looked about her cubical and described her visitors, all deceased family members. Exhausted, she then fell asleep.

'Daddy, all of the children here in the intensive care unit have angels helping them,' Sherrie later told her father. Other visits and sacred experiences, before and after subsequent surgeries and during painful tests and procedures, followed.

'People from the other side helped,' Sherrie recalls tearfully. 'When I was really in pain, they would come and help me calm down. They told me that I would be okay and that I would make it through.'" (June, 1995)

When similar experiences happened to Denise, we had no idea this article had been published. We had never heard of such things or dreamed they would happen to us and our daughter. That summer of 2000 a movie came out called "The Sixth Sense". My wife and I sat in the theater and cried like babies when the young boy told his mother, "I see dead people." I turned to Dianne and asked, "Why does Hollywood get this and our neighbors and family don't?

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Chapter Five

SPIRITUALLY GIFTED

In 2001 we felt inspired to publish a book about our experiences called “My Peace I Give Unto You.” A year later, we were asked to give a book review which started a tour of reviews. We did nearly four hundred of them around the country. Doing the book reviews was a great experience because it allowed us to meet many dozens of spiritually gifted people like Denise. Most of them were in hiding from family and church members as they felt misunderstood. I really didn’t understand this because as LDS people we claim all the gifts of God and surely we would embrace all the spiritually gifted people and celebrate their gifts.

It was during this time that President Gordon B. Hinckley of my church declared in the October 2001 General Conference that Joel 2:28-29 had come to pass, then he quoted it:

“And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions; and also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit.”

I shouted for joy! Now, I thought, all those with gifts will be able to come forward and not be afraid of sharing them. Priesthood leaders will now help these people as well as the other church members to accept these things, knowing they come from the Lord and will now know that these spiritually gifted people aren’t just making these things up.

Other scriptures besides Joel have a similar message. The Seventh Article of Faith declares these things: “We believe in the

Conquering Spiritual Evil

gift of tongues, prophecy, revelation, visions, healing, interpretation of tongues, and so forth.” Moroni even declared:

“And again I speak unto you who deny the revelations of God, and say that they are done away, that there are no revelations, nor prophecies, nor gifts, nor healing, nor speaking in tongues, and the interpretation of tongues; behold I say unto you, he that denieth these things knoweth not the gospel of Christ; yea, he has not read the scriptures; if so, he does not understand them.” (Mormon 9:7-8)

Also modern revelation states:

“And again, it is given by the Holy Ghost to some to know the diversities of operations, whether they be of God, that the manifestations of the Spirit may be given to every man to profit withal. And again, verily I say unto you, to some is given, by the Spirit of God, the word of wisdom. To another is given the word of knowledge, that all may be taught to be wise and to have knowledge. And again, to some it is given to have faith to be healed; and to others it is given to have faith to heal. And again, to some is given the working of miracles; and to others it is given to prophesy; and to others the discerning of spirits. And again, it is given to some to speak with tongues; and to another is given the interpretation of tongues. **And all these gifts come from God, for the benefit of the children of God.**” (D&C 46:16-26 Emphasis added)

After we published a second book “Possibilities...Lessons from the Spirit”, we felt inspired to organize seminars for spiritually gifted people or anyone that wanted to come. We called them Ezekiel Seminars and over a two-year period held twenty of them. We met hundreds of spiritually gifted people during this time.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Once again, nearly all of them “in the closet,” so to speak, because of their gifts and had had several difficult experiences. Many of these people just buried their gifts, refusing to acknowledge they existed because sometimes the opposition to their gifts was so heavy. On many occasions I would see women in the audience crying. During the break I would ask them what was wrong and if I could be of any help. They would all tell me the same thing. “I feel like I have come home. I’m not a freak; there are others like me.”

It was during this time that people started to ask for help with spiritual problems such as a spouse, son, or daughter with a possible possession problem or their house had spirits, yet their spouse or priesthood leader would say that those things didn’t exist anymore. I couldn’t offer any advice as I didn’t feel qualified.

I knew the gifts were real, my daughter was a vivid example of this, and what these people were experiencing was real. The validity of these requests had been manifested to me on many occasions. I also knew all gifted people had to figure out how to deal with their gifts in this world. That is a challenge to many of them. Without the support of spouses, family, ward members, and the church, it is really quite hard to live in this Telestial world and be gifted. These gifted people had expressed to me how real the dark is and difficult it is to deal with. They had been deceived many times. That is also why some of them had hidden their gifts, since they didn’t want to be deceived again.

I have been around spiritually sighted people long enough to know what a great burden they carry. These people were beside themselves, not being able to “understand” what was going on, yet having incredible experiences and problems manifest themselves in front of their eyes. I have come to realize that this scripture is true, something I will quote many times in this work:

“Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord,
and in the power of this might. Put on the whole
armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against

Conquering Spiritual Evil

the wiles of the devil. For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, **but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.**” (Ephesians 6:10-12 emphasis added)

Many prophets have been spiritually sighted. When Elisha and his servant were in the city, they awakened to a surprise:

“And when the servant of the man of God was risen early, and gone forth, behold, an host compassed the city both with horses and chariots. And his servant said unto him, Alas, my master! How shall we do? And he answered, Fear not: for they that be with us are more than they that be with them. And Elisha prayed, and said, Lord, I pray thee, open his eyes, that he may see. And the Lord opened the eyes of the young man; and he saw: and, behold, the mountains was full of horses and chariots of fire round about Elisha.” (2 Kings 6:15-17)

This view opened to a prophet who was sighted. I found out that many of these gifted people see these things. I know a man that heard something outside of his house and went out to take a look. He saw a huge army marching past his property. He called his family out, and they watched this army march past for several hours. They were all seeing in the spirit.

How is this possible? As mentioned previously, I listened to a doctor/scientist explain the measured spectrum of light or energy. He suggested we put that spectrum of light/energy equal in length to the Empire State building as a measurement of how big it is. He then asked how big the spectrum of light/energy that we humans see would be compared to it the Empire State building? Would what we see be equal to thirty floors, twenty floors or ten

Conquering Spiritual Evil

floors? The answer is the light/energy spectrum we see would be smaller than a grain of sand. That shows us how much we really don't see and don't know about. Just because the rest of us "blind" people don't see it, doesn't mean it doesn't exist. If to God, "all things are spiritual" then would we not have that side of the veil there to help us fight our battles, especially if we have asked for that help just like Elisha did? I testify that these things are true; I have experienced it many times and seen some of it with my spiritual sight.

Do we need our physical eyes to see spiritually? This experience will answer that question. Recently I held a seminar featuring a man named Jason. He is quite a unique individual in that he became completely blind several decades ago after being sighted for over thirty years. Though he has no optic nerves, Jason can see energy, colors, a person's intent, and much more. So much so it is hard to believe he is completely blind. It still is a little disconcerting to see him touch things and say what color it is; he sees colors with his finger tips.

He told me, "I needed to go blind in order to really see."

Jason has the gift of seeing more of the light spectrum than most of the rest of us. He goes rock hunting and always finds the best rocks, as he sees their energy. He can tell if a person is of evil intent or of light. I don't know how to explain that he sees or perceives intention other than to say that the Lord did the same.

"But when Jesus perceived their thoughts, he answering said unto them, What reason ye in your hearts?" (Luke 5:22)

"And Jesus, perceiving the thought of their heart, took a child, and set him by him." (Luke 9:47) (Also see Matthew 22:18, Mark 2:8, John 6:15)

Jason talks about Jacques Lusseyran, a man who went blind at the age of eight and became sighted like Jason is. Jacques helped lead the French resistance during WWII. He was put into a Nazi

Conquering Spiritual Evil

concentration camp for fifteen months. He made the comment that if he became frustrated, his ability to “see” would go away, and he became a normal blind guy. Jason said the same thing about his negative emotions.

Jason explained further: “As a child, very soon after the accident that blinded him [Jacques], he became aware ‘of a radiance emanating from a place I knew nothing about. . . I saw light and went on seeing it though I was blind.’ And ‘from that moment on,’ he writes, blindness became for me a fascinating experience and the attempt to live in a new way.” (Lusseyran, p. ii)

There are many things that we just don’t understand and aren’t familiar with. That doesn’t mean they don’t exist and aren’t true. The invisible light spectrum or the spirit world is massive, and those of us with our veils intact really have no concept how large it is or what is going on there.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Chapter Six

REALITY OF WAR WITH EVIL

Brigham Young said:

“I know very well that, whether we are active or not, the invisible spirits are active. And every person who desires and strives to be a Saint is closely watched by fallen spirits that came here when Lucifer fell, and by the spirits of wicked persons who have been here in tabernacles and departed them, but who are still under the control of the prince of the power of the air. Those spirits are never idle; they are watching every person who wishes to do right, and are continually prompting them to do wrong. **This makes it necessary for us to be continually on our guard—makes this probation a continual warfare.**” (JD, 7: 239, emphasis added)

Wilford Woodruff (1969) made similar comments:

“Where are they (devils)? Some are in Salt Lake, some in New York, some in Amsterdam, some in Constantinople, some in Jerusalem; in fact, they are in every city and hamlet wherein the inhabitants of the earth dwell, and especially where there are any Latter-day Saints. And whether there are one hundred or not to every man, woman, and child, there are enough of them, at least, to labor for our overthrow. I say to my counselors, to the apostles, to the seventies, the high priests, the bishops, and all men who bear the Holy Priesthood, do you suppose these devils are around us without trying to do something? Are they asleep? Have

Conquering Spiritual Evil

they not a work to perform? **I say to my brethren who bear the priesthood, we have got a mighty warfare to wage with these spirits. We cannot escape it.** What will they do to you? 'They will try to make us do anything and everything that is not right. These devils would be very glad to make me and my brethren think we are great men, smarter than anyone else; to divide us one against the other, and to cause us to seek to confess our brother's sins instead of our own. We should, therefore, watch ourselves well.'" (p. 239, emphasis added)

After many experiences with people being possessed, full of devices, implants, hexes, curses, and otherwise afflicted, I have come to know that we truly are at war. It is just a continuation of the war before this life. I have chatted with those that have seen it, and they have assured me it wasn't just a "war of words." Some of us seem to want it to be just that, a philosophical debate. It was and is a real war. I have a feeling that to those on the other side of the veil this war exists and is being fought there as well as here.

I don't even need to ask the question if the adversary is at war with us. We all know he is. But is it important for us to know this? Do we need to know how he works and what he does or can do? Would it be plausible that the Lord might need us in this battle that is still being waged? If we are ignorant of it, does it still affect us? If it's in the invisible light spectrum and we can't see it, does it still affect us? YES! It affects us every day. We can sit with our head in the sand, or we can become cognizant of the enemy, of the battle and what to do about it.

After my daughter's three day near-death-experience (NDE), she has said very little publicly about the Lord taking her to see hell. Privately she has told us that she saw the adversary and his armies. She saw places where they make the weapons they use to inflict us; she saw demons making darts, spears, arrows, battleaxes, and so much more. She saw the devices they make and place on us

Conquering Spiritual Evil

mortals to control and cause us problems. Maybe it's time to become one of those "stripling warriors" we love to talk about from the Book of Mormon, only on both battlefields—physical and spiritual. I mentioned this scripture before, but it is worth stating again.

“Therefore, that we should waste and wear out our lives in bringing to light all the hidden things of darkness, wherein we know them; and they truly manifest from heaven—
These should be attended to with great earnestness. Let no man count them as small things; for there is much which lieth in futurity, pertaining to the saints, which depends upon these things.” (D&C 123:13-15)

What is the Lord talking about when He says that we should attend to these things with “great earnestness” for we should not “count them as small things”? Then He goes on to say that as far as the saints go, there is “much which lieth in futurity . . . which depends on these things.” Sounds like we had better get busy and get understanding and with that understanding get wisdom, or we may not be of much value in this battle that is being waged.

Of course there are many that say that it just might be easier to let the Brethren fight the battles. Maybe we should just go back to our ipods, internet, email, getting our resume polished, making a lot of money, girlfriends, boyfriends, our toys, boats, motor homes, and not worry about these things. “You know I just have to see who wins American Idol.” Many people declare “All is well in Zion,” and “I don’t ‘see’ like those people do, so there’s not much I can do anyway.” I can guarantee that many of our children are getting sucked in by all the glitz, glamour, and hype of Hollywood and Madison Avenue. This quote from Joseph Smith is so important I will repeat it again:

Conquering Spiritual Evil

“A man is saved no faster than he gets knowledge, for if he does not get knowledge, he will be brought into captivity by some evil power in the other world, as evil spirits will have more knowledge and consequently more power than many men who are on earth. Hence it needs revelation to assist us, and give us knowledge of the things of God.”
(DHC 4:588)

So Joseph said we need to get knowledge of these things or it may not bode well for us in the other world. We should seek revelation to assist us and give us knowledge. I know the Lord is willing if we are. All of us are surrounded by evil. I for one do not want to be brought into subjection to some evil entity for lack of knowledge when it is available to me now. With some effort it is possible to understand how they work and how they can be brought into subjection. If we bring them into subjection then Zion might not be far behind, as we will be standing in holy places, and the adversary will have no power over us—he will be bound in that he will have no power over the hearts of the children of men.

Joseph Smith has said that we must search into and contemplate the darkest abyss and the broad expanse of eternity. Might it be important to understand the opposite of God in order to understand Him completely? Just a thought, but did we not come here to experience what we choose to call opposites--light and dark, sweet and sour, pleasure and pain, joy and sorrow, etc. “And it must needs be that the devil should tempt the children of men, or they could not be agents unto themselves; for if they never should have bitter they could not know the sweet.” (D&C 29:39)

Much of the time many families in the church encounter a lack of priesthood direction in the home. One time I was talking with several women; who would be considered strong LDS with strong LDS families. I sat there amazed as each one talked about family members who were having problems with demons, possession and basically all kinds of darkness. They indicated that

Conquering Spiritual Evil

their husbands don't or won't deal with the problems. They are too busy with their sports, television, and video games.

One of them said, "When I try to talk about spiritual things with my husband, he just says, 'yes Honey', as he turns back to the television set."

The other woman talked about how her teenage son who is so scared of demons and their influence on with him that he'll get under his covers at night and reach out with a long stick to turn off the light.

All of these women wished their husbands would step up and figure out how to help their children and families in this war. Most of the people I have met are begging for help and don't know where to find it. It is important for priesthood holders to get active in this fight. Their families are suffering as a result of their non-participation.

Just recently I chatted with a woman from a nearby State. She and her children are gifted in that at times they can see spirits, both light and dark. Her oldest son brought home books about witchcraft and did what was necessary to invite dark spirits into their home; he opened a portal to the underworld. The mother and his siblings were able to see what was now coming into their home. When he came home from being with his friends they could see the dark spirits that surrounded him and were also in him. They dedicated their home and it helped for several days, then the dark spirits took over again. They didn't know of anyone in their ward or stake that might help them, so they have suffered in silence for years now. The youngest daughter just went off to college and called her mother telling her that there was the spirit of a four-year-old girl that keeps coming to her. She asked her mother what she could do about it and the mother had no help to offer her.

Joseph Smith said, "Try the spirits, but what by? . . . Who can drag into daylight and develop the hidden mysteries of the false spirits that so frequently are made manifest among the Latter-day Saints?" (TPJS 203-4). He gave us the answer to his own question

Conquering Spiritual Evil

saying that a man cannot expose false spirits unless he has the priesthood and **a knowledge of the laws by which spirits are governed.**

“Or who can drag into daylight and develop the hidden mysteries of the false spirits that so frequently are made manifest among the Latter-day Saints? **We answer that no man can do this without the Priesthood, and having a knowledge of the laws by which spirits are governed;** for as no man knows the things of God, but by the Spirit of God, so no man knows the spirit of the devil, and his power and influence, but by possessing intelligence which is more than human, and **having unfolded through the medium of the Priesthood the mysterious operations of his devices;** without knowing the angelic form, the sanctified look and gesture, and the zeal that is frequently manifested by him for the glory of God, together with the prophetic spirit, the gracious influence, the godly appearance, and the holy garb, which are so characteristic of his proceedings and his mysterious windings.

A man must have the discerning of spirits before he can drag into daylight this hellish influence and unfold it unto the world in all its soul-destroying, diabolical, and horrid colors; **for nothing is a greater injury to the children of men than to be under the influence of a false spirit when they think they have the Spirit of God.**” (TPJS 204-5 Emphasis added)

Several years ago I met an individual that had an angel appear to him one night in the MTC in Provo, Utah who taught him many things. From that point on he could see through the veil and had many spirits visit him. He had a very difficult time discerning between the false and true spirits. He said, “For the next

Conquering Spiritual Evil

eight years I went through hell learning how not to be deceived by false spirits.”

Many of us have the false notion that if our veils dropped, we'd all be fine, that we could then learn all the mysteries of God. It would be much easier for us to figure things out because then we could “see”. How wrong we are in that assumption. Having your veil drop doesn't make it easier; it makes it harder.

One woman I met had prayed for over twenty years to have her veil drop and finally it happened. Now she prays for it to come back. We have no idea what is there. Many dream it is all light and wonderful. It is not. That is why Joseph described it as a “hellish influence, soul-destroying, diabolical and horrid colors.”

But have we been left unprotected? No. It is important to understand that it is something each individual must learn about. We will not be saved in ignorance. Have we not been told that with all our wisdom or learning we are to also get understanding? Understanding would be the knowledge of how things work in relation to us or others. We can spend all day at the library gaining much knowledge, but unless we understand how to implement those things we have been taught or learned, it won't do us much good. We came to this earth life to get a physical body to learn such things, to learn by experience, to learn how to control it so we are not influenced by darkness, how to bind darkness and keep it bound.

“Joseph said that before foundation of the Earth in the Grand Council that the Spirits of all Men were subject to oppression & the express purpose of God in Giving it a tabernacle was to arm it against the power of Darkness.” (WOJS, p. 62, original spelling)

“All beings who have bodies have power over those who have not. The devil has no power over us only as we permit him; the moment we

Conquering Spiritual Evil

revolt at anything which comes from God the Devil takes power.” (WOJS, p. 60)

“God saw that those intelegences had Not power to Defend themselves against those that had a tabernicle therefore the Lord Calls them together in Counsel & agrees to form them tabernicles so that he might Gender the Spirit & tabernicle together so as to create sympathy for their fellowman—for it is a Natural thing with those spirits that has the most power to bore down on those of Lesser power...” (WOJS, p. 68, original spelling)

According to Joseph, one of the reasons we came here was expressly to get this tabernacle of flesh to learn to arm ourselves against darkness. Sounds like it might be something we need to consider more fully in our lives and learn how to use this body as a shield against the destroyer and his minions.

I am grateful for my daughter, Denise, and all those like her who have endured so much and shared what they have seen and experienced in order to help us understand some of these things. Yes, they have been deceived and will continue to be at times. I am of the opinion that if someone claims to have never been deceived or can't be deceived, you might want to run in the other direction. We have all been deceived in the past.

I am most grateful for Joseph Smith and all he did to help us understand this subject. In his time Joseph wanted to share much more than he was able because the Saints just wouldn't accept what he knew. He knew that the Saints would fly apart like glass at new doctrine. Joseph saw the other realms and understood the spirits much better than most people in this dispensation. He knew the importance of not being deceived, yet he also understood that it is through trying the spirits that we gain understanding and learn not to be deceived. Of course we will be deceived in this life; it is part of the experience, but we can learn from that experience and gain in light and knowledge.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Chapter Seven

CHARACTERISTICS OF EVIL ENTITIES

The scriptures teach us several characteristics which describe the type and symptoms of evil spirits and spiritual attacks. When we pay close attention to these scriptures, we can gain a protective awareness so that we might recognize what we are fighting against or what is at war with us.

Characteristic #1: Devils, demons and unclean spirits can cause injury to occur to their victims.

“Lord, have mercy on my son: for he is lunatick, and sore vexed: for oftentimes he falleth into the fire, and oft into the water. And Jesus rebuked the devil; and he departed out of him: and the child was cured from that very hour.” (Matthew 17:15,18)

This young boy was possessed by a devil for a long period of time because the man said he would “ofttime” fall into the fire and water. We have found that it takes demons and devils a while to integrate into a physical body when they have taken over or possessed it. That is why you will see many people with possession problems that don’t seem very coordinated. Relatively speaking it takes a normal human a few years to develop the motor skills of an adult. But even though demons have had eons of time to figure out how to fully take over the complex neural-muscular coordination of a human body, it may take some time for it to fully integrate itself. But if this demon/devil does have full mastery over this boy and causes him to fall into the fire and water, it is most likely that it wants to cause physical injury to the boy. Yes, they are that evil and more.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

The lack of coordination is also evident when a spirit enters into those who claim to be spiritualists or receive spirits. Many of them tend to thrash about, stagger, fall down, shake, or some other strange movement. Some will contort the victim's face and limbs into weird shapes. I have seen this on a few occasions. A man possessed with an unclean spirit in the gospel of Mark shows how they can cause us harm.

“And always, night and day, he was in the mountains, and in the tombs, crying and cutting himself with stones.” (Mark 5:5)

Characteristic #2 Devils, demons, and some earth-bound spirits desire to inhabit and control a human host.

“And he said unto them, When the unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places, seeking rest and findeth none.” (Matthew 12:43)

Apparently these dark entities desire to inhabit human hosts. The Gospel of Matthew also talks about the two men who were possessed with devils and lived in the tombs (8:28) were so fierce that no man dared go near them. The Gospel of Mark tells us it is just one man. (5:2) But that doesn't matter. When he/they saw the Lord and knew He would cast them out, they asked to go into a herd of swine. (Matthew 8:31)

Characteristic #3 Demons and devils know the Savior and recognize his power over them.

Demons and devils recognize the Savior and his authority.

“And, behold, they cried out, saying, What have we to do with thee, Jesus, thou Son of God?

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Art thou come hither to torment us before the time?” (Matthew 8:29)

“And in the synagogue there was a man, which had a spirit of an unclean devil, and cried out with a loud voice, Saying, Let us alone: what have we to do with thee, thou Jesus of Nazareth? Art thou come to destroy us? I know thee who thou art; the Holy One of God. And Jesus rebuked him, saying, Hold thy peace, and come out of him. And when the devil had thrown him in the midst, he came out of him, and hurt him not.” (Luke 4:33-35)

Other scriptures showing that dark entities know Him:

“Now when the sun was setting all they that had any sick with divers diseases brought them unto him; and he laid hands on every one of them, and healed them. And devils also came out of many,, crying out, and saying, Thou art Christ the Son of God. And he rebuking them suffered them not to speak: for they knew that he was Christ.” (Luke 4:40-41)

“And he healed many that were sick of divers diseases and cast out many devils, and suffered not the devils to speak, because they knew him.” (Mark 1:34)

“And unclean spirits, when they saw him, fell down before him, and cried, saying, Thou art the Son of God. And he straitly charged them that they should not make him known.” (Mark 3:11-12)

Characteristic #4 **Possessed individuals are capable of extreme strength and violence.**

The Gospel of Mark tells us of a man “who had his dwelling among the tombs; and no man could bind him, no, not with chains; Because that he had been often bound with fetters and chains, and the chains had been plucked asunder by him, and the

Conquering Spiritual Evil

fetters broken in pieces: neither could any man tame him.” (Mark 5:3-4)

In the book of Acts it talks of a man that was possessed by evil spirits: “And the man in whom the evil spirit was leaped on them, and overcame them, and prevailed against them, so that they fled out of that house naked and wounded.” (Acts 19:16)

It is also possible to be physically overcome by people possessed with evil spirits. This will be discussed in the chapters dealing with “Possession.”

Characteristic #5 Possession can be long term and even generational.

The previous scriptural reference from Mark 5 showed a man that was “dwelling among the tombs” who had “been often bound with fetters and chains.” This seems to indicate that he had been possessed for quite some time before the Savior cast the demons out. On another occasion in Mark 9 this happened:

“And one of the multitude answered and said, Master, I have brought unto thee my son, which hath a dumb spirit; And wheresoever he taketh him he teareth him: and he foameth, and gnasheth with his teeth, and pineth away: and I spake to thy disciples that they should cast him out, and they could not. He answered him, and saith, O faithless generation, how long shall I be with you? how long shall I suffer you? bring him unto me. And they brought him unto him: and when he saw him, straightway the spirit tare him; and he fell on the ground, and wallowed foaming. And he asked his father, How long is it ago since this came unto him? And he said, Of a child.” (Mark 9:17-21)

We need to realize that some possessions go on for a long time, some are even generational. This will be discussed in chapter 15, “Little Children and Possession.”

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Characteristic #6 **Dark entities can cause disease and infirmities through possession.**

In a talk at Jedidiah Grant's funeral Brigham Young said this:

“You never felt a pain and ache, or felt disagreeable, or uncomfortable in your bodies and minds, but what an evil spirit was present causing it. Do you realize that the ague, the fever, the chills, the severe pain in the head, the pleurisy, or any pain in the system, from the crown of the head to the soles of the feet, is put there by the devil? You do not realize this, do you?...the spirits that afflict us and plant disease in our bodies, pain in the system, and finally death, have control over us so far as the flesh is concerned.” (JD 4:133)

If this is true then what are we to do about our many aches and pains? Many of the miracles the Lord did in the New Testament were proceeded by Him first casting out devils and demons which is an interesting order of healing.

“As they went out, behold, they brought to him a dumb man possessed with a devil. And when the devil was cast out the dumb spake: and the multitudes marveled, saying, It was never so seen in Israel.” (Matthew 9:32-33)

Several years ago a young woman who was very allergic to sunflowers seeds accidentally ate something with either sunflowers seeds or the residual of sunflower seeds and went into anaphylactic shock and couldn't breathe. A man placed his hands on her head and immediately after calling her by name, declaring priesthood, he cast out the demons that had been on the food and were causing this problem. He then commanded her muscles to relax.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

She immediately relaxed and started to breathe. She got up a few minutes later and resumed her day, none the worse for wear.

Even in the scriptures we find evidence of Satan causing illnesses:

“So went Satan from the presence of the LORD, and smote Job with sore boils from the sole of his foot unto his crown.” (Job 2:7)

“And, behold, a man of the company cried out, saying, Master, I beseech thee, look upon my son: for he is mine only child. And, lo, a spirit taketh him, and he suddenly crieth out; and it teareth him that he foameth again and bruising him hardly departeth from him. And I besought thy disciples to cast him out; and they could not. And Jesus answering said, O faithless and perverse generation, how long shall I be with you, and suffer you? Bring thy son hither. And as he was yet coming, the devil threw him down, and tare him. And Jesus rebuked the unclean spirit, and healed the child, and delivered him again to his father.” (Luke 9:38-42)

Here is a modern day example. When two missionaries in Brazil visited a family, the family informed them that their six-year-old daughter was possessed. They thought she just had some sort of mental disability as she just stood in the room with a bland expression on her face and didn't speak. What was interesting is when they said a prayer before leaving the home, she started to act up and really created a disturbance. Could she have had a possessing spirit in her causing these things? This is something to consider.

Characteristic #7 Devils and demons can cause addictions or facilitate our propensity for certain addictions.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

They have been at their “work” for so long that they know the human body so well that they know what hormone or area to tweak to cause a “desire” for things, often called a “craving.” When the dark entities are cast off, the cravings go away.

Characteristic #8 Dark entities can cause us to do unthinkable things we would never do otherwise, even cause physical harm to others.

This is easily demonstrated in the phenomenon of “mob mentality.” People talk about there being something that overtakes them, and they do horrible acts that otherwise they might never consider. I know of a wonderful mother who has tried to kill herself several times because the “voices” in her have convinced her that it is required to kill herself in order to atone for her sins. This came on suddenly after she learned a healing modality that teaches to send dark entities to the light. She was taught to invite them into her home to teach them the gospel and send them to the light. She became possessed and they convinced her to kill herself. Luckily she was not successful and finally received the help she needed.

Supposition #9 Some demons and devils are so powerful that they require fasting and prayer to cast them out.

Philo Dibble wrote in his journal: “I saw Joseph Smith the Prophet when he first came to Kirtland, and was with him in the first conference held in that place, which was a small schoolhouse. When he arose in our midst he said that before the conference closed that there were those present who should see the heavens open and bear record of the coming of the Son of Man, and that the man of sin should be revealed.

While he talked...Lyman Wight stepped into the middle of the room and bore record of the coming of the Son of Man. Then Harvey Whitlock stepped into the middle of the room with his arms crossed, bound by the power of Satan, and his

Conquering Spiritual Evil

mouth was twisted unshapely. Hyrum Smith arose and declared that there was an evil spirit in the room. Joseph said, 'Don't be too hasty,' and Hyrum sat down. Shortly Hyrum rose the second time, saying, 'I know my duty and will do it,' and stepping to Harvey, commanded the evil spirits to leave him, but the spirits did not obey.

Joseph then approached Harvey and asked him if he believed in God. Then we saw a change in Harvey. He (Harvey) also bore record of the opening of the heavens and the coming of the Son of Man. Next a man by the name of Harvey Green was thrown upon his back on the floor by an unseen power. Some of the brethren wanted to administer to him by laying on of hands, but Joseph forbade it. Harvey looked to me like a man in a fit. He groaned and frothed at the mouth. Finally he got upon his knees and come out of it."

Remember the story about the man whose son was possessed and Christ's disciples could not cast the demons out? The rest of that story is this:

"And he asked his father, How long is it ago since this came unto him? And he said, Of a child. And oftentimes it hath cast him into the fire, and into the waters, to destroy him: but if thou canst do anything, have compassion on us, and help us. Jesus said unto him, If thou canst believe, all things are possible to him that believeth. And straightway the father of the child cried out, and said with tears, Lord, I believe; help thou mine unbelief. When Jesus saw that the people came running together, he rebuked the foul spirit, saying unto him, Thou dumb and deaf spirit, I charge thee, come out of him, and enter no more into him. And the spirit cried, and rent him sore, and came out of him: and he was as one dead; insomuch that many said, He is dead. But

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Jesus took him by the hand, and lifted him up; and he arose. And when he was come into the house, his disciples asked him privately, Why could not we cast him out? And he said unto them, This kind can come forth by nothing, but by prayer and fasting.”
(Mark 9:21-29)

Supposition #10 Devils, demons, and earthbound spirits can inhabit a host anytime during a person’s life, from the womb until late in life. They can even be attached to you as a spirit in the spirit world after your body is laid in the grave.

The scriptures show us that Christ cast entities out of children. (Mark 9:17-29) Just because a person can’t “sin” doesn’t mean they can’t be taken over by an entity. This can be from actions of their parents, generational issues or curses, or even environment.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Chapter Eight

SPIRITUAL SHIELDING

“Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand. Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness; And your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace; Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked. And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God: Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints.” (Ephesians 6:13-18)

Brigham Young said:

“You may now see people with legions of evil spirits in and around them; there are men who walk our streets that have more than a hundred devils in them and round about them, prompting them to all manner of evil, and some too that profess to be Latter Day Saints, and if you were to take the devils out of them and from about them, you would leave them dead corpses; for I believe there would be nothing left of them.” (JD, 3: 369)

Brigham Young warned the saints that their sojourn on the earth is a continuation of the war commenced in heaven, and constant vigilance is demanded. He said “this probation (is) a continual warfare.”

There are many ways the Lord has given us to combat spiritual evil. One of the most effective ways the Lord has given us

Conquering Spiritual Evil

for protection that not many people seem to know about is the “spiritual shield” which is Him. “Our soul waiteth for the Lord: he is our help and our shield.” (Psalms 33:20) As we become like Him, we have a natural shield against spiritual evil. As we gain or increase in His Light, evil has less influence over us. By obeying His commandments, we increase in that Light until the perfect day when we become like Him. “He suffered temptations but gave no heed unto them.” (D&C 20:22)

Individuals that do “energy work” know what shields are, but some don’t relate shields to Christ or say that He **is** our shield. Most of them will tell you to imagine putting a shield of light or a bubble around yourself or something to that effect. Since all things are to be done in the name of Jesus Christ, in our family we pray to our Father in Heaven for spiritual shields to surround us in the name of Jesus Christ. In our family and personal prayers we ask for shields to be around us for protection. Many times during the day I will also ask for them or ask that they be reinforced or strengthened, always in His name.

In our church we even sing a song about putting up shields through prayer.

“Ere you left your room this morning,
Did you think to pray?
In the name of Christ, our Savior,
Did you sue for loving favor
As a shield today?”
(LDS Hymns #140)

The Book of Mormon relates a story about a Lamanite prophet named Samuel who went to the Nephites, stood on the wall of the city of Zarahemla, and called the people to repentance. Many of the people didn’t like what he had to say and were angry with him.

“But as many as there were who did not believe in the words of Samuel were angry with him; and they cast stones at him upon the wall, and also

Conquering Spiritual Evil

many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall; but the Spirit of the Lord was with him, insomuch that they could not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows.” (Heleman 16:2)

This is a great example of a spiritual shield around someone so that he could continue doing the Lord’s work without being harmed. It also tells us that spiritual shields are made of “the Spirit of the Lord.” Could that also mean the Lord’s “essence” or energy?

Perhaps a little story will illustrate the modern day use of spiritual shields. A friend and I were discussing this concept at lunch one day. I had heard of people putting “light” around themselves, but not a spiritual shield. We talked much about this concept, trying to understanding it. Before we ate lunch, we asked that a shield be placed around us in the name of Jesus Christ. Then we forgot about it.

After we paid for our lunch and were standing near the register talking to each other, a man entered the restaurant that was dressed all in black, had black hair and black finger nails and he headed right for us. Then I saw the most astounding thing. When he was about two feet from my friend, he “tripped” and fell backwards. He got up, stepped back about ten feet, and just glared at us.

My friend said, “Did you see that? He tripped and fell into me.”

“No, he tripped and fell backwards,” I explained. “He never touched you. He was about two feet from you when he fell backwards.”

We quickly headed out of the restaurant while the dark man just stood and glared at us. Outside we realized that we had witnessed this man bounce off the spiritual shield we had just asked God to place around us. It looked like he tripped backwards. Don’t people usually trip and fall forward? He didn’t. Once we realized that he had bounced off the shield, we were quite amazed.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

It was incredible to talk about spiritual shields, ask for one, and then to actually see what it could do.

Here are a few more examples of spiritual shields. We live in a rural area where the reception from some radio stations is hard to get at our house. So one winter evening I drove outside of town to get good reception so I could listen to a football game. I had turned the car off and was sitting there listening to the game when I noticed that all the windows had fogged up. But I could see something flying by the windshield. The city lights were off in the distance and made it easy to see this phenomenon. It was going from North to South, or from my left to right. It looked like “ghosts” or spirits flying by. If it was spirits, our city was being invaded by millions of them, I thought. I was soon to find out that I had jumped to the wrong conclusion.

I re-parked the car so that I could see the city lights out of the windows to my left, front, and right side. Whatever it was that was flying by was going around the car and not into the city as I had thought. Sitting there dumbfounded and amazed, I wondered what in the world it was, so I started praying and asking.

The Spirit told me, “As if by fire.”

“What do you mean, Father, as if by fire?”

My mind was directed to several scriptures. In the Book of Mormon, Nephi and his brother Lehi were cast into prison and had an astonishing experience.

“And after they had been cast into prison many days without food, behold, they went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi were encircled about **as if by fire**, even insomuch that they durst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned. Nevertheless, Nephi and Lehi were not burned; and they were as standing in the midst of fire and were not burned.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

And when they saw that they were encircled about with a pillar of fire, and that it burned them not, their hearts did take courage.” (Heleman 5:22-24 Emphasis added)

I realized that I was seeing a spiritual shield that looked like “white” fire encircling the car. Was it a “pillar of fire” around the car? There are many instances of “fire” or a “pillar of fire” in the scriptures.

“And he spake unto the multitude, and said unto them: Behold your little ones.

And as they looked to heaven they cast their eyes toward heaven, and they saw angels descending out of heaven **as it were in the midst of fire**; and they came down and encircled those little ones about, and they were **encircled about with fire**; and the angels did minister unto them.” (3 Nephi 17:23-24)

And once again:

“And it came to pass when they were all baptized and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire.

And behold, they were encircled about **as if it were by fire**; and it came down from heaven, and the multitude did witness it, and did bear record; and angels did come down out of heaven and did minister unto them.” (3 Nephi 19:13-14)

The Spirit helped me remember three men in the Old Testament named Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego. They were cast into the fire by Nebuchadnezzar and were not harmed as they and the “Son of God” walked around inside of the furnace. Was it possible that a spiritual shield made it so that “the fire had no

Conquering Spiritual Evil

power, nor was an hair of their head singed, neither were their coats changed, nor the smell of fire had passed on them.” (Daniel 3:27)

During another time I was listening late at night to the radio outside of town, the shield was there but not swirling around the car. It looked like a fire from the fireplace. In fact I could see its reflection in my glasses while looking in the rear-view mirror. It looked exactly like I was sitting in front of a fireplace, even had the yellow-gold color of fire. I watched it swirl one direction, then the other direction, then stop and not swirl at all. It is actually quite fun to watch.

A great story is related by Hansen (1963) in the book “He Walked the Americas.”

“The city of Caba Clos first saw the Pale God when He stopped the tempest and jelled the sea for His ship’s landing, then easily walked across the waters. They remembered His strange magnetism for before Him the fiercest animals lay down and allowed Him to caress them.

For His One God, the Divine Spirit, they built a temple. Then He left them to teach other nations, promising to return to dedicate the temple.

Alas for man and his jealous priesthood. The Sacrificers were again in power when once more the Pale God, Sume, returned. The priests had busily told the people that this was a demon who had bewitched them. Accordingly when Sume returned along the highway in His long white mantle and His great staff, keeping His promise to the people to dedicate His temple, warriors lay in wait behind the bushes, their arrows already strung in their long-bows.

The puzzled people, led by the black-robed Sacrificers came forward. Then at a signal from the Head priest the warriors sprang out of the foliage and a rain of arrows went toward the Prophet.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Standing atop a slight mound, Sume raised His palms high over His head and called aloud in a foreign language.

Then a curious miracle happened. A curtain of flame, fiercely whirling, came down upon Him from the heavens, clear up to now with a bright sun shining. This curtain circled all about the Healer. The arrows of the Caba-Clos warriors could not penetrate the curtain. They glanced off as if from hard rock and struck again through the bows which had sent them, burying their shafts deep in the breasts of the senders.

When the people saw this they were stricken with terror, and the priesthood fell down sobbing.

In the center of the curtain Sume stood waiting, and when it lifted He turned his back upon them and walked away sadly along the seashore. His footsteps were pressed deeply in the wet sand, where none have ever been able to erase them.” (pp. 147-148)

What a great story about the Savior shielding Himself against an attack with what apparently looked like fire. It is also a great reminder that He has proclaimed that what we give out to others will come back to us, though sometimes sooner than we expect.

There have been many times that I and my family and many friends have seen the shielding around our cars while out driving at night. It was gratifying to me to have my family see it. Our daughter, Denise is spiritually sighted and sees it all the time, but the rest of us are not as gifted as she is at this time.

The first time I saw it and realized what it was, I went home and asked Denise if she had seen them also. She informed me that she always sees the shields around us and had thought that I saw them, too.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Are these shields real? Absolutely they are. Do they work? Yes they do. One day Denise and I were driving, and she was talking about them.

“Dad,” she said, “I love driving and having a shield around the car. When we hit the demons that are walking on the road, it flattens them out.”

“Do you mean,” I asked, “that if we don’t have shields, they aren’t bothered or harmed or flattened?”

“No,” she said, “they just go through the car. It’s pretty cool to see them get knocked flat.”

My oldest daughter, Deon, had bought a used car up in Orem, and I had gone with her to pick it up. I had asked to drive it home, so I could see how it performed.

We had just gone down a hill and across some railroad tracks on Highway 89 when a herd of deer jumped out in front of me. Deon was in our car following me and watched this entire event unfold.

I had just got my speed up to 55 mph and realized that deer were on both sides of the car. I saw a doe about three feet in front of the car, just right of center. There was no way I could miss hitting her.

Suddenly the doe leaned away from the front of the car, slid along the road going away from me, “popped” off the road, and ran away.

There was no way I could have missed that deer and no way it could have done what it just did. Nevertheless it did happen. I knew instantly that I had watched the shield around our car protecting me and the doe.

When we got home Deon asked me what happened. I told her and she said she had watched as that doe slid off the road in front of the car and ran away. She knew I was going to hit it, that it was impossible for me not to hit it. Then I missed it completely.

“It was the coolest thing I have ever seen, Dad,” she said.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

I thought it was pretty “cool” too. What the Lord can do for us is truly amazing.

It seems that spiritual shields must be asked for, at least this type. That is why in our morning and evening prayers we ask for them to be around us, our home, our property, our cars, our animals, and whatever else we want shielded that we have stewardship over.

We have a good friend that sees spiritual things; she can “see” angels and demons. She and her husband were visiting quite late one night. They had parked their car outside our property. As I was walking to their car, she looked at her husband and asked that he put his arm around her as they left our property line.

“Why,” he asked.

“Well, Doug has a shield around his property so the demons can’t get in. But they are all camped outside on the road by our car.” They were actually camped all around our property.

Again, we use to run a restaurant and asked in prayer for shields to be around it each day. A friend with spiritual sight came and ate at the restaurant one night. I was chatting with him afterwards, and he mentioned the shields.

“Do you know,” he said, “that you have shields around your restaurant?”

“Yes,” I answered, “we pray for them all the time.”

“Well, they go clear across the street. The demons and dark earthbound spirits are all over there, across the street, looking in. They aren’t happy they can’t get in the restaurant.”

I told him there are times when they do get in. Any kind of anger or negative expressions can bring down our shields. The shield around your home can be “broken” by devils who have been brought in by a person feeling angry or hateful at that moment. That can affect your complete household. The emotion of a parent can change the entire spirit of a house for good or bad, which is something many of us have experienced.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

One time I went into the restaurant to work, and there seemed to be a bad feeling there. I wondered about that and asked if they had prayed that morning. The kids said they had. So I shrugged it off and went to work. When I opened up a container of tomatoes, it flew out of my hands and fell on the floor. A server in the back room had a similar experience. She sat down and started to cry. My daughter had something similar happen to her earlier.

Even though we were quite busy, I motioned to Peter who was washing dishes and to Stephanie who happened to be visiting a customer. We went upstairs and said a prayer of repentance, asking forgiveness for anything we had done wrong and then we cast out the demons asking the Lord to put the shield back up over the restaurant. When I went back downstairs, the atmosphere had switched. The rest of the night ran as smooth as glass.

We had a call one time from some people that wanted to come and visit. We knew that these people were workers of darkness or of negative energy. Denise also knew about them and said she would spend thirty seconds saying hello and then leave. I had invited three more friends to come over for the visit. Three of us knew about shields and independently had put them up. The fourth, Dave, was new to all of this and did not know about shields.

The people showed up, and we had an interesting visit of several hours. After they left, we all noticed that Dave wasn't doing very well.

"Dave," we asked, "didn't you put up shields?"

"What's that?" he responded.

We realized that we had never talked to him about them. The three of us were shielded and were fine, but Dave had at least eighteen "dark spiritual arrows" in him. They were sapping the life and energy out of him. We quickly taught him how to ask the Father in the name of Jesus Christ to have them removed. He did so and felt better almost immediately.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

The three of us had all put up “reflective shields” that send whatever was sent us back to the sender as love rather than the darkness it came with.

One of the two women has the gift of spiritual sight. I asked her if the people had anything attached to them. She said that two of them had huge demons on their backs, and she described them to me. She went on to say that was what had been casting the arrows and other weapons of darkness at us. I thought it was interesting that it had been the demons attached to the people that had thrown the arrows, not the people themselves.

We are all creators and whatever we ask in the name of Christ is created. My daughter, Denise, puts up shields this way. “One of the ways I protect myself from them is this. I raise my arm to the square and say, ‘In the name of Jesus Christ I cast out every demon, dark person, earth-bounds, hexes, devices, etc. I fill the area with love and light and ask Jesus to put a shield of His love and light around me. I invite Heavenly Father, Heavenly Mother, Jesus Christ and all other Light Beings who want to come.’” (Mendenhall, 106).

I also ask my Father in the name of Jesus Christ for a shield of protection to be around me. If I’m meeting someone, and I know they don’t have much light or are extremely dark spiritually, I will ask for the shield to be a reflective shield that will send back to the sender whatever he might throw at me, only it will go back with love instead of darkness. We can put a shield around **whatever we have stewardship over** that we feel might need protection. I have no right to put a shield around you if I have no stewardship over you. If I do so, that is going against your agency, and we should never do that. Some people shield others without their permission. The Lord never did that, so what makes us think we have the right to do so?

You can put up thick shields or layers of them. Remember, we are creators and whatever we can conceive, we can create.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

One time there was a group of us traveling in a fifteen passenger van to Idaho. I had arranged the trip and was in charge of the group. I was driving and in the seat next to me was a friend that has been without a veil her entire life. One of her gifts is that she has the ability to see energies.

As we entered the mountains above Boise, the sun was going down. I decided that I might want to put up some extra shields around the van since the deer would be coming out and crossing the roads. Silently in my mind I asked for shields three layers thick to be placed around the van. I asked that each layer of energy (shield) go a different direction; one forward, one backward and one sideways. I visualized this in my mind. I thanked the Savior for this blessing and then forgot about it.

About five minutes later, my friend asked me if I had put shields around the van.

“Yes,” I responded. “How did you know?”

“Well,” she said, “I saw them go up. Did you do three layers or levels of shields and is each layer going in a different direction?”

I was so excited to tell her yes. She had actually seen what I had asked the Lord to protect us with! It was a wonderful witness to what the Lord can do for us.

One of the seminars we did was in downtown Salt Lake City. There is a lot of evil in Salt Lake, and I knew one of the speakers would be talking about devils or demons. So I knew it was important to clear out the building of past darkness and place shields of protection there and angels around the building.

The night before the seminar I went to check out the meeting room. I knelt in prayer, raised my arm to the square and commanded all darkness in the building, floors, ceiling, walls and all areas above and below it to be cleansed of any demons, devils, earth bound spirits, or any kind of darkness. I asked the angels to come and sweep it clean. Then I asked for a shield of protection to be placed around the building and meeting room. Also I petitioned

Conquering Spiritual Evil

the Lord for large warrior angels to surround the building, shoulder to shoulder. I offered other words as directed by the Spirit.

The next day as the man was talking about darkness and what it does, he paused after twenty minutes and said that he had the ability to see dark entities and he needed to check the room. He said he needed to “sweep” the area as he has the ability to see spiritually things of darkness.

He looked and said that we were okay because there were large warrior angels standing shoulder to shoulder outside protecting us from any darkness. Then he went on with his talk.

There are several ways the adversary can penetrate or remove our spiritual shield. One is if we become angry about something. Others are judging, condemning, or becoming fearful. It is important to stay out of anger and judgment or any negative emotion for that matter. These things destroy the spirit and will destroy or cause cracks in any spiritual shield we may have which will darkness to come in and cause us problems. Disobeying God’s commandments will cause our shields to weaken or go away all together.

One of the best ways to increase the power of our spiritual shields is to repent, read our scriptures and pray often.

Several people have told me they don’t need or use spiritual shields because they “always love everyone” and that is their shield. One such woman is in a perpetual state of gratitude and love, just as the scriptures tell us we should be. She expresses gratitude to God for everything in her life. When she wakes up, she expresses gratitude. The feeling is that gratitude makes her shield strong, continually. It’s like she has her shield continually plugged into the Savior, recharging it. No wonder the Lord tells us to be grateful for all things. (Unfortunately I haven’t arrived at that level of understanding and spirituality, so I will continue to rely on spiritual shields for the time being.)

I would suggest that you never send back anything of darkness. We ought to try and follow the example of our Savior

Conquering Spiritual Evil

and return evil with kindness. If you think about it, darkness survives and thrives on dark energy or evil works. If you send evil or darkness back to someone of that ilk, you are just giving them what they want. This is similar to what the Emperor in Star Wars tried to goad Luke into doing. “Feel the hate, Luke.” However, if you send love back, it neutralizes evil and causes it to flee or even destroys it.

Some people have learned to put up spiritual shields and are still plagued with earthbound spirits or demons or other things of a dark spiritual nature.

I received a phone call from a woman whose fourteen year old daughter had spent a year in and out of Primary Children’s Hospital. The doctors had been trying to figure out why she had seizures and fainting spells. But there was nothing medically wrong with her.

The mother told me she prayed and was told that her daughter was being plagued by demons and that the demons were causing her physical problems. We discussed demons and how to shield against them. She said they had tried to do that, but that they get in anyway. She mentioned that her husband and their bishop don’t agree with any of this. The bishop said that this demon-stuff just doesn’t happen anymore.

She also said that her husband’s niece is having the same problem, only she also sees the demons. But the girl’s father doesn’t believe any of it either. Both men are bringing a lot of anger into the home. I told her that her husband’s anger is a sure way of opening himself up to demons or anything of a dark nature. She can shield all day long, but dark entities will “piggy back” on someone with negative emotions (anger) to get through.

She has resigned herself to just being quiet and living with the problem while trying to help her daughter the best she can.

It is true that you can create the kind of shield you want, but some are less effective than others. For example, a “bubble of light” may not be strong enough. A “white light” may just attract

Conquering Spiritual Evil

demons as light attracts moths. A wall shield may keep out darkness, but might also keep out the light of the Spirit. A mirror may reflect back the dark entities but also good things as well. Just flowers may not be strong enough. And a “dome” leaves the ground open.

In order to put up an effective shield it must be in the name of Jesus Christ and as in all things, you must follow the Spirit. One must also create the shielding in your mind, using your imagination. When you add emotion to the created object it becomes stronger and more real. After creating it in His name, you always give thanks to your Father in Heaven for that which was created and now protects you.

So when we put up shields in our family, we visualize a complete “bubble” around everything we mention. It is a good idea to shield one’s self completely in a circle.

If you are in an area where you don’t feel “safe,” it might be good to use a reflective shield that reflects back love to the sender. Never send back darkness, it will feed them, and they love it. Sometimes it is a good idea to put up multiple shields, several layers thick, whatever the Spirit tells you to do.

Once again whatever you create must involve our Savior. Or course the greatest shield is to become like Him in our lives and get to the point where we do as He did, love everyone with no conditions or judgments. Then we can overcome all evil and sin and “pay it no heed” as He did. Until we reach that standard in our lives, shielding is a great way to help ward off evil and its influences. As with any technique we use, it requires that we have faith that it will actually work.

We have learned how important it is to shield our home against the wiles of the devil. There are many ways he can get in through the internet, television, movies, telephones, and even people that come to visit. Education is crucial if we really desire not to be acted upon by demons, devils, and unclean spirits.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

We have learned to always shield our home, property, and cars. One day we had a yard sale which brought many different people onto our property. Later that night a man came to visit us. This man who has spiritual sight, said, “You have many entities on your property, I’m surprised.” We quickly invited them to leave. Then I remembered I had had the yard sale, and I had not “cleared” the property from what all of those people had brought with them.

In these “last-days” the war against us by the adversary has been “ramped up” considerably. Most people have noticed this just by reading the day’s news headlines. There is a greater concentration by evil to bring down anyone of light. It is quite important that we increase the power of our shielding around us and our homes. Dark entities will stand of the edge of your shield projecting thoughts and emotions to you inside. To stop this it is important to be specific and specifically ask for shielding against thoughts and emotions of darkness.

It is also important to shield yourself if you are involved in voicing a blessing where dark entities are being cast off or doing energy work. Even if you are not participating in the blessing or energy work, it is still important to shield yourself as dark entities can jump from the possessed individual to you.

In pioneer times John Pulsipher (1827-1891) experienced such an occurrence when they stopped in Dayton, Ohio:

“While at Dayton the devil entered our camp and got possession of one of the sisters. She was in awful pain and talked all the time and some of the time in rhyme. The Elders administered to her. The evil spirits left her and entered another person and on being rebuked again would enter another and so continued a good part of the night. But when the devil was commanded in the name of Jesus Christ to leave the camp, he went and was very mad. He went thru the whole camp, made a

Conquering Spiritual Evil

roaring noise, knocked over chairs, broke table legs and made awful work.” (p. 3)

One last example: I visited with a woman who has spiritual gifts but has been plagued with “earth bound” spirits and said she was very threatened by demons. She did not know about spiritual shielding. After she learned about them, I received this email:

“I need to tell you that last night my husband gave me a blessing and asked that I be protected and our home be protected. Then when I said my prayers I asked for the same shielding. I also asked for the shield to be placed around my heart. I don’t know why, I just wanted my very soul protected.

. . . This morning when I said my morning prayers, I felt bogged down. I always feel this way when praying. Praying has always been hard for me. It feels like I am walking through mud, my mind gets clogged up and I can’t think of what to say. I see face after face and it is distracting. This happened again this morning, but when I asked for the shielding, the bogged down feeling left and the spirit of the Lord became so sweet. I cried as I felt I could converse with the Lord freely for the first time in a long time. Thank you for teaching me this skill. The ability to protect myself and my family so that the spirit can flow means the world to me. I feel like my connection to Heavenly Father was being clogged—now I have a way to free it up.”

These tools work, and they truly are a gift and a blessing from our Lord Jesus Christ. When we finally become like Him in love and gratitude, then we won’t need them.

EMOTIONS, SHIELDS AND FIERY DARTS

In the previous chapter I mentioned arrows being sent into my friend Dave. The scriptures mention the arrows and darts of the adversary. The scriptures also mention the chains of the adversary. I have talked to many individuals that feel these are just metaphors for what the adversary can send at us. For many years I felt the same way.

Then my family started having all kinds of experiences. I mentioned that the New Testament talks of taking on the “whole armour of God” in Ephesians chapter six. Verse sixteen talks about taking the shield of faith but also mentions the fiery darts of the **wicked** as do other scriptures.

“Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the **fiery darts** of the wicked.” (Ephesians 6:16)

“And I said unto them that it was the word of God; and whoso would hearken unto the word of God, and would hold fast unto it (the iron rod), they would never perish; neither could the temptations and the **fiery darts of the adversary** overpower them unto blindness, to lead them away to destruction.” (1 Nephi 15:24)

“For behold, you should not have feared man more than God. Although men set at naught the counsels of God, and despise his words—

Yet you should have been faithful; and he would have extended his arm and supported you against all the **fiery darts of the adversary**; and he

Conquering Spiritual Evil

would have been with you in every time of trouble.”
(D&C 3:7-8)

And finally another reminder about shields of faith stopping the darts of the adversary:

“Taking the shield of faith wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the **fiery darts** of the wicked.” (D&C 27:17)

This reminds me of the previously mentioned story about Christ going to visit the people in the Americas and the wicked priests had the warriors shoot arrows at Him. The arrows bounced off the “shield of fire” and returned back to the warriors. Though these weren’t spiritual arrows, nevertheless the shielding was still effective against them.

We have already discussed the experience where some people came to visit my home and Dave was filled with many arrows that they shot at us. Also I had an experience when a friend put a spear through my chest. Please understand that these are spiritual devices or implements of darkness and even though they are spiritual, they can still cause physical pain, and there can be more than arrows, darts or spears thrown at you.

I feel that most of these things are done subconsciously, and if we knew this kind of thing was happening when we get angry, we might not allow it. I believe that a lot of what hits us is done in this way.

My friend Anna Lee was visiting us one Sunday and went to Fast and Testimony meeting with us. She decided at the last moment to get up and bear her testimony, so she walked up to the pulpit to share it with the congregation. At the end she mentioned that there are some wonderful people living here in our town. She mentioned my family and several of our friends.

At that point in time my local leaders were not happy with the seminars I had been doing for spiritually gifted people, and as

Conquering Spiritual Evil

she mentioned our friends and my family, one of the local leaders who was sitting behind her looked up and glared at her.

Precisely at that moment she felt something hit her in the back. We watched her wince in pain. She quickly ended her testimony and sat down by us. Doing so she leaned over to me and apparently in much pain said, "I've been stabbed in the back by something. What is it?"

Denise leaned over and said, "You have a huge battle-axe in your back. The [local leader] threw it when you mentioned our friends and us."

Not for one minute do I think that this man threw the battle-axe at her consciously or even had any inkling he had done so. He is a nice man. But at that point he apparently had some negative feelings toward some of us, and in his frustration and judgment he focused that negative energy towards our friend. The adversary changed that negative energy into a battle axe, and it landed in her back. Having been the recipient of more than a few dark spiritual weapons, I can assure you that they do cause physical pain.

I know of husbands and wives that have received arrows and other weapons of darkness from their spouses. In anger they say things, and the weapons fly, unknowingly.

The really scary people are those that do it consciously, knowing perfectly well what they are doing. Good examples are the people that came to our home when Dave was shot full of arrows or the man that put devices on my friend's back and on my lungs. These are people to be avoided. Those involved in Satanism know all about these things. They use them continually on other people. Their arrows, darts, curses, hexes, implants, etc. are very real and do cause physical problems.

We quickly went home from Church and in the name of Jesus Christ blessed our testimony-bearing friend, casting out the battle-axe, and she felt better immediately.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

We met a person that had the ability to penetrate spiritual shields, but we did not know it at that time. After several encounters with him, we decided it was best to not have anything to do with him ever again. But even though we stayed away from him, he continued to bother us or send us dark things. Following are two such experiences.

My friend, Dave, and I had gone over to another friend's house. She was sitting in a chair looking like "death warmed over" and said she felt like her life was being drained out of her. When I silently prayed to ask what was wrong, the Spirit told me that she had five spiritual devices on her body. The biggest was a spiritual shunt in her back that was draining her life away. I didn't mention any of them to her, as I wanted a witness of what I had heard.

Dave and I went back to my house to ask my daughter to look and tell me what was wrong.

"She has a device in her back that is sucking the life out of her. Plus there are four other things on her," she said.

I then went back to my friend's house and took her to another who can "see" devices on people. She told her the same thing that Denise had said. We then laid hands on her and cast the devices off. She was back to normal in a short time.

During this time I often went jogging at night. That night I started out from my home on my nightly jog and within a half block I could not breathe. Something was in my lungs, so I cast it out. The next night it was back, and I could not breathe as I tried to jog.

I asked my daughter for a witness that it had come from the same person that had put the devices on our friend. She agreed that it had.

"What I don't understand," I said, "is that I put up shields all the time. I know that our friend also puts up shields all the time. How did this guy get through the shields to send weapons of darkness or place devices on us?"

Conquering Spiritual Evil

“Dad,” Denise said, “There are some people that are powerful enough and have enough understanding that they can get through other’s shields. This guy is one of those.”

I prayed and asked what to do to stop this assault from this person. I was told to go late at night to his property and pray as instructed. Basically I witnessed against him to the Lord what was happening and was told to declare that whatever was sent our way again would return to him one hundred fold. The assault stopped instantly, and we’ve not had problems with him again. I was told to petition for stronger shields than we’ve had before as an additional defense against people like him.

If I feel my shield is “down” or not as strong as I feel it could be, I will instantly ask for it again. If I see someone coming to the house that I don’t know, I will ask for my shields to be reinforced. Even when my friends have come to the house and are having a bad day, they may be carrying some darkness on them, so I will ask for my spiritual shield to be reinforced.

For about two years I did seminars for people that are spiritually gifted or those interested in such things. They were held in various locations around the country. I would go and dedicate the building the night before or early in the morning. I would cast out any darkness, ask for spiritual shields, and for angels to guard the building.

I did this one time late at night. As I was leaving the building to head back to the hotel, two friends drove into the parking lot. I waved at them and approached their car. I chatted for a few minutes and then drove back to the hotel.

As I pulled into the hotel parking lot, I had a stabbing pain above my heart. When I asked the Lord what it was, I was told I had been stabbed with a spiritual spear. It had come from one of my “friends” that I had met in the parking lot. I found out later that she felt I had slighted her somehow. At least that is what I was told.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

As I sat contemplating this, I got really angry. I asked for it to be taken out, and I sent it back to her in anger. (The Emperor in Star Wars would be standing there saying, “Feel the hate, Doug, feel the hate.” Actually the Devil probably was.) This was something that I consciously did, knowing all along how wrong it was to do such a thing.

The next day as I was speaking, the Lord told me to relate this story and to apologize to her right there in the meeting. I did so. As I said my apology, I saw that she was rubbing above her heart, right where I had sent it in my anger. I guess she didn’t have a spiritual shield up either.

My point is that we don’t know who we might encounter during our day or what attachments might be thrown or put on us. It might be important to put up spiritual shield all the time. Some people have the ability to harm us spiritually from a distance, and spiritual shields can and do protect from those assaults also.

I wouldn’t be able to tell you how many dozens and dozens of times people have come to our home for a witness from my daughter that they have a spiritual device in or on them. The devices that seem to hurt the worst and do the most damage come from those that know what they are doing—true workers of darkness.

A good example is my friend that was having the life drained out of her with a spiritual shunt in her back. It was literally draining the life out of her to the adversary or his minions. They use devices like these to take our energy or “life force” if you will.

Some of those that send evil against others consciously will put spiritual poison in the device. This will seep out and cause us intense physical problems. Denise has seen this many times. One time I asked her if I had anything on me, and she responded with: “You’ve got an arrow in your back, Dad. I’d get it out real quick; it’s full of poison.”

Once someone sent me a dark spiritual spider. It was on my back and had three legs on each side. It was pumping poison

Conquering Spiritual Evil

into me through each leg; I could feel it. I was a little miffed at someone sending this thing. So I got out my spiritual sword and cut off the spider. (More about tools we can use in the chapter, “Weapons of Light”) The only problem was the legs were still in me, pumping away. Because the spider had been removed there was no poison, but I sure hurt in six different places on my back. I then calmed down and asked the Savior to come and remove them. Something I should have done in the first place.

We ought to be careful about saying that something can’t be so. I would have thought all of this was just a bunch of hogwash ten years ago. Now we live in the middle of it and deal with all of this strangeness almost every day. It is very real. The adversary can create whatever he wants to create. My friends that see these things describe an amazing world that we don’t seem to know much about. Most people will not believe these things.

As I mentioned before, during my daughter Denise’s NDE, she was shown “hell.” While there she was shown buildings that looked like tool shops or fabrication shops. She didn’t know what they were and asked the Lord to tell her. He told her they were places where the adversary and his minions make weapons to inflict man. They create all kinds of dark spiritual weapons there.

Yes, they create swords, arrows, darts, spears, battle-axes, and the like. But they also create weapons that we have no concept of or are not aware of—like “shunts” that sap life energy. I have talked to quite a few individuals with spiritual sight, and they describe the incredible devices or implants they have seen on many people.

Denise mentions seeing hexes, curses, devices, spells, shunts and many other things that are placed on people in her book “In His Arms”. They can bind us with cords or attach cords to us that go to either them or their devices. I’m not trying to belabor the point, but these things are spiritual, are very real and do cause problems.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

I am going to relate a story that will illustrate what these things can do and also it will open up other areas of discussion.

“Joanne” came into our life a few years ago. She is a good woman, single, and a few years out of college. She has spiritual gifts and didn’t know how to handle them or what to do with them. So she hung around Denise as much as she could. She would even spend weekends with our family.

That all changed after she met a family that does a lot of “spiritual work” on people. We watched Joanne change throughout a year. She would be happy until the woman from this family entered the room or was around her, then she would just sit there and stare at the floor, almost like a zombie. Many people witnessed this phenomenon on several occasions, mentioning it to me and my family. We told them we had seen the same thing, but we had little or no understanding of what was really happening.

Finally, after a seminar Joanne came to our home. We talked for a few hours. She told us what was going on in this other home. They would stand in a circle and “talk in tongues,” etc. (I am not insinuating that speaking in tongues is wrong). She mentioned how one time she saw someone floating off the floor. Another time she said that Satan had come, and he threw her to the floor and started choking her. Finally she hit the leg of the guy next to her, and he stopped what they were doing to help her. She admitted she had been mind controlled. These are things she told me that had happened, not something that I have made up. Finally she asked for a blessing.

Joanne asked Denise to come into the room with us for the blessing. We closed the door, and she asked Denise to say a prayer. Denise complied.

I then laid my hands on her head to voice a blessing. The second I placed my hands on her head, it felt like they were locked on. I knew I could not pull them off. It was the strangest feeling ever. I wondered why the Lord had locked my hands onto Joanne’s head.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

I then started to voice the blessing and realized instantly the reason. The first thing the Lord did in the blessing was to cast off all the spells, hexes, and curses on her and in her. She started to thrash about uncontrollably in the chair and moan really loud.

It startled me, but my hands could not leave her head no matter how much she thrashed about.

Then He commanded her body to relax. She relaxed and fell back into the chair. The Lord then said some wonderful words to her. Then He commanded all of the devices, shunts, implants, spears, knives, arrows, and other weapons of darkness to be cast off.

Joanne thrashed in the chair again, just like before, even the moaning. Once again my hands were locked onto her head. He then commanded her body to relax again.

Finally the Lord commanded all of the demons and evil spirits to leave her. He cast them off. She thrashed about again, going all over the place while remaining seated in the chair. She was moaning quite loudly at this point.

After the Lord was done casting out the demons and the like, He commanded her body to relax again. He then pronounced a blessing on her.

When the last words were expressed, and I said “amen” my hands were unlocked from off of her head. I looked over at Denise, and she had the biggest eyes I have ever seen on a child.

Later on I asked why her eyes were so huge. I wanted to know what was going on spiritually with the Lord during the entire time.

“Dad,” she said, “I’ve never seen Him do anything like that. He grabbed each demon and chopped it to pieces. He cut off the fingers, the hands, the arms, the head, the feet, and the legs. They had stinky gross green stuff come out of them. I’ve never seen anything like it. It was sick.”

Conquering Spiritual Evil

I had a feeling the Lord was not happy with what had been done to this good woman. Joanne then went to our couch and fell asleep until morning.

It was amazing to me how the Lord did all of this in three steps. I wondered why and prayed to ask. The Spirit said that she could not have physically handled all of it at once. The Lord needed to do part and have her relax, then do the next part, relax and finally take care of the demons. Needless to say, all of these spiritual devices were real and caused her a multitude of problem—physical, mental and spiritual. At this point she needed to have fellowship with others that understood her, that knew what she had gone through, and could accept and help her. In other words she needed some close friends.

Sadly within a month this woman went back to her group. Mind control is a powerful thing to try and overcome. It is insidious because those who practice it are completely taking over another person's agency or the individual has given up their agency to others. Either way it is not the work of our Lord.

The other thing this experience shows is the many things that can be placed on us and how we can get rid of them. These dark spiritual devices are real and can cause problems physically, emotionally, mentally, and spiritually.

Some workers of darkness are spiritual vampires. They will sap your energy. Most do it unknowingly. Have you talked to a person and afterwards felt completely drained? Soon you realize that every time you talk to this one person you feel weak and are drained of your energy. That is a spiritual vampire or a spiritual parasite. As I said, most do it unaware. They will seek out those who will give them their agency and therefore their energy.

Others are very aware of what they are doing. We should get in tune with our physical and spiritual bodies and pay attention to our energy field at all times, and then we can feel when we are under attack. All of us will feel the attack but not pay attention to it because we really haven't understood why we might have certain

Conquering Spiritual Evil

feelings. Have you ever been around someone that makes you uneasy even though they appear to be quite friendly? Or have you ever felt your gut tighten when you enter a room? Our spirit is trying to tell us something isn't right. If we focus on that negative energy, it will lower our own vibration and allow dark entities the opportunity to wreak havoc on us. The best thing we could do besides leaving is to immediately pray thereby accessing the atonement, then shield ourselves and send out love. If we give into fear or send out our own negative thoughts and emotions, it will also lower our vibration and allow the adversary's minions easier access to us. They could then attach all kinds of devices on us in addition to attaching themselves to our body.

If we give in to the negative energy being thrown at us and send negative back to the individual, it could create a link between ourselves and the other person. If we are weak and vulnerable, this link can remain even after this life. That is why the Lord has told us to forgive everyone and to think and speak kindly of everyone. If we dwell on our supposed hurts that others have inflicted on us, we keep that link intact until we forgive. If we forgive and send out love, it will help destroy those negative links.

Not only can they take our energy from us and attach links to us but also they can inflict us with arrows or other weapons of darkness. It can be done consciously or unconsciously. Whether its darts, spears, shunts, or other kinds of devices, they will cause us pain. Now throw in the adversary, his minions or evil earth-bound spirits, and it compounds the problem. They will gladly help us harm others.

Brigham Young spoke at the funeral of his counselor, Jedediah Grant, and said:

“Do you not think that brother Jedediah can do more good (in the spirit world) than he could here? When he was here the devils had power over his flesh, he warred with them and fought them, and said that they were around him by millions, and he

Conquering Spiritual Evil

fought them until he overcame them. So it is with you and I. You never felt a pain and ache, or felt disagreeable, or uncomfortable in your bodies and minds, but what an evil spirit was present causing it. Do you realize that the ague, the fever, the chills, the severe pain in the head, the pleurisy, or any pain in the system, from the crown of the head to soles of the feet, is put there by the devil? You do not realize this, do you?

“I say but little about the matter...When you have the rheumatism, do you realize that the devil put that upon you? No, but you say, “I got wet, caught cold, and thereby got the rheumatism.” The spirits that afflict us and plant disease in our bodies, pain in the system, and finally death, have control over us so far as the flesh is concerned.” (JD, 4:133)

I listen to a lot of late night radio when I can't sleep or when the Lord wants me to learn something. One night a man was on who was talking about dealing with darkness, demons, and even earthbound spirits (even though he didn't call them such.)

He mentioned that once he woke up with a severe pain in his knee. He could hardly walk it was so bad. He said he would “have to lift his leg up with his hands in order to even get it into his truck.”

Finally he was over at the house of a friend that did energy work and has the gift of spiritual sight. He asked her to examine his leg.

The woman looked at his leg and exclaimed, “There is a face staring back at me!”

He asked what she meant, and she said again that there was a face looking back at her in his knee. She then realized it was a demon or devil and told him so.

The man then cast it out and was immediately nearly pain free. At least he could walk and function at that point.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

I met a woman that had spiritual devices on her knees. She could not kneel to pray as it caused her tremendous pain. We prayed and asked the Lord to remove the devices and from then on she could kneel down without any pain.

Brigham Young knew what he was talking about when he said, “The spirits that afflict us and plant disease in our bodies, pain in the system, and finally death, have control over us so far as the flesh is concerned.”

We have experienced that they will try to get a foothold any way they can. Another part of my daughter’s NDE that she didn’t discuss in her book is that the Lord took her to see a bar. It was exactly like George Ritchie talks about in his book.

“Dad,” she told me, “there were earthbound spirits in the bar trying to grab the glasses to get a drink of alcohol or to smoke a cigarette. Others were after the “bad” women that were at the bar. The Lord showed me that whatever they were addicted to during their time on earth still bothered them.”

“Finally they would get so drunk that their aura would go down or open up and the earth-bound spirits and demons in the bar would jump into them. Since they were drunk the evil spirit could control them somewhat.”

Dr. Edith Fiore (1988) makes a very bold statement:

“Behaviors that definitely put people in jeopardy are drug and alcohol abuse. Even innocent experimentation with ‘recreational’ drugs has resulted in years of possession. Every one of the hundreds of patients I have treated who had abused drugs and alcohol was possessed! In **all** cases there were many entities, **most former drug users** themselves, who **continued their habits through their victims**, continually weakening them for further possession. One recovered alcoholic patient I treated still had eighteen alcoholic spirits with her, despite having been dry for four years!” (p. 111, emphasis added)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

When we do dim-witted things like getting drunk or using drugs, it weakens and can destroy the natural shield around our bodies and allows negative things in by lowering our vibrational rate or frequency, which would also be described as the amount of Christ's light we have. The Lord has provided natural shielding for our bodies called our aura. It is part of our body's energy system which also includes our chakras, meridian lines of energy, and an energy grid. These are beyond what we will discuss in this work but surely should be researched and understood. We can also destroy natural shielding or ones we have asked the Lord to surround us with by any negative thought, feeling and emotion. For that reason it is sometimes advisable to put up shields several times during the day and, of course, we must repent often as well. If, with our own character, we possess negative attributes such as anger, fear, impatience, pride, envy, jealousy, etc. dark entities know that they can jump onto these negative energies and work against us. Since their energy and the negative emotion are of the same vibration, i.e. negative, it allows them to enter the picture since they are in their own element.

With true repentance, the object is to use the atoning blood shed by our Savior, Jesus Christ. Only He was capable of taking our sins or consequences of our negative choices, our pain, our aches, our sorrows, and every other action or emotion which brought us disease and turn it to joy, peace, and love. His atonement allows us to truly heal in our mental, physical, emotional, and spiritual parts/aspects as we are washed clean through His blood.

When we are of light or on the path to God, the adversary and his minions will be attracted to us, but when we keep ourselves and homes cleared and shielded and continuously express gratitude and love to Him, our family, and associates, we can keep Satan and his helpers at bay, at least most of the time. Of course, that ought to be the goal we all have; to walk His path, doing His will, and becoming like Him.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

It is my testimony that spiritual shields are real, and they are important in the war against spiritual evil. I had no idea they existed ten years ago. But since that time I have had many opportunities to experience their existence. It truly is a wonderful way the Lord has provided for us to have protection against the adversary and darkness. It is my hope that we will ask if this is a true tool of light that God has provided us and then use it often.

INVITING IN LIGHT OR DARK

It is generally acknowledged that there are levels of angels—archangels being the top level. The Lord also seems to indicate that there are levels of devils or evil spirits, that some are more powerful than others when He told his disciples: “This kind can come forth by nothing, but by prayer and fasting.” (Mark 9:29) They had just tried to cast some demons out using their priesthood and couldn’t do it.

In Denise’s book “In His Arms” she talks about a rating scale of one to ten that we developed for demons and devils. “One” was the smallest demon and “ten” was the Adversary himself. She mentioned that we ought to have a scale from one to one hundred because there are many “sizes” and levels of demons or evil spirits. The small ones are easy to get rid of while the larger might ones require “fasting and prayer” as the Savior told his disciples.

Sometimes we invite just small demons in by our thoughts or actions. If we welcome them (negative thoughts) and give them a home (continued negative behavior), eventually they will invite their “bigger” friends to come and stay with them. Another way they can “get under our skin” is through holes in our aura. Our Prophets have counseled us not to have any body piercing except for women to have one in each ear. Body piercing puts a hole in one’s aura. I once met a man who was gifted with spiritual sight. His office was across the street from a tattoo-body piercing parlor. He apologized to me for having his office across the street from a place where so many dark spirits hung out. He could see spirits all over the roof and in front of the building across the street. They were waiting for the opportunity to enter a person when the tattoo

Conquering Spiritual Evil

needle penetrated the body and aura. Therefore, our protection against the adversary is compromised when we do these things.

We have been taught that our body is God's temple: "Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you? If any man defile the temple of God, him shall God destroy; for the temple of God is holy, which temple ye are." (1 Corinthians 3:16-17) It is sacred and we are commanded to use it wisely and not to defile it. The Lord is very explicit about what He will do to those that defile a temple of God.

What I wondered about was this: Does a tattoo or a body piercing cause a permanent "hole" in the aura or a gateway through which dark entities can continually enter in? I was so curious that I asked my sighted friends, and they taught me that evil "entities will frequent a tattoo parlor or body piercing parlor to enter human bodies. If a tattoo has an evil or satanic symbol, it can cause a permanent doorway for dark entities to go in and out of a person."

The Lord uses symbols in his gospel. On an LDS Temple are symbols of stars, planets, moons, all seeing-eye, handclasps and much more. The adversary also uses symbols. They are religious symbols and signs which have been perverted, just as the adversary does with everything. A good example of this is the five pointed star or pentagram. Anciently it was a sign of Christ with the one point going upward. It is also a sign of Him when the two stars are pointed upward with one going downward. Hugh Nibley stated that this signified revelation coming down to man from up above, receiving light and truth. Both types are on our Temples. The adversary took this and perverted it to be a sign of him or Satanism with two points going upward. The same can be said of the serpent. Anciently it was a sign of Christ. The adversary wasted no time perverting that symbol in the Garden of Eden. Moses finally was told to put it on top of a pole for those who had been bitten to "look up to and live", bringing the symbolism back to Christ.

People who received number tattoos on their arms while in the concentration camps are not held accountable before the Lord

Conquering Spiritual Evil

for them. They had no choice in the matter as their agency was taken away, and the tattoo was forced upon them. Also those that were of limited understanding and had acquired tattoos and then became converted unto Christ can still have protection through Christ because of their repentance. When people don't have any understanding, there is no condemnation. The Island people often tattoo their genealogy on their arms. It is a tradition of their fathers to do so. That is a good example of not having understanding and therefore not being held accountable. However, if we have understanding and have been warned by God's prophets or by the Spirit and then do it, there is great condemnation, and we stand accountable before the Lord. It is also interesting how we get caught up in the traditions of our fathers, like ancient Israel, the Lamanites and Nephites, and stay in darkness because of those traditions. The gospel really does bring light into our lives.

The Lord stated in Leviticus:

“Ye shall not make any cuttings in your flesh for the dead, **nor print any marks upon you:** I am the LORD.” (Leviticus 19:28, emphasis added)

Alma chapter three talks about the Amlicites and how they distinguished themselves from the Nephites: “For they marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites.” (vs. 4) And later: “Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfilling the words of God when they began to mark themselves in their foreheads; nevertheless they had come out in open rebellion against God; therefore it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them.” (vs. 18)

Just like a tattoo, a body piercing or ornament can cause a permanent doorway for entities if it is worn continually, twenty-four hours a day. The design of the item can cause us problems with entities if it is a design of the adversary or has dark meanings.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

An example of this is when friends of ours went on a vacation to Disneyland where they picked up some souvenirs. One was a necklace with the gold coin from the movie *The Pirates of the Caribbean*. Later when I saw the medallion, it seemed quite dark. It was just a gold coin with an image of a skull. The owner gave me permission to take it to a “sighted” friend to check what I was feeling.

When I took the medallion out of my pocket, my sighted friend immediately told me to take it outside. I did. It did carry darkness, and I wondered if it was because of the movie it represented and if it would affect the person who bought it innocently. Her feeling was that if we had no understanding, there would be some protection, but it would still carry that darkness with it. If we know better, it will allow darkness to really envelop us. Where there is much understanding, there is much accountability.

Our young friend disposed of the medallion.

My friend said that it can take on those attributes of darkness and that is what this medallion did. It brought my energy or vibration or light down considerably.

Not all souvenirs bring our energy down or allow darkness into our being. But we ought to be careful about what we let into our space, do to our bodies, or allow on our bodies. We should be more careful about the symbols we carry or put on our persons like name brand clothing, words on T-shirts, logos, and jewelry. Even though done in innocence, it might have a very negative impact and slow down or even stop our eternal progress.

We also invite darkness in with our negative thoughts, words, feelings, and actions. The greater our light or understanding of spiritual things, the greater the demons are that are allowed to “attack” us when we sin or do anything wrong.

A friend of mine and I were judging someone quite severely. As a result of this negativity, he attracted some small demons, and I attracted some larger ones that we called “number nines” and became life threatening for me. I had received larger

Conquering Spiritual Evil

ones because I understood more than my friend, and I knew what would happen because of my negative judging. I learned once again that we need to be very careful what we do to attract or otherwise invite them into our lives.

Once a couple came to visit. The husband said that his wife was possessed by three entities that she actually talked to all the time; they were her long-time friends.

After we had talked about how we shouldn't allow entities to occupy us, she asked for a blessing to cast them off, saying she was tired of them. We went into a quiet room. I voiced the blessing and through Jesus Christ cast them off. A shield of protection was put up so they could not come back. The couple left and seemed quite happy about the events.

A week later the woman's husband called me and asked what would happen if she invited the demons to come back. Immediately my mind went to the scripture in JST Matthew 12:38-39:

“And he said unto them, When the unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places, seeking rest and findeth none; but when a man speaketh against the Holy Ghost, then he saith, I will return into my house from whence I came out; and when he is come, he findeth him empty, swept and garnished; for the good spirit leaveth him unto himself.

Then goeth the evil spirit, and taketh with himself seven other spirits more wicked than himself; and they enter in and dwell there; and the last end of that man is worse than the first. Even so shall it be also unto this wicked generation.”

I asked if she had invited them back.

“Yes,” he said. “She was lonely for them, and because she missed their companionship, she had asked them to come back.”

Conquering Spiritual Evil

I then informed him that according to the scriptures that the three that she was lonely for most likely brought twenty-one or more friends with them. Sadly he confirmed that this was the case. She had more than three “friends” in her now. I hope some day she takes her soul back from them.

It is imperative that when we get rid of the evil in us, we replace it with the Savior and His light. With the evil gone, we have created vacuous space that must be filled with His light or it will make it easier for the evil to come back.

“That which is of God is light; and he that receiveth light, and continueth in God, receiveth more light; and that light growth brighter and brighter until the perfect day.” (D&C 50:24)

We met a woman that had been “saved” from the State Mental Hospital by a doctor friend of ours. The woman told us that she had five voices in her head that she could talk to. They had put her on all types of medication in the hospital, none of which solved the problem. She asked Denise if she could see any entities in her. Denise saw five.

She asked if a blessing would help to cast them off. But the Spirit said it would not because she had invited these into her, and she needed to offer a prayer of gratitude for the experience and ask the Savior to take them away. In her situation, it would have gone against her agency to cast out that which she had invited in. Because each situation is unique, the Spirit must always be consulted. We can’t rely on our own perceptions of what is going on. We must rely on revelation from God for direction.

Immediately she bowed her head and said a prayer of gratitude and asked the Savior to come and take the five demons away from her. After the prayer Denise said that the Savior had come and taken them away. We talked for a while with her and then she left.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

The doctor told us later that the woman was normal for a while. But it didn't last long. After some weeks they were back.

I eventually received an email from the doctor which explained that the demons had returned through holes in the woman's aura.

I didn't have enough understanding at that point to ask if she had invited them to come back or if she missed the voices and companionship of the dark spirits. It is hard for me to believe that people would miss the voices or demons, but I guess they do. I know now that when demons are invited back, they bring friends.

This was one of the first times we realized the importance of not only putting up shields but also sealing up our aura and how important it is to understand what can cause holes in it. Like most of these things we were learning line upon line, precept upon precept.

The internet and movies are a very easy way for the adversary to enter your home. He definitely enters when someone views a pornographic movie or internet site. I don't know how many people have told me that they watched a certain movie that "only had one small sex scene." Other than that it was okay. When the Lord says He doesn't look upon sin with the least degree of allowance, what exactly does He mean? Is He telling us that the small sex scene is okay to view if the rest of the movie was wonderful? He actually withdraws His Spirit, and we are left on our own since we have broken down any barriers or shields of protection against the adversary.

Any amount of pornography brings evil into a home.

Several years ago I produced seminars. At our first one, Blaine Yorgason, a well known LDS author, came to speak. When he arrived he told me that the Spirit had told him to speak about his daughter and asked if it was okay. I told him that whatever the Spirit said to do he had better comply with.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Blaine wrote a book about his daughter titled “One Tattered Angel.” I would strongly suggest reading it. She was born with just a brain stem and wasn’t supposed to live very long.

He related in his talk how in tune with the Spirit his daughter, Charity was. She didn’t have the ability to talk and could mainly communicate through emotions, such as crying. He shared this same incident in his book (1995).

“A few weeks later, during what we were calling one of her ‘good times,’ Charity suddenly grew very ill. We couldn’t tell what was wrong, the doctors couldn’t tell, and even Tylenol didn’t bring her any peace. She was absolutely miserable.

Of course, we prayed constantly for help in knowing what to do, but for a week we remained at a loss. Then one Saturday morning while I was pleading for her relief, it suddenly dawned on me that the problem might not be Charity’s. Quickly I gathered the family into an emergency session.

‘All right, listen up. You all know that Charity is doing badly. Since we can’t seem to find a problem with her, I’m thinking that maybe the problem is with one of us.’

‘What are you talking about, Dad?’

‘I’m talking about the fact that she is perfectly pure, without sin. Do you all agree with me?’

Everyone nodded.

‘Okay, do you all agree that she will never, no matter how long she lives, have the capacity or desire to commit sin?’

‘We all know that, Dad.’ Dan’s mind was racing ahead like always. ‘What’s the point?’

I smiled. ‘The point is that Charity is truly a heavenly person, the only one I’ve ever known. In terms of purity, at least, she is just like God, whom the Bible says is perfect. And since God doesn’t like

Conquering Spiritual Evil

sin, what do you suppose might happen if Charity is forced to be around it?’

‘She wouldn’t like it,’ Michelle declared.

‘How would she let us know she didn’t like it? How would she react? Think about this, kids. Suppose one or more of us is doing something wrong. I don’t mean the normal little stuff. I mean something pretty major that our conscience is already telling us we shouldn’t be doing. With Charity being unable to get away from us because of her circumstances, and being unable to tolerate our sins because of her purity, might her reaction be to get sick?’

Everybody looked at me in amazement, Kathy included.

‘Remember,’ I went on, ‘I’m not suggesting that we need to be perfect. But I believe we each need to go off alone for a few minutes and search our souls. If I’m right, one of us is having a major problem with sin that we’re hiding—only apparently we can’t hide it from Charity. If it happens to be you, come tell me quickly, and let’s get this taken care of before she suffers any further.’

A few moments later one of the kids came quietly into my office, acknowledged an inappropriate book hidden in the home, and asked what should be done. My instructions—and I was playing this completely by ear—were to take the book back to where it came from, apologize to Charity, and then go off alone and apologize to God and seek His forgiveness.

My counsel was strictly followed, and thirty minutes after that Charity was smiling and happy again, with no signs of her former illness about her.

...Needless to say, having a little spiritual barometer in our home was a unique experience, occasionally highly discomfoting, but always beneficial.” (pp. 86-89)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Blaine's story about his young daughter is truly amazing. What a great gift she was to this family as a spiritual barometer. We need to understand that our own spirit will know when something isn't right. The Light of Christ is a great blessing for all of us. When we attune ourselves to it by righteous living, prayer, and meditation, we will be able to know, just like Charity, when something isn't right around us. As members of the LDS church we also have the Gift of the Holy Ghost available to us. We need to practice emptying our minds of the world and listen to that still small voice, as the Lord has said, "Be still and know that I am God." Then we can eliminate the threat to our own well being and to our home and family. This is something that requires effort, of course. Our spiritual muscles should be stretched by exercising them continually. Not everyone will have a Charity or a Denise in their home to help out with such things. It is extremely important that the heads of households step up and assume the responsibility for their families' well being and learn how to listen to the Spirit and then use their priesthood and its power.

Taking Denise to the video store is interesting. It is spiritually a dark place, and since she can see movies that have light with them, we will pick a movie based on the light coming from it. What a great way to rent a movie! If a movie is shrouded in darkness, and we bring it into our home, will that darkness not leave its mark in our home? Yes! So we need to learn how to do this on our own, to go inside our hearts and listen, to feel and know what God is telling us.

One night one of my kids asked me to pick up a certain movie from the video store. When I found the video, it didn't feel good spiritually and basically looked like an "airhead chick flick" for teenagers. I got it anyway to see what would happen. While my youngest and oldest daughters watched it the next morning, I had to go outside because I could feel the darkness it was creating. I knew I should not have allowed it even as an experiment. I asked

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Denise afterwards how much “darker” our home was after viewing the video. “A lot!”

I noticed my oldest daughter on the computer, angry, and she didn’t know why. My wife could feel it and wanted to leave.

We knelt as a family and asked for forgiveness from our Father for bringing this video into our home. We asked that all darkness and evil be cast out of us, our rooms, our home, our property, and our cars. Then we asked for shields around all of us, our rooms, our home, our property, and cars and for angels to stand guard also.

There have been many times we have talked about this in our home. You can do all the shielding, praying, reading you want to. But you can still bring in darkness from movies and all the other things we’ve discussed. “You can’t roll around in a pig pen with the pigs and not get dirty,” I told them. That is one reason we got rid of television. There isn’t enough of it with an ounce of redeeming value to have it in our home. That goes for most movies, too.

There are other ways our spiritual protection can be damaged. A hole can appear in your aura by just bumping your head. I fell once and got a small concussion and many entities jumped into me. I spent several hours casting them out and making sure I was clear.

Surgery is an invasive procedure that opens up your protective aura which is your basic protection. A shot or an IV can do the same thing. When we have to go to a hospital, we should ask for a blessing of protection first. Ask for shields while you are there, continually. Pray for angels to be with you and protect you. Cast out any lingering entities and bless the room, shielding it as well.

I am not being over dramatic. Denise and I did a book review once in Northern Utah. After it was over, a man who was a security guard at a local hospital told me that on his security monitors he would see dark entities entering in the hospital through

Conquering Spiritual Evil

the front door. He didn't know if he dared talk to anyone about this because they might think he was crazy. Finally he dared mention it to a co-worker. The man's response was, "Oh, you see them, too?"

A good friend with spiritual sight had surgery on her eye. During the rush to get to the hospital, she had forgotten to shield herself. So after she got home, she called asking for help to get rid of all the dark spiritual attachments from the hospital. Because she lacked energy from the surgery, she was not able to get rid of the entities herself.

This same woman was staying with her husband in the hospital for several days after he had had extensive surgery. She had to leave for a night to get away from the darkness that was there. She could see many thousands of earth-bound spirits there as well as the demons and devils, all wanting to get inside of people and cause them harm, even death. They hang around hospitals because the patients are usually physically weak, and so it is easy to get into their bodies. George Ritchie (1978) explains this in his book "Return from Tomorrow." He talks about the "Light" showing him many military men in a bar drinking along with earthbound spirit that they couldn't see. They get so drunk that their aura collapsed which allowed the spirits to enter into them. Here is an example from his book about what happened to a very drunk sailor who had collapsed.

"I was staring in amazement as the bright cocoon around the unconscious sailor simply opened up. It parted at the very crown of his head and began peeling away from his head, his shoulders. Instantly, quicker than I'd ever seen anyone move, one of the insubstantial beings who had been standing near him at the bar was on top of him. He had been hovering like a thirsty shadow at the sailor's side, greedily following every swallow the

Conquering Spiritual Evil

young man made. Now he seemed to spring at him like a beast of prey.

In the next instant, to my utter mystification, the springing figure had vanished. It all happened even before the two men had dragged their unconscious load from under the feet of those at the bar. One minute I'd distinctly seen two individuals; by the time they propped the sailor against the wall, there was only one.

Twice more, as I stared, stupefied, the identical scene was repeated. A man passed out, a crack swiftly opened in the aureole around him, one of the non-solid people vanished as he hurled himself at the opening, almost as if he had scrambled inside of the other man.

Was that covering of light some kind of shield, then? Was it protection against . . . against disembodied beings like myself?" (p. 61)

When I read this book, I was enthralled at what George Ritchie was describing regarding spirits being able to enter our bodies—spirits that apparently had not moved on and were still as addicted as they had been in mortality. So this is another way they can get into us.

"Unclean spirits come in subtlety, cautiously, as one stalking prey, attentive not to alarm. Stealth is evil's principal ploy, thus causing its victims to doubt their instincts of warning." (Ron Poulton, Unpublished paper). **These instincts of warning come from the Spirit and from experience and knowledge.**

We ought to be careful what we do in this life to attract them and allow them into us. I have found that when they get into or on us they also cause our spiritual clarity to diminish. There have been times when I can hardly read the scriptures or have had no desire to pray. Later I found out that I had some evil entities on me that I had allowed to influence me.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

We did a book review up in Idaho years ago. A woman showed up part way through the evening and started to make strange comments. Later we were able to talk to her privately. She said that she had never been able to pray or even read the scriptures, that it took an entire day to read just one word in the scriptures.

After a blessing was voiced and the demons in her were cast off, she completely changed. She knelt on the floor and voiced what she said was the first prayer in her life. She later mentioned she could now read the scriptures. We taught her how to shield herself and hopefully she still does so.

We have also found that music that is dark, loud, foreboding, with a heavy beat, or with satanic or provocative lyrics will allow this darkness into our home, car or workplace. **It actually lowers the vibration or frequency of our body and spirit so dark entities have an easier time entering.** Dark entities cannot enter into a being of a high vibrational frequency unless something is done to lower that frequency to their level. They need us to lower our frequency or light to allow them entrance. Much of the modern day music is designed specifically to so this.

Elder Gene R. Cook had an encounter with Mick Jagger of the Rolling Stones on an airplane years ago. He asked him: “You’ve been in the business a long time, Mick. I’d like to know your opinion. What do you think is the impact of your music on the young people?”

This is a direct quote, brothers and sisters. He said, “Our music is calculated to drive the kids to sex.” (Talk by Elder Gene R. Cook at Ricks College, 1989)

Elder Cook also said that this man told him that his music was also calculated to destroy the family. I do believe he spoke the truth.

I watched a documentary about Rock and Roll music in which many of the artists admitted that when they get on stage, an

Conquering Spiritual Evil

entity or entities take over and control their body. Heavy Metal and Rap music reduces our light to the point of darkness. Whereas, Christ centered music invites the Spirit. Its naturally higher vibration causes a shield of protection of His light around us.

The tones and frequencies, lyrics and structure of dark music will also open **portals** for dark entities to come in. Our homes need to be checked frequently to make sure these portals are closed and gotten rid of. We need to use the Spirit to do such things. Just ask. The main shield we can always use is the Lord, Jesus Christ.

“Next to the rightful exercise of the priesthood authority, talking of Christ and preaching of Christ is the single strongest repellant of evil. When an evil presence is discerned, faith in the name of Jesus Christ brings heavenly power to rebuke it. Brigham Young said, “A little more faith in the name of Jesus Christ, and I can say to my enemies, Be thou rebuked and stay thou there. I then can say to the power of the Devil, Be thou rebuked; and to evil spirits, Come not within these walls, and they could not enter.” (JD, 7:174)

We have learned the importance of inviting our Savior into our lives by the activities we often take for granted—such as reading scriptures, prayer, obedience to the Lord, and learning to hear Him. We should shield ourselves all the time against the adversary, always in the name of Christ.

LIGHT OF THE SPIRIT

We are in reality beings of light and have been sent here to gain more light and “that light growth brighter and brighter until the perfect day.” As beings of light, we are spirit. The Lord has declared that, “There is no such thing as immaterial matter. All spirit is matter, but it is more fine or pure, and can only be discerned by purer eyes; we cannot see it; but when our bodies are purified we shall see that it is all matter.” (D&C 131:7-8) All matter is energy, whether material or spiritual. To the Lord it is all the same. Science has proven that light is vibration and that we vibrate at the smallest or quantum level.

Have you ever attended an event and felt completely drained of energy? The event or people at the event took it from you — in other words, the darkness at the event took your light away. It is best to stay away from these kinds of events if possible. Why would we put ourselves in situations that are designed to drain our energy or depress us? Negative thoughts draw in the adversary and dark energy. Whereas positive uplifting thoughts, prayer, scriptures, and good music bring in our Lord’s energy and can literally create a physical and emotional change in our being.

Science is starting to understand these things through quantum physics. Dr. Bruce Lipton’s (2008) book “The Biology of Belief” discusses what research into these things will find:

“But the research will only confirm what scientists and nonscientists already ‘know’ but may not realize they know: all organisms, including humans, communicate and read their environment by evaluating energy fields. Because humans are so dependent on spoken and written language, we have

Conquering Spiritual Evil

neglected our energy sensing communication system. As with any biological function, a lack of use leads to atrophy. Interestingly, aborigines still utilize this hyper-sensory capacity in their daily lives. For them there has been no ‘sensory’ atrophy. For example, Australian aborigines can sense water buried deep beneath the sand, and Amazonian shamans communicate with the energies of their medicinal plants.

You no doubt on occasion get a glimmer of your ancient sensing mechanism. Have you ever walked down a dark street at night and instantly felt drained of energy? What were you experiencing? Destructive interference, just like out-of-sync pebbles thrown into a pond, or, in popular jargon, bad vibes! Remember unexpectedly meeting that special someone in your life and becoming so energized you felt ‘high’? You were experiencing constructive interference, or good vibes.” (p. 90)

In gospel language we would call this “ancient sensing mechanism” the Light of Christ or “...the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.” (John 1:9). We are all blessed with His light from birth, though we often drive it away through disobedience to Him and His commandments and by negative emotions thereby unknowingly inviting darkness into us. We are to remember, “And that which doth not edify is not of God, and is darkness.” (D&C 50:23)

Dr. Masaru Emoto, a Japanese scientist has done some incredible experiments which illustrated how even water crystals are affected by words, music, and environments. He exposed water droplets to these various elements and then froze them for three hours. When he examined the crystal formations under a dark field microscope, he noticed such interesting results that he took photos of them.

When he exposed water to heavy metal music, the crystal was disorganized, but Classical music produced beautiful crystals.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Dr. Emoto stuck a piece of paper on a bottle of water with these words: “You make me sick. I will kill you.” The frozen water droplets were horribly ugly. A bottle of water with the word “Love” over it produced, once again, a beautiful frozen crystal. Our bodies are composed of over seventy-percent water. What are we producing within ourselves by the words we say or wear on our bodies?

We know a man who gave his friend two plants and told him to love one and to hate the other. So every day, he expressed his hatred many times to one plant. Within three days it was dead. He felt so bad about doing this, he then began expressing love to it. It eventually revived and grew healthy and strong.

Once I heard a young woman scream at her sister, “I hate you.” I could feel the spirit leave the room, and the energy or light of both fell drastically. When we send out darkness, it replaces light. We are either increasing or diminishing; there is no stagnancy in this regard. We become more like our Savior or the adversary.

Our thoughts and intention do make a difference, for good or bad.

Since all things to God are spiritual, we then, are spiritual beings. Our thoughts, being spiritual (unseen to us) have a great impact for good or ill; they either lift or destroy. And Satan and his helpers being spirits, and unseen, they too are more involved than we realize in creating and using our weaknesses to “get in” us.

“Wherefore, verily I say unto you that all things unto me are spiritual, and not at any time have I given unto you a law which was temporal; neither any man, nor the children of men; neither Adam, your father, whom I created.” (D&C 29:34)

My daughter and other gifted friends have confirmed that they have seen these things spiritually. Whenever we use negative words, they actually exist as spiritual entities and hurt those we hurl them at. Denise has seen another person’s energy or aura weaken

Conquering Spiritual Evil

when she had said negative things and that both hers and her friend's auras actually went darker as well. This would make sense if we understand that whatever we give out comes back to us. Jesus has told us to not judge lest we be judged meaning the same judgment we apply to others will be applied to us by the Lord.

“And now, my brethren, seeing that ye know the light by which ye may judge, which light is the light of Christ, see that ye do not judge wrongfully; for with that same judgment which ye judge ye shall also be judged.” (Moroni 7:18)

So we get back what we give out. If we are the recipient of negative words, will we always be affected negatively? Not if we receive it in love and take no offense. Our light will actually increase because we are doing what our Lord would do, and therefore, becoming more like Him. The darkness hurled at us will have no affect and fall like water off a duck's back. **We can choose to act or to be acted upon.** It is always our choice.

“And now, my sons, I speak unto you these things for your profit and learning; for there is a God, and he hath created all things, both the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are, both things to act and things to be acted upon...Wherefore, the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself save it should be that he was enticed by the one or the other.” (2 Nephi 2:14, 16)

One of the ways we can choose to act is by participating in the Lord's ordinances thereby providing a natural shield around us which will help to keep our light strong. There is power in His ordinances. My spiritually sighted friends have told me how the bread and water from the Sacrament will glow when administered by a worthy priesthood holder. The “glow” comes after the prayer

Conquering Spiritual Evil

is said on it and is Christ's light because it has been blessed and sanctified in His name.

The prayer which is said over the bread and water actually says this.

“Oh God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to **bless and sanctify** this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it, that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son, and witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son, and always remember him and keep his commandments which he has given them; that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.” (D&C 20:77, emphasis added)

The last line of the prayer says that if we do all these things we will “have his Spirit to be [us].” This is talking about Christ's Spirit being with us, in addition to the Holy Ghost. That would be the greatest shield any person could hope for. If it wasn't a vital ordinance the Lord would not have implemented it with His Apostles in Jerusalem and again with His disciples in the Americas. As we come to this ordinance repentant and prayerful, it really can sanctify our souls, making us more like Him, clean in every whit through His blood and sacrifice. Unfortunately, people who are whispering, texting, or generally not paying attention may lose the significance and protection of this sacred ordinance.

Baptism is also an ordinance that provides shielding for the new convert by washing away in Christ the entire dark, negative past. Then when hands are laid on our head and we are confirmed and given the Holy Ghost, we have been offered one of the most incredible shields we can have. When we then worthily receive what has been offered, it is a great shield against darkness, one of

Conquering Spiritual Evil

the best things we can receive as it warns us, teaches us, and cares for us.

The Temple provides ordinances that give us the Lord's power and light. My former Bishop would always tell the members of his ward "to go to the Temple and come out endowed with power." There is much knowledge to be had in the Temple. It will teach us how to test spirits or beings that may appear to us. It teaches us how to get past the angels to enter God's presence, to pierce the veil. We will be clothed in the garment of the Holy Priesthood which is endowed with power and meaning from the symbols that have been placed on it and which is a shield for us and protection for us. What a wonderful place the Lord has provided for us to become endowed with knowledge, His power, and His light.

When we stand before God, making covenants, learning signs that are full of power and light, participating in true prayer circles, repeating words of power, and practicing, we leave the temple endowed with power, sanctified by His light, ready to be His warriors against evil. It is a huge protection for ourselves and our families against the onslaught of evil that permeates this world. We provide a protection for our families as parents and priesthood holders when we bring His light into our being. As our own light gets brighter, the vibration of our being increases and that prevents evil from entering and afflicting us.

"And that which doth not edify is not of God, and is darkness.

That which is of God is light; and he that receiveth light, and continueth in God, receiveth more light; and that light groweth brighter and brighter until the perfect day.

And again, verily I say unto you, and I say it that you may know the truth, that you may chase darkness from among you." (D&C 50:23-25)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

The converse is also true. “That which is of the Devil is darkness; and he that receiveth darkness, and continueth in Satan, receiveth more darkness; and that darkness groweth darker and darker until the wretched day.” In that day the evil one will own you and that will not be pleasant!

Therefore, whatever portion of light and truth that we have when we transition to the spirit world determines what law we will be quickened by. Every person chooses how much light or truth they will lay hold of. When we increase that light by doing what He asks and laying hold on every good thing, our light and glory will be that much brighter when we depart this sphere. It is just like when we consume food, it becomes part of our physical bodies. The spiritual “food” we consume, whether it is light or dark, will also become part of our spiritual selves. Our spiritual self may be unseen, but it is just as real as our physical body. If we feast on spiritual light and truth it increases our light and our own vibration. Those that have been quickened by a portion of celestial glory or light will receive a fullness of that light and vibrate at that frequency.

“They who are of a celestial spirit shall receive the same body which was a natural body; even ye shall receive your bodies, and your glory shall be that glory by which your bodies are quickened.

Ye who are quickened by a portion of the celestial glory shall then receive of the same, even a fulness.

And they who are quickened by a portion of the terrestrial glory shall then receive of the same, even a fulness.

And also they who are quickened by a portion of the Telestial glory shall then receive of the same, even a fulness.

And they who remain shall also be quickened; nevertheless, they shall return again to

Conquering Spiritual Evil

their own place, to enjoy that which they are willing to receive, because they were not willing to enjoy that which they might have received.

And again, verily I say unto you, that which is governed by law is also preserved by law and perfected and sanctified by the same.

That which breaketh a law, and abideth not by law, but seeketh to become a law unto itself, and willeth to abide in sin, and altogether abideth in sin, cannot be sanctified by law, neither by mercy, justice, nor judgment. Therefore, they must remain filthy still.

All kingdoms have a law given;

And unto every kingdom is given a law; and unto every law there are certain bounds also and conditions.

All beings who abide not in those conditions are not justified.” (D&C 88:28-32, 34-36, 38-39)

Therefore, the more light we consume, the more truth we accept and live by, the more we begin to shine like our Lord. His light will quicken us. “The light shineth in darkness, and the darkness comprehendeth it not; nevertheless, the day shall come when you shall comprehend even God, being quickened in him and by him.” (D&C 88:49)

So we must learn how to gather more light, our Lord’s light, until we become so much like Him that evil has no influence over us.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Chapter Twelve

“POSSESSION”

The first miracle in the restored Church of Jesus Christ was casting out a devil in a man that was possessed. In Joseph Smith's own words:

“...Accordingly, he [Newel] deferred praying until next morning, when he retired into the woods; where, according to his own account afterwards, he made several attempts to pray, but could scarcely do so, feeling that he had done his duty, in refusing to pray in the presence of others. He began to feel uneasy, and continued to feel worse both in mind and body, until, upon reaching his own house, his appearance was such to alarm his wife very much. He requested her to go and bring me to him.

I went and found him suffering much in his mind, and his body acted upon in a very strange manner; his visage and limbs distorted and twisted in every shape and appearance possible to imagine; and finally he was caught up off the floor of the apartment, and tossed about most fearfully.

His situation was soon made known to his neighbors and relatives, and in a short time as eight or nine grown persons had got together to witness the scene. After he had thus suffered for a time, I succeeded in getting hold of him by the hand when almost immediately he spoke to me, and with great earnestness requested me to cast the devil out of him, saying that he knew he was in him and that he also knew I could cast him out.

I replied, ‘If you know that I can, it shall be done;’ and then almost unconsciously I rebuked the

Conquering Spiritual Evil

devil, and commanded him in the name of Jesus Christ to depart from him; when immediately Newel spoke out and said that he saw the devil leave him and vanish from his sight...

This scene was now entirely changed, for as soon as the devil had departed from our friend, his countenance became natural, his distortions of body ceased, and almost immediately the Spirit of the Lord descended upon him. . .” (LDS History of the Church, Vol. 1, pp. 82-84)

We all deal with evil spirits continually in our lives; it is one of the ways we are tested while we dwell here in the flesh. However most will not have the experience of being “caught up off the floor and tossed about most fearfully” as Newel Knight was.

In Ron Poulton’s paper he tells a story about Hugh B. Brown the night before he was called to be a General Authority of the Church:

“That night I drove from the camp up at Rocky Mountain House down to Edmonton still spiritually disturbed and depressed. Without having dinner that night, I went into the bedroom by myself, told my wife that she should stay in the other room as I felt I would have a restless night and did not wish to disturb her. All night I wrestled with the evil spirit. I was possessed with the spirit of wishing that I could be rubbed out of existence. I had no thought of suicide, but wished the Lord would provide a way for me to cease to be. The room was full of darkness and an evil spirit prevailed, so real that I was almost consumed by it. About three o’clock in the morning my wife came in, having heard me moving about the room and asked what was the matter. Upon closing the door, she said, “Oh Hugh, what is in this room?” and I replied, “It is Satan.” We spent the balance of the night together, much of it on our knees. The next

Conquering Spiritual Evil

morning upon going to the office (there was no one there, it being Saturday), I knelt in prayer again and asked for deliverance from this evil spirit. I felt a peaceful spirit come over me and phoned my wife to that effect.” (Firmage, 1976, pp.90-91)

Heber C. Kimball recounted in Orson F. Whitney’s (1992) book how he and others that served the first mission to England, experienced being attacked by evil spirits. This happened on July 30, 1837 in Preston, England.

“About daybreak, Elder Isaac Russell (who had been appointed to preach on the obelisk in Preston Square, that day), who slept with Elder Richards in Wilfred Street, came up to the third story, where Elder Hyde, and myself were sleeping, and called out, ‘Brother Kimball, I want you should get up and pray for me that I may be delivered from the evil spirits that are tormenting me to such a degree that I feel I cannot live long, unless I obtain relief.’ I immediately arose, slipped off at the foot of the bed, and passed around to where he was. Elder Hyde threw his feet out, and sat up in bed, and we laid hands on him, I being mouth, and prayed that the Lord would have mercy on him, and rebuked the devil.

While thus engaged, I was struck with great force by some invisible power, and fell senseless on the floor . . . I then arose and sat up on the bed, when a vision was opened to our minds, and we could distinctly see the evil spirits, who foamed and gnashed their teeth at us. We gazed upon them about an hour and a half (by Willard’s watch). We were not looking towards the window, but towards the wall. Space appeared before us, and we saw the devils coming in legions, with their leaders, who came within a few feet of us. They came towards us like armies rushing to battle. They appeared to be

Conquering Spiritual Evil

men of full stature, possessing every form and feature of men in the flesh, who were angry and desperate; and I shall never forget the vindictive malignity depicted on their countenances as they looked me in the eye; and any attempt to paint the scene which then presented itself, or portray their malice and enmity, would be vain. I perspired exceedingly, my clothes becoming as wet as if I had been taken out of a river. I felt excessive pain, and was in the greatest distress for some time. I cannot even look back on the scene without feelings of horror; yet by it I learned the power of the adversary, his enmity against the servants of God, and got some understanding of the invisible world. We distinctly heard those spirits talk and express their wrath and hellish designs against us. However, the Lord delivered us from them, and blessed us exceedingly that day.” (pp. 129-131)

Evil is focused on us all of the time, especially if we are trying to obey our Lord. In these last-days there is a greater concentration of evil to bring down anyone of light. It almost seems that if we are trying to do what God wants us to do in our lives, the adversary comes at us with “all he’s got.” Some people believe that “possession” occurs with those who are not obeying the commandments or are evil. Though this could be true in some circumstances, the above experiences indicate that the opposite is true as well. Otherwise, Joseph Smith would not have been confronted by the adversary before the first vision experience.

When we face evil and find its offer appealing and succumb to it, he’s got us in his chains. It is when we succumb to evil’s appeal that he carefully drags us down to hell.

“O that ye would awake; awake from a deep sleep, yea, even from the sleep of hell, and shake off the awful chains by which ye are bound, which are the chains which bind the children of men, that they

Conquering Spiritual Evil

are carried away captive down to the eternal gulf of misery and woe.” (2 Nephi 1:13)

We know that evil will put thoughts into our minds. They are experts at this, having had much “time” to practice their craft. But does the adversary also have the ability to read our thoughts? Some people think he doesn’t, and they quote D&C 6:16 to prove it.

“Yea, I tell thee, that thou mayest know that there is none else save God that knowest thy thoughts and the intents of thy heart.”

But this is what Joseph Smith said about spirits knowing our thoughts:

“The spirits of the just are exalted to a greater and more glorious work—hence they are blessed in departing hence. Enveloped in flaming fire, they are not far from us and **know and understand our thoughts**, feelings and motions, and are often pained therewith.” (WOJS, pp. 253-4, emphasis added)

It seems, then, that if these spirits can read our thoughts, so can Satan and his legions. Could it be also that there is a difference between our thoughts (mind) and the intent of our **hearts**? Or is the above scripture linking thoughts and intents both to the heart?

In the science journal *Discover* (2004), A. Burdick reviewed a book by Charles Siebert called “A Man after His Own Heart.” The journal reported that Siebert’s book said, “that the heart is no mere pump, as some physicians still insist, but a sophisticated participant in the regulation of emotion. The heart has a mind of its own: It secretes its own brain-like hormones and actively partakes in a dialogue among the internal organs—a dialogue on which cardiac researchers are only beginning to eavesdrop. The

Conquering Spiritual Evil

heart likewise undergoes all manner of organic change inflicted on it by the tempestuous brain and its neurochemicals. As one doctor explains, people do suffer heartbreak, literally.”

Siebert’s book also mentioned William Schroeder, who was the second recipient of the Jarvik-7 artificial heart. “The patient’s mental state was another matter. Schroeder was weepy and deeply despondent. (Barney Clark, the first Jarvik-7 recipient, expressed a wish to die or be killed.) The blood still circulated, but something vital—some emotionally charged communication between heart and mind—had been lost...Affirming all [alleged] myths, the heart truly is a seat of human emotion. The Jarvik-7, in contrast, was deaf to the song of human experience; built to invigorate its patient, it instead alienated him, supplying Schroeder with everything but the will to live. He had the look, Siebert writes, ‘of a man who has lost his heart.’” (p. 5).

Therefore, it seems that only the “thoughts and intents of our **heart**” are shielded and heard by God. Others can and do hear and read the thoughts of our **mind**, both good and evil.

When we do something that allows them to attach or influence us, evil changes us. We are prone to do or say things we would not normally say or do. Things happen that might not happen otherwise. If you ever do something and afterwards say to yourself, “That’s not like me I don’t say or do those kinds of things.” That may be the time to raise your arm to the square and in the name of the Lord, Jesus Christ, cast out anything evil. Then go and apologize. For example, there were several times at our restaurant where things started going wrong. We could feel a difference in the spirit of the restaurant. After we raised our arms to the square and rebuked the evil that had entered, the atmosphere changed and it was a smooth night. I have felt the same thing in my home and other people’s homes.

Ron Poulton’s paper relates the following:

Conquering Spiritual Evil

“A father related this experience. As he entered his home one evening after work he found his children bickering and angry. He said there was an ugly edge to the quarreling. Instead of getting involved immediately, he went upstairs to his bedroom. There he knelt in prayer and asked for the Spirit of the Lord to attend him as a father and to grant him power in the priesthood. He arose and in his room commanded the unclean spirits to leave his family and his home. As he entered the room where the children were, he saw all of them sitting together on the floor laughing and playing a game. The evening passed without further incident. The children did not need their father to exercise his parenting skills; they needed his discernment and intervention to protect their home from unwanted influence.

What makes this experience significant is that the circumstance is so ordinary. Occasional fighting among children occurs in every family. Certainly, the father’s predisposition to get involved directly to stop the fighting was a normal reaction. He did have a responsibility to teach his children to be kind, to cooperate and meet their own needs in acceptable ways. But he noticed there was more, an ‘ugly edge’ to the bickering. He was discerning.” (p. 20)

I think back on my own life as a father to the many times I came home and noticed there was an “ugly edge” in our home. But rather than be discerning, I bought into being a “dictator” and “threatening” my children, all to the delight of the evil spirits already there, I’m sure. They fed off of my anger; it empowered them. Raising my voice in anger allowed the evil then to attach to me. Then they clouded my mind, making me feel justified in my anger. Negative emotions are “food” to them.

One time I had some depression devils on me. I knew they were there, but they weren’t in a full possession, and I wanted to see

Conquering Spiritual Evil

just how much they could influence a person, so I allowed them to stay. Soon I found myself not caring much about anything. I just sat around sad, feeling sorry for myself. Eventually I got in the car and just drove around, going through stop signs. It didn't matter if I lived or not. At that point, I came to my senses and cast them off. My emotional state improved.

I've had a pain off and on in my thigh, so when we first learned that people could have evil spirits attach to or attack, I asked Denise if I had a physical problem there.

She looked where I was pointing and said as a matter of fact, "No, you have a little devil there. Every time you judge, he stabs you."

I laughed out loud, "Yeah, right. You really want me to believe that?"

"Well, Dad, all you need to do is judge (condemn) and you'll see, or rather feel!" She giggled.

Not for a minute did I believe her. I had never heard of such a thing. Her only response was for me to go ahead and judge someone. So I did, and my leg hurt! She was right. From that moment on I used it as my judgment barometer. I found out that I was continually judging people. I wondered if that was true of all of us. Though I don't pass judgment as much as I did, it is still a struggle.

I told my experience to a woman in Idaho, and she prayed to have a barometer to show her when she judged. The Lord blessed her with a sneezing barometer; she started to sneeze every time she judged. She called after a few days, amazed at how often she judged people. She had no idea she had judged others so often and so cruelly. Her kids were having a great time watching her judge and sneeze. They were actually helping her realize how often she condemned others.

People will tell me that it's okay to judge others. That the Lord said we could judge righteously. I guess that is true, **if** we are righteous. Have you ever met any truly righteous people? I have.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

And guess what, they DON'T judge others. They are so full of love for others, they don't have time to judge—just like our Lord is.

So I found out that small devils continually plague us. They are called Imps and are quite easy to get rid of. You can almost flick them off with your finger, metaphorically speaking. It should be done in the name of Christ after you have repented of whatever you did to attract them in the first place. Soon I found that as I gained more understanding, I would have the opportunity to deal with larger evil spirits. That was something I didn't know if I wanted to do.

I had the opportunity to meet with a Seventy from my Church once. After explaining for some three hours what we had gone through as a family, his only comment was to hang in there. "You know, Br. Mendenhall," he said, "as wide as heaven opens to you and your family, hell opens just as wide." What he was telling me was that hell gets equal time; there is a balance that is required. In Moses 6:55 it states: "...and they taste the bitter, that they may know to prize the good." I have found that to be so true. For a while I didn't know if I wanted to give hell equal time in order to know the Savior. But the Lord said there must be opposition in all things. Everything has its opposite. In the Garden there was the tree of life and the tree of knowledge. If you want to see angels, you will also see demons. If you want to see Christ, you will see Lucifer. If you want to see the Father, you will see His opposite. There are many scriptures that show this to be true. Before seeing God, Joseph experienced the opposite, as did Moses and many other prophets. We must be tested to see if we are ready for the amount of light the Lord wants to impart to us. Denver Snuffer reflected on this in *The Second Comforter*:

"Light and knowledge are not gained in abstract reflection, but gained in the trenches. . .

You cannot simply learn. **If mysteries are given to you, you are going to have to fight in the war. . .**

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Because of these things the path to heaven runs through hell. You don't get the epiphany without confronting Satan. There is always a balance, because agency and the right (or obligation) to choose is part of God's plan." (pp. 347-348, emphasis added)

A great example of this balance was when Jesus went into the wilderness where the adversary was allowed to tempt Him. He really was offered all that this world could give Him, and He didn't bow to the temptation. He resisted all of it. It was a requirement that he be visited by the adversary and offered everything before He could receive all that His Father offered.

I realized that this was just part of the growing up process in the gospel of Christ and should not be feared. Evil operates on fear; it feeds on it. We went to Idaho to do a fireside and while going to sleep that night, I felt something sit beside me on the bed. I thought it might be a cat, but reasoned that if it was a cat, it was the size of a mountain lion. It was a huge evil spirit, and I discovered I was paralyzed and could only move my eyes. Calling on the Lord I asked Him to remove what was there. I did not have any fear which really surprised me. I felt the evil leave the room as my Savior's presence came in. Gratitude for my Savior filled my heart as I felt Him come and the evil spirit leave.

On my mission some Elders come running to our apartment in the middle of the night because an evil spirit had paralyzed one of them and had shoved him into the mattress. The other Elder had watched it happen. They were extremely frightened and slept on our floor the rest of the night. Fear had overcome them.

Elder F. Enzo Busche (2004), a General Authority in my Church (now an emeritus Seventy) had the following experience with an evil spirit that had taken over the body of a missionary. It is a little long but teaches so many incredible principles, it is well worth reading:

Conquering Spiritual Evil

“The following experience is probably the most scared in my whole life. It happened in the very beginning of my service as a General Authority, after I moved to the United States. I was still very new and inexperienced, and I had to rely completely on the Spirit to be able to do the many things I had to do.

On one trip, on assignment as an executive administrator, I gave a talk on welfare to a lovely group of people. I taught them in a special meeting and spoke about faith and the dimensions of faith and the importance of developing it. I quoted Matthew 17 to explain how the Lord expected his disciples to have faith and how frustrated He was when they did not have enough faith to cast out an evil spirit. I quoted that scripture in order to show our need not only to view faith as a thought or feeling, but also as a power with which we can control or even change the circumstances of this world.

That evening, I began a tour of a neighboring mission and stayed in the basement of the mission home that night. I was very tired when I finally went to bed at around 11:00. I fell sound asleep as soon as I was in bed. I woke up with a start when, at about 1:00 A.M., the mission president came into my room. The light was on and he was speaking to me, but I was still half asleep and did not understand what he was saying. I asked him if what he had to say could not wait until tomorrow. I could see that he was disappointed, but he nodded his head and began to leave the room.

By then, I was more awake and called him back and asked him to repeat the problem. I focused on listening to him and was surprised by what he said. He said that in the evening, a missionary had been possessed by an evil spirit. His companion had called the assistants to help cast it

Conquering Spiritual Evil

out. The assistants had gone and done that, but as they got back to their own apartment, the evil spirit had entered one of the assistants. The other was so shocked that he did not know what to do, so he went straight to the mission home.

The mission president was appalled, of course, because this was not just an ordinary missionary. This was one of the stalwart, experienced missionaries who was speaking gibberish and not in control of his physical movements. The mission president had tried to cast out the evil spirit but had failed. He began to panic, but then he realized that he had a General Authority in the basement. That was when he came down to try to wake me up.

After he told me, it hit me like a hammer that the very day I had been speaking about that scripture from Matthew, I was confronted with the same situation. I was under the watchful eye of the Lord and would have to prove my faith or show my lack of it.

I was very uncomfortable and asked the mission president to give me a little time. I wanted to get dressed first. I immediately began to pray with a deep, fervent plea for help. I felt helpless because I had never been in a situation like that. Crazy thoughts came to my mind. For instance, I wished I had stayed in a motel, but I knew there was no way to escape.

I finally dressed and had no further excuse to tarry longer, so I went upstairs. As I went up, I heard noises and unintelligible sounds, and fear began to creep into my heart. I felt that fear come from the ground, from below, trying to sneak into my system. I could understand why, when people are afraid, their knees begin to shake. When I got to the living room, I saw the elder sitting in a chair, shaking all over, uncontrolled movements, speaking with foam on his lips. His companion and the

Conquering Spiritual Evil

mission president and his family were all staring at the spectacle with shock and fear.

As I entered the room, it was like a voice said to me, “Brother Busche, you must make a decision now.” I knew immediately what decision it was. I had to decide whether to join the fear and amazement and helplessness or to let faith act and let courage come in. I knew, of course, that I wanted to have faith. I wanted to have the power, the priesthood, and I wanted to know what to do to save the situation.

In that moment, two scriptures came into my mind. One scripture was very simple: Moroni 8:16, “Perfect love casteth out all fear.” And the other was the same: 1John 4:18, “Perfect love casteth out fear.” But I did not have love. I had fear. What do we do when we have fear but not love? My mind was drawn to Moroni 7:48, where the Lord points out how we can gain love: “Wherefore, ...pray unto the Father with all the energy of the heart, that ye may be filled with this love.”

I prayed with all the energy of my heart, “Father, fill my soul with love.” I cried from the depths of my being, without wasting any time. It all happened in a split second. After that, it was as if my skull was opened and a warm feeling poured down into my soul—down my head, my neck, my chest. As it was pouring down, it drove out all of the fear. My shivering knees stopped shaking. I stood there, a big smile came to my face — a smile of deep, satisfying joy and confidence.

Suddenly, those in the room looked not scary, but amusing. It was just funny to see them all there. I learned in that moment that when we are under the influence of the Spirit, we can find a sense of humor and the ability to smile and not take ourselves too seriously, and we can laugh at ourselves. Then it dawned on me that the

Conquering Spiritual Evil

adversary's weapons are sarcasm, irony, and cynicism, but that the Lord's power is a gentle sense of humor. I have learned more and more since then that the adversary cannot deal with a sense of humor. He does not have a sense of humor; he does not even know what that is. He is always dead serious, and when you have a sense of humor, you are in control of the adversary's influence.

I still did not know what to do. I had great confidence, but I did not know what to do with it. As it stood there, it was though someone came and put his arm around me and said, "Let me do this for you. I can take it from here." I was very happy with that idea. Then I watched myself do something very strange and surprising because I did not know what I was doing. I went to that young man who was sitting on a chair shaking uncontrollably. I knelt in front of him and put my arms around him, pulling him gently to my chest. I told him, with all the strength of my soul, "I love you, my brother."

In the very moment I did that, the evil spirit left. The missionary came to his senses, looked at me and said, "I love you, too." He snapped right out of it and asked what happened. For about an hour after that, we had a spontaneous sharing of testimonies, jubilantly praising God and singing and praying. It was an exuberant experience of the workings of the spirit of love, which is the Spirit of Christ and by it overcoming all evil.

We later learned the cause of the missionary being in the situation. That evening, at an investigator's home, the missionaries had seen an inappropriate movie against the established guidelines. Because of that, he lost the Spirit and fear entered his soul. The fear allowed the evil spirit to enter. That same fear must have come to the assistant, as he probably had never experienced anything like that before. In his insecurity, he may

Conquering Spiritual Evil

also have let fear come into his heart so that the evil spirit could enter him after he had helped cast it out of the other missionary. The powers of the love of Christ are real. We can control our lives in our families and in our daily routine only when we learn to always be filled with the Spirit of Christ, which is the opposite of the spirit of fear, and which is the spirit of confidence and hope and faith and love. Therefore, in order to be eligible for that spirit, it is so important to keep ourselves away from filth and places of filth.” (pp. 268-272)

I so appreciate how candid Elder Busche is with this story. We don’t read many stories in our Church about people that have dealt with evil spirits, at least not from a general authority. This was obviously a very powerful demon to have taken over the missionary like that. Nevertheless, this incident shows the power of Jesus Christ’s love and how it can heal and cast out.

My daughter, Denise, is a diabetic. When she was fourteen, she had been so sick we had to take her the hospital. While there an evil entity entered her. After we got back home, it caused her to shoot her insulin down the sink. We couldn’t figure out why her blood sugars kept going up.

After praying for some enlightenment, I was told to go into the bathroom after she had given herself a shot of insulin and smell the sink. I did, and it smelled like a Band-Aid which is what insulin smells like. I confronted her and told her to get into my bedroom. My wife and I asked her why she was doing this. She couldn’t give me an answer. It was then the thought came to me that she might have demons or evil spirits in her. The “real” Denise wouldn’t do such a thing. The Doctrine and Covenants tell us in Section 50 that when we deal with evil spirits that we should not do it with railing accusation, boasting, or rejoicing.

“Wherefore, it shall come to pass, that if you behold a spirit manifested that you cannot

Conquering Spiritual Evil

understand, and you receive not that spirit, ye shall ask the Father in the name of Jesus; and if he give not unto you that spirit, then you may know that it is not of God. And it shall be given unto you, power over that spirit; and you shall proclaim against that spirit with a loud voice that it is not of God—Not with railing accusation, that ye be not overcome, neither with boasting nor rejoicing, lest you be seized therewith.” (D&C 50:31-33)

So with a firm voice I said, “What is your name?”

It was then the demon came out of hiding. Denise’s face contorted, so did her hands and arms. It was like something you’d see in a Hollywood movie. I didn’t know if I should be scared or not, I was so taken back by seeing my daughter do this.

Then this gravelly voice came out of her contorted mouth and said, “My name is.....” (I will not write its name here or even say it).

I looked at my wife, she was obviously scared, so I told her to get our oldest daughter and leave the house, she took off.

Then turning to Denise, or rather the demon in her, I said in a very firm voice, “I didn’t hear you. You are to speak clearly and slowly and tell me your name.”

It spoke to me again, telling me its name. The problem was I really didn’t know what to do. This kind of thing was never discussed in priesthood quorum or even on my mission. So I raised my arm to the square and cast it out in the name of Jesus Christ. It just cackled at me. I really thought I was in some movie at this point, as everything seemed to go in slow motion—me standing there somewhat confused and my daughter cackling at me with a disfigured face. Well not her, but the demon that had possessed her.

Now what, I thought to myself? I then went to Denise and placed my hands on her head and in the name of Jesus Christ cast the demon out. It just cackled at me again. I think I was more

Conquering Spiritual Evil

confused than in fear. I thought about my friends with spiritual gifts, “Maybe I should call them,” I thought. The Spirit said, “No.” The thought came to pray. So I told her/it not to get off the bed, all the while wondering if a demon would obey me, but felt to go anyway; I left the room and went to another room and knelt down.

I prayed and told my Father in Heaven what was going on and what I had done which hadn’t worked. Then I felt prompted that I had not asked permission from the Lord to cast the demon out. I knew then that some evil spirits are so powerful, they require fasting and prayer.

“And when they were come to the multitude, there came to him a certain man, kneeling down to him and saying,

Lord, have mercy on my son: for he is lunatick, and sore vexed: for oftentimes he falleth into the fire, and oft into the water.

And I brought him to thy disciples, and they could not cure him.

Then Jesus answered and said, O faithless and perverse generation, how long shall I be with you? how long shall I suffer you? bring him hither to me.

And Jesus rebuked the devil; and he departed out of him: and the child was cured from that very hour.

Then came the disciples to Jesus apart, and said, Why could not we cast him out?

And Jesus said unto them, Because of your unbelief: for verily I say unto you, If ye have faith as a grain of mustard seed, ye shall say unto this mountain, Remove hence to yonder place; and it shall remove; and nothing shall be impossible unto you.

Howbeit this kind goeth not out but by prayer and fasting.” (Matthew 17:14-21, emphasis added)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

I prayed to my Heavenly Father, asking for permission to ask His Son to come. I felt the Lord's presence enter the room. It became a sacred space. I then asked His permission for me to cast the evil out of my daughter. I expressed gratitude for the experience and all I was learning from it. I felt that He granted permission, and I went back to Denise. I laid my hands on her head.

"In the name of Jesus Christ and by the power of the Holy Priesthood, I command you to depart and go back down to hell where you belong," I said in a very firm and commanding voice.

It left instantly. Denise turned to me and in her normal voice said, "Dad, say a quick prayer to put up shields! It's coming back!"

I told her that apparently she had invited the demon in, and she should be the one to voice the prayer and put up shields to keep it away. She quickly lowered her head and voiced a prayer of gratitude for the experience and asked that her aura be sealed up so it could not come back.

Denise later told me that during this experience she had been in her body, but kind of shoved to the back. The evil entity was so powerful that it had complete control over her. She said she basically just observed what was going on, not being able to do much about it.

Like Elder Busche said, we can go into fear and become so weak or scared that our knees actually shake. Or we can become educated about how darkness and evil work, receive understanding and thereby gain confidence in the Lord, and do exactly what He tells us to do in the moment—for Elder Busche to hug the missionary and express love for him and for me to ask the Lord's permission to cast the demon out in His name.

The bottom line is we will have to deal with devils and darkness in this life until the time of peace when the adversary is bound. In the meantime, we are not to be fearful which can be

Conquering Spiritual Evil

hard when faced with something that can be “scary” or we’re not familiar with. Their greatest tactic is fear, and they are very good at it. We should be prayerful and confident in the Lord.

An LDS woman, who does energy work, related how her young daughter had disturbed a nest of yellow jackets. She was stung three times and was screaming with pain and was hysterical. She and her husband ripped off her shirt and found where she had been stung. The woman made a poultice of tobacco to draw out the poison. It helped a little but didn’t do much with the pain. She started to pray fervently and had the impression to check the stings for dark entities. She did, and to her astonishment, she found fifteen evil spirits had jumped into the wounds. Immediately she prayed for their removal and suddenly, just as quickly, her daughter quit crying and said it didn’t hurt anymore. The mother said it was just like flipping a switch. She kept her wits about her and took care of the situation with the Lord’s help—a good example for us. Many times this is extremely hard to do, to keep our wits about us when confronted with spiritual evil. Nevertheless, it is vitally important, because when we allow fear to enter our being it breaks down our spiritual shielding, thereby allowing darkness to enter. As stated before, any negative emotion can do this, even pride.

I had a woman call me once after speaking at a seminar I coordinated. She had spoken on Saturday morning and called me on Sunday evening. The conversation went something like this:

“I have conquered Satan,” she announced. “He can’t influence me anymore; he has no power over me at all. Besides that, I now know everything there is to know. Just ask me any question, and I will tell you the answer.”

She went on for some time about these things. I just felt strange about it all. In no way did I feel she had conquered Satan or knew everything there is to know. But I wasn’t sure what was going on, so I said good-bye and hung up.

I found out a month later that by that Tuesday night she was so possessed that her husband didn’t know what to. He had

Conquering Spiritual Evil

called their bishop and stake president. They didn't know what to do either. Her son that had served a mission in Brazil finally arrived and said that she was possessed, that he had seen this on his mission. He told them to cast out, all night if necessary. They spent the night casting demons out of her.

Unfortunately, they didn't know the importance of shielding themselves or anyone in the room. Her daughter was in the room, and one of the demons jumped into her. I am sure the daughter was in a state of fear from witnessing the events that were happening with her mother. The daughter then declared her hatred of her mother (before this they were best of friends.) The husband finally put her in the mental ward the next day. A word of caution, they can jump from one person to another, just as Christ had them jump from a person into a herd of swine. If you don't know what you are doing, be sure to walk in the Spirit and ask what to do.

Nephi in the Book of Mormon tells that "the large and spacious building, which thy father saw, is vain imaginations and the pride of the children of men." Somehow it makes me think of this scripture when I think about what my friend had told me, that she had conquered the adversary and that she knew everything. That "vain imagination" cost her dearly, as did her pride in thinking she knew everything. **The more we learn of God and His ways, the more we realize that we don't know very much at all.**

Possession is a real thing, whether it's a full blown possession like this woman experienced or some evil spirit in you that subtly gets you to do something a little wrong.

Robert Bruce (2002) relates the following story in his book involving a priest:

"Father James was called in by police to help with an unusual problem. He arrived at the location to find two nervous-looking police officers guarding the front door. They called to the owner inside but would not enter the house. Father James thought this strange, but soon understood when he found

Conquering Spiritual Evil

what was inside. The first things Father James noticed were bottle-tops, cutlery, and other less-identifiable objects imbedded in the ceilings, doors, and walls. The small house looked like a war zone. There were a number of half-empty packing boxes, as if the family were in the middle of moving. A young man and woman with their two-year-old son were inside the house.

Father James introduced himself and joined John, Sylvia, and their son, Michael. He learned that their problems started the day Michael was born. Both John and Sylvia began having nightmares that same night. Soon, flashes and blobs of light were seen and frequent knocks and taps were heard throughout the house. Foul smells and icy cold patches wafted through the house. The baby slept badly and cried a lot. The situation steadily worsened, with objects being moved and going missing, and several unexplainable fires occurred. Soon, objects began floating about the house. Unhappy with the medical opinion given them (that it was mass hallucination), John began drinking and Sylvia took Valium.

...Father James was given a drink while they explained their situation. As he reached for it, the glass flew off the table and smashed against the wall. The next glass met the same fate. Although Father James was shocked, John and Sylvia said this happened all the time. Father James decided he was not thirsty. Apparently, several priests of various faiths had already tried to help them in this house alone, but so far none had succeeded.

Father James took his ceremonial robes and other paraphernalia with him into the bathroom to change. He put the bag down and removed his jacket, but when he turned to get his robe, the bag was missing. He found it in the kitchen at the front of the house. Again he went into the bathroom to change, but the same thing happened. This time his

Conquering Spiritual Evil

bag and robes were scattered through the garden. Father James recovered his things and repeated the process, this time keeping his foot firmly on the bag as he changed. Father James carried out the ceremony, but it seemed to have no effect.

Father James visited with me two years later and we discussed paranormal phenomena as he told me this story. It troubled him that the blessing and cleansing rituals he performed seemed to have made matters worse for the family. He had not been asked to return to that house. Although Father James had not been invited back, he kept tabs on the situation through his police contacts. John hanged himself a few months after Father James' visit; shortly after this, Sylvia had a breakdown and was committed to a mental hospital; having no immediate family, Michael was made a ward of the state." (pp. 52-53)

This is an extreme example but really illustrates what darkness is all about: destroying us in any way possible. It makes me wonder how the medical establishment explained the imbedded objects in the ceiling, walls, and doors.

Religious people were called in to help, all to no avail, and they didn't understand about shielding or the behavior of demons. Did they not have proper priesthood authority? How come some of them seem to be able to help in other situations? Is it because of faith and prayers? In a previous story I mentioned the woman that became possessed and her husband called the Bishop and Stake President, neither of which had any idea what to do until her son who had served a mission to Brazil and had seen possessions and knew to cast out. We have not been taught about these things because we are told they don't exist. We tend to believe our allopathic doctors and say it is just hallucinations.

Robert Bruce (2002) explained in his book:

Conquering Spiritual Evil

“Paranormal phenomena cannot be explained away, or even explained at all, by modern science. Many say these things simply cannot occur. Consequently, all Neg incidents are considered to be mental problems because science cannot conceive of them being anything else. Because of this widespread denial, Neg problems spread unchecked.” (p. 53)

It is important for us to study the scriptures about this. The Lord cast out many demons and devils from people who were possessed. If you are LDS, you are taught in a sacred place one of the ways to dismiss the adversary and see if the spirits are true messengers of our Lord and Savior, Jesus Christ. And the scriptures and prophets have given us many other clues and examples that are worth studying.

Brigham Young said:

“I know very well that, whether we are active or not, the invisible spirits are active. And every person who desires and strives to be a Saint is closely watched by fallen spirits that came here when Lucifer fell, and by the spirits of wicked persons who have been here in tabernacles and departed from them, but who are still under the control of the prince of the power of the air. Those spirits are never idle; they are watching every person who wishes to do right, and are continually prompting them to do wrong. This makes it necessary for us to be continually on our guard—makes this probation a continual warfare.” (JD, 7:239)

We were discussing some of these things in my priesthood quorum. A man mentioned that when Jesus was in the synagogue, a man with an unclean spirit cried out to Him saying: “Let us alone; what have we to do with thee, thou Jesus of Nazareth? art thou

Conquering Spiritual Evil

come to destroy us? I know thee who thou art, the Holy One of God.” (Mark 1:24) Another time a possessed man saw Him “afar off” and ran to worship Him saying the same thing and asking that if He was going to cast them out, they be cast into the bodies of some swine. When the Lord asked them who they were, they answered, “My name is Legion, for we are many.” (Mark 5:2-14) This brother’s point was that the devils knew the Lord from the pre-mortal life, just as they know us. Lucifer and his minions came without a veil. They know us intimately and use that knowledge against us. His other point was that they desire a body and will do anything to have one. He went on to say that a friend of his calculated how many one third of the host that followed Lucifer might be. On the conservative side, he estimated that there would be about one thousand devils for every person on the earth. (That doesn’t include earthbound spirits and demons).

The possibility that each of us has over one thousand dark entities trying to destroy us was a little mind boggling for some of the men in the quorum. Then this brother went on to say that we each have been given a body that they all would love to obtain. If we liken our body to a car and decide for whatever reason to give up the keys, there are many entities waiting to drive it for us. When we do anything of a negative nature, it is like throwing our keys up in the air for whoever wants them. These beings will grab them and take off. The problem is that “car thieves” usually don’t care what they do to the car they have stolen. These evil entities are the same way, and they will destroy a body if they are able.

This was a great analogy which explains how these dark entities work and why they are so adamant about taking us over and destroying us through drugs, alcohol, pornography, other addictions, and war — to name a few. Because they know each of us intimately from the pre-mortal life, they know exactly what will work against us and what our weakest points are.

In summary, it is important to understand how these entities work and what they are capable of. First, these entities look

Conquering Spiritual Evil

for a way to enter, an opening in our aura when we participate in unwholesome activities. (As in Elder Busche's account) Second, these entities can move from one person to another. Therefore, everyone shielding themselves is necessary and always in the name of the Lord, Jesus Christ while following the Spirit. Lastly, Elder Busche showed us that the greatest shield is having Christ's love. Indeed, it IS Christ's love that shields us and clears entities.

COMPLETE POSSESSION AND INTEGRATION

Several years ago I organized a seminar in Salt Lake City and asked a man to come and speak about his missionary experiences in Brazil in the late 1960's. We recorded his talk, and afterward he gave me his unpublished manuscript titled "Under Spiritual Attack." I am going to quote the main experience that happened on his mission. It is long and would make a great Hollywood picture, except I doubt most people would believe it. The experience demonstrates many examples of what can happen during a possession. These were 19 to 20-year-old young men trying to deal with something they had never encountered before and was completely outside of their realm of possibility. These are quotes directly from his talk and unpublished manuscript.

"Day One:

We were working with a new member family that I had helped teach and baptize. The family was made up of a husband and wife, their two daughters and a son. The mother had talked to her 19 year old nephew, Mario, about the church and had extended an invitation to him to meet us. He was heavily involved in a spiritualist group. They had scheduled a family home evening for us to meet Mario with some other members and non-member investigators.

Around 7:00 PM four missionaries in our district including myself, met at the members house about one block away from our apartment. We started about 7:30 after everyone had arrived. Things were proceeding nicely; we were discussing

Conquering Spiritual Evil

some scriptures, when shortly after 8:00 PM Mario said he was feeling a little ill and asked to be excused for a few minutes. He left and went into the kitchen while we continued the discussion.

After about ten minutes Mario called Jose, one of the young church members, to come into the kitchen. Soon after, the two went into the master bedroom. Jose had had a lot of contact with spiritualism prior to his joining the Church. He was also acquainted with Mario, which is why Mario summoned him.

Soon after the two went into the master bedroom, Mario made a pact with his guardian Spirit to do an operation. He folded a piece of paper into seven points and threw it out the master bedroom window, all of this happening in Jose presence. Mario then received a spirit named ----- - ----- . Jose had had enough at that point, ran out of the master bedroom and called us missionaries to come into the bedroom. We hurried into the bedroom and were confronted by an amazing sight. There was Mario, standing on his feet on the right side of the bed, opposite the window. He was hunched over, nearly double, with his right arm folded behind him, and his thumb and third finger touching tip to tip forming a circle. He was growling and muttering to himself, and making a kind of convulsive lunge forward every few seconds with his upper body.

We quickly decided what to do, which was to move Mario onto the bed and hold him there as he began to thrash around. We also quickly asked each other what the proper methodology was for casting out evil spirits based on scriptures, teachings from the Church leaders, and any procedures in Church priesthood manuals we could remember. As soon as we had that figured out, we then began to cast out the spirit. This we did several times, but there was no change in Mario's condition. In our

Conquering Spiritual Evil

state of surprise and a little shock, not sure that what we were seeing was real; we began to think that Mario was faking being possessed. Then we began to notice an odd, strong incense-like smell filling the master bedroom. We looked around the room, while holding Mario down on the bed, but could not discover its source. Then we realized that the incense smell was flowing out of Mario's nose and ears. We could see it like a light smoke that appeared from his nose and ears as his head shook violently side to side while he thrashed around on the bed. At that instant my whole world changed. There in front of me was indisputable evidence of another world, up close and personal, something which was before only believed by faith, disdained by atheists and agnostics, brought to full reality like a hard, sharp slap across my face.

There are a number of scriptures that refer to brimstone in association with devils, however brimstone is described as sulfur, and the incense smell coming from Mario's nose and ears did not smell like sulfur. In the months afterwards, while I was still in Brazil, I noticed the same odor every time I walked past one of the many spiritualist stores in Sao Paulo.

This had been going on for several minutes, when suddenly Mario began biting himself hard on his hands and fingers, arms and legs, and slamming the side of the forearm down savagely on the hardwood headboard of the bed. The headboard was about two inches thick. It was obvious that even though he was biting himself and beating the headboard with his forearm, he did not seem to be feeling any pain.

By now Mario was thrashing around with such force that the slats supporting the bed broke causing the bed to suddenly crash loudly to the floor. At this point it became blatantly obvious with the increase smell flowing out of Mario's nose and

Conquering Spiritual Evil

ears, his self-biting and his repeatedly bashing the headboard with his forearm without feeling pain and without any noticeable injury, that Mario was not faking it. We also began to realize that the reason we were seemingly getting nowhere casting out the spirit possessing Mario's body was that Mario was, in fact, receiving multiple spirits and that, in fact, we were casting them out. And there seemed to be no end to them.

We were shouting at each other as Mario was thrashing around on the bed snarling, hissing and growling. As we were vocally expressing our realization that Mario was not faking and was being possessed by multiple spirits, Mario, or rather the spirits possessing Mario, heard us and caused Mario to explode into extremely violent thrashing. This required all of the combined strength and effort of us four missionaries and three ward members to hold Mario down, and even then he was shaking us around quite severely.

The scene was nearly out of control. There we were, four Elders and three other male church members trying desperately to hold Mario down as he thrashed about violently on the bed with that incense-like odor flowing out of his nose and ears, while each of us took turns casting out spirits that were entering and possessing him.

Finally we got the last spirits out of Mario and he quickly calmed down as he came to himself. We talked with Mario and after feeling assured that he was truly himself again, we let go of him. He got up and walked down into the dining/living room area.

As we were casting out the unclean spirits out of Mario, the actual atmosphere within the apartment had changed. It had physically turned into what can only be described as an unusual, creepy, dense, heavy atmosphere filled with deep, intense evil. It had entered the apartment as we

Conquering Spiritual Evil

started to cast spirits out of Mario and permeated the entire atmosphere.

After a hurried discussion it was decided that another Elder and myself would stay to bless and dedicate each room in the apartment with prayer while another Elder and member would go call the mission president.

Just as the other Elder and I were about to get started blessing and dedicating the apartment, Mario walked by the top of the stairs and was attacked by evil spirits. Mario hissed and his feet flew into the air as the spirits tripped him and he fell violently onto his back, his head smacking the hardwood floor with a thunk. He lay there seemingly unconscious. Suddenly something invisible started to drag him like a rag doll onto the staircase. The evil spirits that had ambushed him at the top of the stairs grabbed him and were pulling him on his back across the floor at the top of the stairs, then headfirst down the staircase. His arms, legs, head and body all were bumping and bouncing loosely and hard on each of the steps as they pulled him rapidly down towards the point where the staircase makes a right turn as you go down the stairs towards the front door. I rushed to the top of the stairs and long-jumped over Mario down onto the stair step in the corner, the momentum slamming me into the far wall. Quickly I spun around, bent down and intercepted him just as the spirits got him to the turn in the staircase. As I grabbed Mario under his arms and lifted him up, the spirits began to pull at my hair, which felt just like a bunch of hands grabbing my hair and trying to pull my head backwards. The deep intensity of the evil on that staircase was so physical that it made my knees weak, and they almost started to shake because of the sudden weakness. I noticed that Mario still appeared to be unconscious as his arms

Conquering Spiritual Evil

hung limply and his head rolled back and forth against my chest.

The other two Elders and a church member also ran to the top of the stairs and grabbed Mario by his legs and together we fought the evil spirit to get Mario back up the stairs. We carried Mario back into the master bedroom, put him on the collapsed bed and began immediately, once again, to cast evil spirits out of him. It wasn't apparent whether he had been knocked unconscious when his head hit the floor and the spirits possessed him as we carried him into the bedroom or if they possessed him as he fell to the floor and simply remained calm. Whatever the case, Mario appeared to be completely unconscious until we got him onto that bed, where he immediately came to and started thrashing about. As we struggled to hold him down and start casting the spirits out we began to realize that there were way more spirits getting into Mario than we had first thought, and that in fact there were legions of them pouring into him.

Then spirits began to talk at us, sometimes even shouting and cursing at us through Mario's mouth. His voice would change as different spirits took over speaking and shouting at us. And sometimes, very weirdly, we heard multiple voices, each speaking or shouting something entirely different from each of the others, but all speaking simultaneously from Mario's open mouth, like a crowd of hostile spectators at some public event. Some of them were talking at us and some were shouting, while others were growling and snarling, but all of them were saying completely different things at the same time. Words don't even begin to express how bizarre it was to see that going on while we struggled to hold Mario down, my face only about a foot and a half from his face as I listened to multiple voices coming out of his mouth.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

The other two Elders returned at this point and joined in helping to cast out the spirits. By now there was a whole crowd of different voices coming from Mario's mouth, each with a distinct personality, talking, shouting, pleading and snarling at us. Then a distinctly female voice made its appearance. The female spirit began asking us what we were trying to do and then telling us to stop. One Elder asked her what her name was and she identified herself as ----- and said she had been around for thousands of years. She then began to talk to us in a reassuring tone of voice, saying in Portuguese, 'Why are you doing this? It isn't necessary. You don't need to do this.' The Elder then cast her out too, just like the others. As I remember he specifically called her by name and cast her out.

Mario came to himself more quickly this time, due in large part I suppose to the fact that we were simply getting better at casing the spirits out as our faith increased with experience. As soon as we were sure that Mario was himself again, we released him and we finished blessing and dedicating the apartment. Mario went back into the living/dining room area and sat down on the sofa. We commented on how we could sense a particularly strong evil presence on the staircase.

Each of us had cast out the spirits calling upon them in the name of Jesus Christ and by the power of the Melchizedek Priesthood, though each of us varied slightly in where we would cast them. In my case, I would usually cast them back to wherever they had come from. I purposely avoided saying back to the presence of Satan, because he might have been in the immediate area. Even though there is a biblical example of evil spirits being cast into swine, I avoided casting them into living things. On one or two occasions I cast them into the telephone pole outside the apartment. This

Conquering Spiritual Evil

was because I had heard of spirits being cast into inanimate objects before. I remember looking at that telephone pole a few times in the weeks afterwards, to see if there had been any physical damage in it. There hadn't. But generally I cast them back to the hell or wherever they had come from. This seemed to work just fine.

Another Elder and I returned to my apartment to get some consecrated oil. When we returned the four of us missionaries talked with Mario about anointing him with the consecrated oil and giving him a blessing, to which he agreed. We got a chair and Mario sat down on it. We anointed him with the consecrated oil and laid our hands on his head. We then started to bless him. But we had hardly begun when Mario suddenly fainted and we barely caught him in time as he fell off the chair. We carried him over to the sofa and laid him down. He shortly came to and arose from the sofa, took a few steps forward towards the front window, then dropped to his knees, deliberately striking his forearm against the wood-block floor. He then batted the top of his forehead against the floor, rose back up on his knees, and pounded his right arm hard against his chest. He then rose to his feet, turned 180 degrees, pounded his right arm against his chest again, put his left hand, with thumb extended, to his forehead and prayed to his spirit guide. After he finished he wandered off into the kitchen.

We missionaries left to discuss what had happened and what to do. We felt that Mario ought to stay at the apartment and not see many people. We went back and he agreed to this. It was his aunt's apartment. There was a missionary conference the next day which we had to attend. It had proved to be an extraordinary day. We were just young guys, nineteen to twenty years of age. To be confronted by something like this definitely

Conquering Spiritual Evil

changes your perspective of things. It showed us the power of the Priesthood which gave us a feeling of security. We were grateful for the Priesthood because during the next several days things were going to get much, much worse.

Day Two:

Back at our apartment my companion and I went to sleep. At about 3:15 AM we were suddenly awoken by the sounds of banging, knocking and rustling noises outside in the patio in front of our apartment and in our kitchen. I got up and turned on the room light, twisting the rotary switch on the wall next to the door. All at once a tremendous commotion erupted on the roof directly above us and we also heard the sounds of something like a large animal running back and forth on the roof, like a big dog or worse. Then that same dense, deep, intense, physically evil sensation that we had felt in the member's apartment now descended on our quarters. It was very weird and very scary. Something brushed up against the shutters of my window several times. It sounded like a big bristled brush being swept slowly along the shutters, like a large animal pressing up against the shutters and rubbing across them. I stared at the shutters expecting any second to see hairs protrude through the slats, moving from one side to the other. I stared at the flimsy little latch holding the shutters closed knowing that a good yank on the shutters from the outside would easily break it. I still get the creeps thinking about that. We were scared silly to even open the door to look out and confront whatever thing it was directly outside the front of our quarters.

We managed to keep control...barely. Our fear was so strong because of the sounds on our roof and in front of our quarters that we were afraid to turn off our light or close our eyes. There was definitely something to that, that as long as we kept

Conquering Spiritual Evil

our eyes open, whatever it was that wanted us couldn't attack us.

The noises finally subsided after about an hour. But we were too scared to turn off the light or close our eyes. Nevertheless, the long exhausting day and the fatigue setting in from the extreme excitement of what we had just gone through that night finally caught up with me about 5:30 AM. I started to doze off. No sooner did my eyes start to close than a huge weight or force suddenly pressed down on me with such tremendous pressure that my upper torso, shoulders and head were pushed deep into my bed. It was so powerful that I could feel the mattress and pillow literally come up around the sides of my body and head as it forced me down, pinning me to my bed with such intensity that I couldn't move. It didn't feel like a lot of hands pushing on me or like people sitting on me, but rather it was an even pressure all over, which didn't hit instantaneously like a punch, but rather came down on me over the space of about a second. And even though the force wasn't pushing directly on my arms and legs, they were paralyzed and I couldn't move them. However, my voice was still working fine and I yelled out to my companion. He looked over and saw what was happening to me and immediately called upon the power of the priesthood and cast off, in the name of the Savior, whatever it was that was smashing me. I felt it immediately rise up off of me, the physical evil sensation trailing off with it.

It was just starting to get light when my companion and I got up, got dressed and went to the missionary conference. We had been attending the conference for about two hours when one of the assistants to the Mission President came into the conference over to where we were sitting and told us there was an emergency phone call for us, that someone needed us immediately. It was Mario's

Conquering Spiritual Evil

aunt and she was terribly agitated. She said that there had been a frightening incident with Mario and she wanted us back there immediately.

We grabbed a taxi outside the Stake Center where the conference was being held. We had been traveling about fifteen minutes in the taxi when it quit running. We coasted to a halt on the shoulder with the driver quickly getting frustrated about the car dying and not being able to restart it. We were concerned that there was something more than simple engine trouble that had stopped the car.

The driver got out, walked around to the front of the car, lifted up the hood and leaned over the engine looking at it. He fiddled with something on the engine, got back into the car and tried to start it. It didn't. It wouldn't even turn over. So, he got back out and tried fiddling with something else, got back in and tried restarting it again. It still wouldn't start. He apologized, got out again and stood staring under the hood at the engine. By that time it was obvious to us that something didn't want us to get back to the aunts apartment. The four of us Elders quickly decided that we needed to bless the car. This we quickly did using the power of the priesthood while the driver was outside staring at the engine. When we finished we called the driver to get back in the car and try starting it again. He got in, turned the key, and it fired right up. We took off and arrived about ten minutes later at the apartment.

By the time we got there, things had settled down. Mario's aunt opened the door and as we came to the top of the stairs we saw Mario sitting nervously on the living room sofa and another sister standing in the kitchen. But it was obvious that things had gotten way out of control. The master bedroom looked like a disaster area with some pieces of furniture still knocked over, and the 2-inch

Conquering Spiritual Evil

thick footboard to the master bed had been split clean in two.

We asked what had happened and the sister said that Mario had received a spirit while looking out the master bedroom window. She said she had tried to talk the spirit out of Mario, but the spirit got mad and caused Mario to go on a rampage in the master bedroom, trashing the place. In the process he had leaped onto the bed and slammed the side of his right forearm down with incredible force on the top of the footboard, which was still a couple of inches above the floor even though the slats had broke the evening before. His forearm didn't even have so much as a red mark on it.

After busting the footboard, Mario had tried to attack the sister. In defense she quickly raised her right arm to the square and began praying. Both she and Mario said that at that instant a blinding beam of light shot out from the sister's shoulder and struck Mario square in the chest driving him back onto the bed, where he had collapsed. The unclean spirit departed out of Mario immediately afterwards.

Mario told us he was now more intent than ever on leaving his spiritualist sect and wanted us to continue teaching him the gospel. He also expressed concern about his spiritualist sect. He explained that the next day, Friday, at 8:00 PM they would start a "corrente" which is the counterclockwise dance circle female spiritualists do and then at 8:30 PM they would send spirits to attack us. Then from midnight until 12:30 AM they would work their death curses.

We stayed with him the rest of that day. I stayed with him all the time while the other three Elders rotated in 8 hour shifts with me. Mario would be possessed several more times that day. We noticed that whenever Mario received a spirit, he would quickly gasp or hiss, clench his fists and grimace in pain, the air making a loud hissing sound

Conquering Spiritual Evil

as it raced passed his gritting teeth. I asked Mario about this and he explained that, in fact, receiving a spirit was physically painful.

At this point we realized that Mario could not go near the stairs or any windows, without being attacked by unclean spirits. Mario agreed that it was not safe for him to do so, so he kept about a six-foot distance from the staircase, and pretty much stayed in the dining/living area and in the kitchen away from the windows.

It was pretty quiet the rest of that night.

Day Three:

I awoke in the morning after an uneventful night. We called the mission office and were informed that the mission president wanted to talk to us. He got on the phone and told us that he had been in contact with the First Presidency of the church about our situation through the Apostle in charge of our area, Elder Gordon B. Hinckley. They had instructed Elder Hinckley to relay to us through our Mission President **a special ordinance that would allow us to seal off a home or an apartment to protect us against unclean spirits.** Our Mission President then instructed us in how to perform this special ordinance. **He also warned us that even if we used the ordinance to seal off a house, if someone inside invited the spirits in; they would still be able to enter.**

My companion and I then went about using the ordinance to seal off the house. While I cannot go into the details of the ordinance due to its sacred nature, the ordinance was performed by anointing with consecrated oil each doorway and window frame throughout the apartment, as well as the bottom of the staircase. Each of these was done one at a time, with a specific prayer given after each anointing. An interesting portion of the prayer given after anointing each window and door specifically protects people from being carried out

Conquering Spiritual Evil

that door or window against their will by Satan, any of his evil followers or any satanic powers. Each room was also individually blessed as well, once again invoking protection, the difference here being that the rooms were not anointed.

We learned that **performing this ordinance to seal off a house creates a sphere of light around it, which evil cannot penetrate unless, as our Mission President warned us, someone inside invites them in.**

The rest of the morning and afternoon remained uneventful, as we passed time talking about church subjects. We started to have some concerns as the evening approached, knowing that after 8:00 PM things could start getting a bit dicey. We held a short meeting and went over what to do if Mario got possessed, and we reminded Mario to stay well away from the windows and the staircase.

In spite of our meeting and the attempt to keep everyone calm and focused, the anticipation and suspense continued to grow and Mario became increasingly nervous. When it reached 8:00 PM we all started looking at our watches frequently. Everyone became quiet in the apartment as we started to cast our eyes around snatching quick looks at each other's faces, trying to find reassurance there, but finding none. Then, shortly after 8:30 PM off in the distance down the hills we heard dogs starting to bark. Mario looked up at me and quietly said that the spirits were marching up the streets and that the dogs and horses could see them. A brother from the ward and I decided to go check the front bedroom and someone else went to look in the kitchen and master bedroom. More dogs were going crazy, barking and howling, closer and closer to the apartment as the spirits passed by them in their march up the street. A half-mile away, then a quarter mile away, 300 yards, then closing to 100 yards. Then, suddenly, like something was poured

Conquering Spiritual Evil

into the apartment, a sensation of pure, physical evil filled the rooms, flowing from the roof inward. The air itself turned dense and heavy. Two Elders had just arrived, one with asthma and both found it difficult to breathe. The feeling of deep, intense evil was absolutely physical. Our knees went weak, the hair on our arms and legs and backs of our necks stood up. Goose bumps erupted on our arms and faces.

I was standing just inside the entrance to the front bedroom with a brother from the ward who was standing about mid-room looking out the bedroom window when that physically evil sensation poured into the apartment. At that instant the front bedroom went cold, catching me completely off guard. The brother quickly turned around and looked at me, his face rapidly morphing into an expression of shock. It was like someone turning the lights down in a room with a rheostat, except this was the temperature, like the heat was being suddenly drained out of the room. And it seemed like a little of it was even being pulled from our bodies as well. The transition took about two to three seconds. There was no breeze or fan in the bedroom and air conditioning virtually didn't exist in Brazil at that time, except in the wealthiest of homes. My estimate is the room dropped from about 90 degrees to about 40 degrees in those three seconds. It was definitely chilly, and that physically evil sensation poured into the bedroom as well, which because of the high humidity gave the cold a damp feeling to it, like the air on a cold, foggy night. You would have to put a coat on if you stayed in that bedroom.

There was no way I was going to stay in that bedroom and I turned and headed for the doorway, the brother right behind me. As I passed through the bedroom doorway I noticed a distinct division point in the temperature right at the door frame

Conquering Spiritual Evil

going from cold to warm as I hurried through the doorway and turned right out into the dining area.

Everyone moved into the living/dining room area, and we stood there looking back and forth at each other in concerned anticipation. I told the others about the bedroom going cold, and a couple of people went and checked it out. The heavy, physical evil sensation was very powerful, and it caused Mario to become extremely agitated and nervous. It was something he should not have allowed himself to do, because he started to lose control. And in that instant, spirits surged en masse up the staircase, turning into the dining room and poured into Mario, who was standing next to the small dining table, possessing him instantly. He gasped through gritted teeth, the air making a hissing sound as it suddenly sucked through his teeth into his lungs, clenched his fists, and with a grimace of pain on his face collapsed onto his side on the floor.

We picked up Mario, quickly moved him to the sofa, and began casting the unclean spirits out. At first he hissed and thrashed about violently as the incense smell poured from his nose and ears, snarling, screaming, and cursing at us with guttural sounds, his voice changing as different spirits took over. Then, like on Wednesday two days before, some of the spirits started to plead with us not to cast them out, while others threatened and cursed us. Once again it was very obvious that each of the spirits that spoke or pleaded or screamed at us had a distinctly different personality, one from the other. And their voices were distinctly different as well. This time, however, some of them started saying the same things in unison, which was like hearing a voice run through a vocal harmony processor to create multiple voices out of one, but in this case you could still hear the individuality between each voice. It was a very odd effect, almost electronic

Conquering Spiritual Evil

sounding. But mostly they'd be saying different things at the same time, which was really shocking hearing all that come out of one mouth.

We began frantically casting out the spirits, but more kept pouring into him. He writhed about on the sofa and it was hard to hold on to him while each of us took turns laying our hands on his head to cast out the spirits. Every now and then we could hear spirits cry out or scream as they were cast out. One of us told the spirits to say the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, and some of them did so, one with particularly raspy voice like one of those television pro wrestlers. But the ones that said the Savior's name did so with a tone of disdain and what could be described as a snotty attitude. Then, all at once, Mario relaxed and said he was all right. But the voice didn't quite sound like Mario's, and we could sense that it just didn't feel right. The spirits were trying to deceive us, but we weren't buying. I no sooner started to cast this spirit out and Mario hissed then exploded into renewed violent thrashing and snarling.

One sister ran to the top of the stairs and stood there bravely praying, trying to stop the spirits from coming up the stairs. She cried out saying she could feel them pouring up the stairs and running past her. Within about fifteen minutes, several people arrived to help. Shortly Mario's aunt arrived with her aunt, a medium.

This continued on for about thirty minutes, Mario madly writhing around as we struggled to hold him on the sofa while laying our hands on his head and to cast out spirits at the same time. The exertion on us from fighting the spirits, combined with the summer heat and humidity, was such that we all were sweating profusely. And the slippery sweat made holding Mario even more difficult, which further increased the energy we were expending trying to hold him.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Suddenly Mario spun violently around in a half turn on the sofa, pulling loose from our grips, and ended up on his back on the seat of the sofa, his arms outstretched away from his sides and his legs and feet up over the back of the sofa. Then, incredibly, he started to levitate up off the sofa. His entire body was rising into the air. It was unbelievable. The four brothers from the ward and we four Elders simultaneously grabbed his arms and legs to try and pull him back onto the sofa, two of us on each limb. But he kept rising into the air, a good two feet, literally lifting all of us, eight men, into the air with him! Our combined weight was close to 1400 pounds. His limbs didn't bend or give in the slightest from our combined weight, like they had suddenly turned to steel. It was like trying to stop the forks on a forklift from going up by merely hanging on to them. The steel-like rigidity of Mario's limbs combined with the sheer unstoppable power of the levitating force made it feel like we were trying to stop some massive machine rather than a human being, and our futile attempt to hold Mario down had absolutely zero effect, like we weren't even there. An Elder and I were being lifted up from our kneeling positions on the floor, hanging on to Mario's left arm. I remember the Elder turning his head and looking at me, his eyes filled with an expression best described by "This just can't be happening!" . . .

When everyone else in the room saw Mario start to levitate off the sofa, total pandemonium broke loose. People became unglued and the scene turned into sheer bedlam. People started screaming, and praying, and falling to their knees, or running about the room crying out and waving their arms around. Several, including the medium, were frantically doing some sort of chant and gesturing with their hands. I looked around the room at the madness erupting as I was hanging on to Mario's

Conquering Spiritual Evil

arm, and had to force myself to disconnect from it to stay focused on Mario. About a minute later Mario dropped slowly back onto the sofa. But he was still very much possessed.

After Mario lowered back onto the sofa, we continued casting out spirits. This situation continued for nearly 30 to 40 minutes before it finally stopped. You could see the tension in his body completely disappear as he came to himself. When we were sure he was okay, we let go. My fingers almost felt locked in a curled position from the exertion of gripping onto his arm. Mario stood up in front of the sofa, but didn't go anywhere. I stood up next to him and I asked him where his spirit was while the unclean spirits possessed him. He said his own spirit was still inside of him, but that the other spirits pushed it down and out of the way, motioning with his hands in a downward gesture from his right shoulder across his chest down to his left hip. He said most of the time he could tell what was going on, but had no power to control it, since the unclean spirits had his spirit 'pushed into a corner'. Sometimes, he said, while he was possessed he could still see what was going on outside his body, but at other times the evil spirits would have his spirit so crowded into a corner that he couldn't see anything. And then there were times, when he received a spirit, he said he would have only a vague recollection or no conscious recollection of the event.

When everyone had calmed down, the medium that Mario's aunt had brought approached us four Elders. She told us that Mario was a leader of a spiritualist sect. He was perceived as being very powerful. Once you are in the sect the leaders aren't going to let you go without a fight, especially someone as powerful as Mario.

I then commented to her that we could feel the spirits the strongest on the staircase and that

Conquering Spiritual Evil

when Mario was possessed, the spirits possessing him would come up the staircase and into him. I also noted to her that we had had some difficulty keeping them off the staircase. She said that spirits particularly liked to gather and hang out on staircases or use it as a passageway. This explained why Mario was susceptible to possession whenever he came near the staircase. She also cautioned us about windows, that spirits would come in through there or could carry or push people out a window.

She also said something else I found very interesting. She said that her 'good' spirits had told her that we definitely had the power of God with us. This was because every time an evil spirit would enter Mario, we would use our power and call upon God, and a big hand would come through the window, grab the evil spirit by the back of the neck and throw him out the window."

The Elders invited the spiritualist sect to come and remove the curses that had been thrown at Mario. They did so, and Elder Bos recorded the event on a tape recorder. A few days later when he played it at the mission home, the **music and bells on the tape opened "doorways" for evil spirits to enter the mission home.** The missionaries destroyed the tape. Makes me wonder what our music does to us?

The Elders continued to be bothered for several more weeks afterward. They would hear noises, animals, knocking, and other things around their apartment at night. Usually this caused them to go into a "fear" mode allowing the demons to enter their apartment, most of the time pinning and shoving Elder Bos into his bed. They had an experience a day or two later as they talked to the demon(s) in Mario.

This is one last experience I am going to relate about Mario because of the lesson it teaches.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

“On day 4 Mario was possessed again. This time these unclean spirits seemed to have a game plan for deceiving us, repeatedly allowing Mario to relax from time to time as though we had cast the last of them out. But we could still sense their presence in Mario, and as we would cast them out, a new group would immediately pour in to him and he would hiss and start thrashing around again. And so the unclean spirits continued their attempts to deceive us by repeating this same ruse over and over again, causing Mario to thrash about for a few minutes, then suddenly relax. The unclean spirits had never done anything this consistently during the last four days.

This had been going on for nearly an hour when, once again Mario relaxed, but as before we could sense something still was not right. And as we had been doing I laid my hands on Mario’s head and repeated the ordinance to cast out the unclean spirits. But this time, instead of thrashing around Mario only moved a little bit then relaxed completely. But he didn’t open his eyes, just continuing to lie there relaxed on the rug. Then we began to sense something exceptionally deceitful and evil had entered into Mario. A single, vile entity that was perhaps the one whose orders the other unclean spirits had been following with such consistency. He had entered as I cast the last batch of unclean spirits out. Yet Mario hadn’t hissed and was lying there completely relaxed, which made us a little unsure, especially because when I cast out the last batch of unclean spirits, Mario didn’t start thrashing around. So I asked Mario in Portuguese, ‘Mario, voce esta bem?’ (Mario, are you all right?) He responded calmly, ‘Sim, estou bem.’ (Yes, I’m fine). But he continued just lying there, eyes closed, and we could still sense the malevolent presence. I asked again if he was all right and he said that he was. This was in Portuguese. Then one of the

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Elders had a clever idea. We knew Mario didn't speak English, so he asked him in English, 'Mario, what's your name?' Mario responded in perfect English without any accent, 'My name is Mario Luiz, why?' And in that instant this vile, evil spirit knew we had tricked him and went crazy, causing Mario to thrash violently around the floor. Whoever this vile spirit was, he snarled and cursed and screamed at us as one of the Elders laid hands on Mario's head and cast him out."

Rick's missionary experiences with evil spirits finally slowed down, though after his mission and for the rest of his life, he had hundreds of such experiences, some of which were quite intense. After he spoke at our seminar and gave me his unpublished manuscript, I had not heard about him until a friend called to tell me that Rick had passed away. He will be sorely missed, as he was a great warrior for Jesus Christ and His truth.

This story is long, but it contains many important facts. First, possession is real and can get quite scary and potentially harmful. Second, even though the missionaries used the process given to them by Elder Gordon B. Hinckley, the evil spirits still were able to enter the room because someone in the room was "inviting" them to come in or to be with him. This shows us that we need to be extremely vigilant about who and what we let into our home and even into our lives. Third, as long as Mario stayed open to receiving the spirits, he was inviting them to come in. Fourth, when the spirits were cast out, a shield could have been employed to keep them out, and angels could have been requested to guard the entry way. Fifth, a possessed person can be quite a bit stronger than normal, as seen when Mario went completely stiff and broke a two-inch thick headboard with no damage to his arm, not even a mark on it. Also strange smells and smoke can come from the ears and nose. Sixth, animals can see and sense demons. Seventh, people who are possessed will sometimes thrash about and

Conquering Spiritual Evil

do strange things with their arms and legs. This is because demons don't quite know how to control a body; they have never had one.

From Rick's experiences we have learned several facts about evil spirits. Following are some personal experiences which teach us more yet.

These evil entities can cause us physical problems. For years I could not eat out without having bowel problems. I couldn't figure out why until I was in St. George, Utah, presenting a book review with my mother and Denise. We had stopped at a fast food place to get a quick bite to eat. When my mother was about to take a bite of her food, Denise blurted out, "Grandma, I'd pray over that before you eat it!" Apparently the food had some dark entities attached to it. I had never really considered this possibility before. But once I started praying over my restaurant food and casting out any darkness that may be on the food in any part of the production or preparation, my bowel problems went away.

On Denise's sixteenth birthday, Dianne and I took her to a small restaurant in Fairview, Utah. When her hamburger was placed before her, she slid the plate to the center of the table and said she wasn't hungry. I asked what was wrong.

"It's full of demons, Dad," she said.

I asked the server if the cook was having a bad day. She said they had just sent him home because he was so angry. Because of his anger many demons had attached to our food. If we had eaten that food, we would have ingested the demons. If we are "in a bad mood" or angry, will that affect the food we are preparing for our family? Will our "negative" state allow dark entities to attach to the food? Obviously, the answer is yes to both questions.

Evil spirits can attach to not only food, but also medicines. The husband of our friend, who is spiritually sighted, was about to take his pain medication for his back problems. She was in the bedroom and in her mind's eye saw two demons attached to the medication. She yelled out to him and asked him what he was doing. He replied that he was getting ready to take his pain pills.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

She yelled back that he had better bless it first as there were a couple of demons attached to the medication.

Years ago a friend and I met a woman that was on powerful pain medications for arthritis. My friend, who was in the medical field, asked her how her body handled the pills. She said that when she first took them, they made her sick. But she had seen how her husband consecrated the oil for the blessing of the sick, so she took the lid off her pills and said a prayer over them, asking God to bless them to the highest good for her body and that they would fulfill the measure of their creation. From that moment on they never made her sick in the least. Something to think about.

Another friend was on anti-depressant medication. After I told him these stories, he blessed his medication. He called two weeks later and told me that all the side effects of the medication had gone away. We have found that entities can be on anything and in anything. (Why do we call liquor – spirits?)

Both of these people blessed their medication to be beneficial for them and that it would be of its highest and best use for their body, casting out all darkness from the medication.

Can these evil spirits cause illness? Brigham Young taught that they do. He spoke at the funeral of one of his counselors, Jedediah Grant. I quoted this before but it is important:

“Do you not think that brother Jedediah can do more good than he could here? When he was here the devils had power over his flesh, he warred with them and fought them, and said that they were around him by millions, and he fought them until he overcame them. So it is with you and I. You never felt a pain and ache, or felt disagreeable, or uncomfortable in your bodies and minds, but what an evil spirit was present causing it. Do you realize that the ague, the fever, the chills, the severe pain in the head, the pleurisy, or any pain in the system, from the crown of the head to the soles of the feet,

Conquering Spiritual Evil

is put there by the devil? You do not realize this, do you?

I say but little about this matter, because I do not want you to realize it. When you have the rheumatism, do you realize that the devil put that upon you? No, but you say, 'I got wet, caught cold, and thereby go the rheumatism.' The spirits that afflict us and plant disease in our bodies, pain in the system, and finally death, have control over us so far as the flesh is concerned." (JD, 4:133)

I am sure that there are times when a disease or health problem is allowed upon us by the Lord for our education and trial. And some of these times it may not be put there by a devil or demon. But I do believe as Brigham Young said that we really don't realize how often our problems are caused by the adversary and his hosts.

An LDS energy worker related how her young son had come down with an extreme case of Lyme disease which caused him to walk around like a little old man. The medical doctor put him on a six week course of antibiotics but after he finished the antibiotics, his symptoms returned. Both she and her son had been learning about the adversary's spiritual weapons that cause pain and disease. Her son said with perfect faith, "Mom, I'll just pray out the spirits and pray away the chains and the Lyme disease will go away." He went to his bedroom and prayed. All his symptoms disappeared and never returned. If we could all have the faith of a child!

Some entities will stay with a person for decades; some even stay with families from generation to generation. They help encourage both men and women to do dark things that are against their nature, against what they have been taught, and alien to who they really are. When we find ourselves enticed to do something that isn't right, **think about repenting and casting off before doing anything else.**

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Brigham Young made this comment in the Salt Lake Tabernacle:

“Let me say to you, my friends . . . , there is no spirit inhabiting a mortal tabernacle (that has not sinned away the day of grace), but what naturally loves and adores the truth, and would bless and honor all those who seek to walk in the way of the Lord, were it not for the influence and power of evil by which they are controlled.” (JD, 11, p. 236)

He is telling us that, yes, we are influenced and even controlled by evil entities and influences. Remember all things are spiritual to Him. If you come home and your house doesn’t “feel” right, it’s not right. The Spirit is informing your spirit of the danger that is in your home. **We should get on our knees and petition our Father in Heaven for help, asking Him what is going on.** Listen, then repent and cast off. **Don’t be afraid to cleanse your home; it is your stewardship and right to do so.** After casting out and cleansing the home, make sure to put up shields against the adversary. Also be sure to ask for angels to come and stand guard, whatever it takes. So men as patriarchs and single moms as matriarch must take a proactive approach and cleanse their living space and be aware of what is there and what surrounds them.

Some people don’t want to talk about these things because “it will attract them.” I have news for you: if you are trying to live the gospel, they are already attracted to you; they are already assigned to you. The war has never ended, and in fact has been intensified in the last while. The Lord needs us to understand this fact and be in the battle. It is our Lord’s Kingdom against the adversary’s kingdom. Remember what President George Q. Cannon said about these evil “influences”:

“We...do not sufficiently realize the importance of keeping guard upon ourselves, and

Conquering Spiritual Evil

upon our feelings, and of resisting the influences that surround us... There are influences in the atmosphere that are invisible to us that, while we are here upon the earth, we ought to resist with all our might, mind, and strength...influences that are opposed to the Spirit of God... If our eyes were open to see the spirit world around us, we should feel differently on this subject than we do; **we would not be so unguarded and careless**, and so indifferent whether we had the spirit and power of God with us or not; but we would be continually watchful and prayerful to our heavenly Father for **His Holy Spirit and His Holy angels to be around us to strengthen us to overcome every evil influence.**" (President George Q. Cannon, JD 11:29-30, emphasis added)

Before I would conduct a seminar, I would go either late at night or early in the morning to dedicate the building. The first thing I would do was cast out any and all dark entities. I would ask the angels to come and clean the place from top to bottom. Then I would ask for the Spirit of the Lord to come and dwell there, as we were doing a seminar for Him. I would dedicate and consecrate the seminar to our Father in Heaven and for His glory. Also I would ask for Warrior Angels to surround the building. For the particular seminar where Br. Bos spoke, I asked that they stand shoulder to shoulder completely around it. I never told anyone other than my family and a few close friends what I had asked for. It was interesting when he stopped, scanned the place and declared there were warrior angels standing shoulder to shoulder protecting the place. I smiled inwardly, and thanked the Lord for that witness.

Do the same for your family and household, protect them in the Lord with shields and angels. Dedicate and consecrate your home to His work. Make it a place of light, reverence, and holiness. Ask Him to come and dwell therein. Remember where two or three are gathered in His name, He is there also. This is literal.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Elder Jeffery R. Holland (2008) talked about angels in his October 2008 General Conference talk. A few quotes from it might be instructive. I would suggest reading all of his talk.

“Time in this setting does not allow even a cursory examination of the scriptures or our own latter-day history, which are so filled with accounts of angels ministering to those on earth, but it is rich with doctrine and rich history indeed.

Usually such beings are not seen. Sometimes they are. But seen or unseen they are always near. Sometimes their assignments are very grand and have significance for the whole world. Sometimes the messages are more private. Occasionally the angelic purpose is to warn. But most often it is to comfort, to provide some form of merciful attention, guidance in difficult times...

I would ask everyone within the sound of my voice to take heart, be filled with faith, and remember the Lord has said He “would fight [our] battles, [our] children’s battles, and [the battles of our] children’s children...The latter days are not a time to fear and tremble. They are a time to be believing and remember our covenants...**And always there are those angels who come and go all around us, seen and unseen, known and unknown, mortal and immortal.**

May we all believe more readily in, and have gratitude for, the Lord’s promise as contained in one of President Monson’s favorite scriptures: ‘I will go before your face. I will be on your right hand and on your left, . . . my Spirit shall be in your [heart], and mine angels round about you, to bear you up.’” (Emphasis added)

Elder Holland also spoke in an April 2010 General Conference talk and said we should ask angels to help us. He was

Conquering Spiritual Evil

talking about staying away from pornography and other such temptations and the addictions that come with such things.

“Acknowledge that people bound by the claims of true addictions often need more help than self-help, and that may include you. Seek that help and welcome it. Talk to your bishop. Follow his counsel. Ask for a priesthood blessing. Use the Church’s Family Services offerings or see other suitable professional help. Pray without ceasing. **Ask angels to help you.**”

Elder Robert D. Hales (2001) shared the following in general conference:

“On a few occasions, I told the Lord that I had surely learned the lessons to be taught and that it wouldn’t be necessary for me to endure any more suffering. Such entreaties seemed to be of no avail, for it was made clear to me that this purifying process of testing was to be endured in the Lord’s time and in the Lord’s own way. ... I ... learned that I would not be left alone to meet these trials and tribulations but that guardian angels would attend me. There were some that were near angels in the form of doctors, nurses, and most of all my sweet companion, Mary. And on occasion, when the Lord so desired, I was to be comforted with visitations of heavenly hosts that brought comfort and eternal reassurances in my time of need.” (p. 6)

It is a great comfort to know that we can and do have angels to attend us in our trying times and especially when we ASK for them. I suppose they, too, stand at the door knocking, waiting to be asked, wanting to help. We need to make sure we ask for angels of light to help us and always get permission from God. I do know they want to help. My daughter and I have had many

Conquering Spiritual Evil

experiences where they have helped us because we asked, just like the Brethren are telling us.

Unlike angels, demons will try to deceive you and destroy you. They have the ability to hide and lay still for long periods of time. The best way to detect this is by what Joseph Smith said we need—revelation. Ask the Spirit if they are still there. If you are aware of what is going on, you will see signs as the Elders did. The person won't look quite right or act quite right. Have you ever done something and afterward said, "That wasn't like me to do that." Maybe you were having some "help" that you really don't want or need.

Some years ago our friend, Dave, Denise, and I did a book review in Arizona. A woman let us stay in her home, but her husband didn't want us there. He was rude to us and especially rude to her. The morning we left, Dave and I started to say uncomplimentary things about him.

"I wouldn't say those things," Denise warned us.

"It's okay," we said, "We're leaving, and it doesn't matter."

Denise explains the rest this way:

"Because they condemned the man or judged him like they did, the Lord allowed some devils to attach to them. Dave had some smaller devils attached to him, number twos and threes. My dad had a number nine enter him and hide. We left Arizona and were driving back to Utah. Dave was behind the wheel. He was complaining about and judging every driver on the road. My dad was in the back seat with me, and he kept laughing about Dave having devils on him and how funny it was to hear him judge others like that. I think my dad needed to look in the mirror.

'Dave has some judgment devils on him, doesn't he?' my dad whispered.

'Yes,' I said.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

My dad kind of laughed as Dave yelled at driver after driver. It's funny when you have devils on you, and you don't seem to know it. They confuse you sometimes, and you don't know it so what you say doesn't make sense sometimes. You will say something and a little later say just the opposite. Dave had no idea he had any devils on him, but then neither did my dad.

A lot of people have asked me why I don't say anything when people have devils on them, or have attachments or other evil things. How come I don't tell people about their illness or disease or what they need to do to heal themselves. I don't because the Lord won't let me. It would be taking their agency away if I did and they wouldn't get the full understanding of what they are trying to learn while here on earth. Besides, we all need to learn to go to our Father for answers and not to the arm of flesh. The last time I checked my arm was still flesh.

A few hours later my dad was driving. Dave was in the back seat with me and we started laughing. The devils on him didn't like the light and joy that came from Dave laughing and they fled. My dad's devil that he had invited by judging and condemning stayed hidden. We arrived some hours later in Cedar City and my dad started to get sick. I was sad about that because it was my birthday the next day.

We had a book review on the night of my birthday, but as the day went by, my dad got really sick. He spent many hours in the bathroom. The 'number nine' had attacked his insides and he was bad off. He finally told us that he could not do the book review and that Dave and I would have to do it alone. Dave was freaked, I think. My dad had always been there to do them. Now we would do it alone. But my dad was really bad off. I didn't tell him but he really was close to dying. The devil had coated his stomach and intestines with black.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Whatever he ate or drank went right through. He had invited a real bad one by judging. I had tried to warn him.

Jesus explained to me that my dad had more understanding than Dave had at that time. So he was under less 'protection' than Dave was. That is why Dave had some not so powerful ones hit him, while my dad had a real bad one get him, a number nine; plus some other less powerful ones.

Before we left for the book review meeting some people came to the house we were staying at and saw how sick he was. They asked if they could work on him, as they did healing work and were familiar with devils attacking people. My dad said yes. Normally my dad would not let people 'work' on him, but I think at that point he wanted anything he could get.

They went into another room and the man called his wife in after a few minutes to help him out. She has the gift of being able to hear the other side of the veil. They said they actually talked to the devils in my dad. Two of them left when they cast them out. The third refused to leave, the number nine. It talked to the woman and told her he was on assignment from Lucifer to kill my dad and he would not leave until he had done it.

They kept casting out and it would not leave. It finally hid from them. At that time I did not realize that devils could hide from you in someone, but they can. The people then told my dad it was gone and they left. My dad said he felt better.

About thirty minutes after the people had left my dad started to get sick again. And it was worse than before they worked on him. I told Dave that my dad might not make it, he was so bad off. But we left it in the Lord's hands and took off to do the book review."

Conquering Spiritual Evil

When the problem came back it was much worse than before. I would drink water and feel it go completely through me in a matter of minutes. There was no absorption at all. Instead of going every fifteen minutes to the bathroom, it was every five minutes or less.

I called a gifted friend with spiritual sight and related my problem. She then said that I had a very powerful demon in me on direct assignment from the devil, and it would not leave until it had killed me, exactly what the others had said.

She suggested that I sing Hymns, cast out and above all else repent of what I had done. I put on a Kenneth Cope CD and sang my lungs out. I prayed and prayed asking for forgiveness. I cast out and cast out. It took probably over three hours of doing this and then it seemed to be gone. I wasn't sure, so I drank water, and it stayed in me. There were some residual problems for a few days as the evil coating/substance flushed through my system. It was a literal battle that had been waged. I was exhausted.

This was a great example of the power of the demons that plague us and what they can and will do. It is also a fine example of why we should never condemn with unrighteous judgment. (Though I feel that only the Savior has righteous judgment.)

Because of my condemnation of the husband, I had **invited** the demons into me. In 1852 the Millennial Star printed the following:

“Jesus and his disciples in different ages, have commanded the unclean and wicked spirits to depart out of those of whom they had taken possession, and they have departed; but there are those spirits which are not easily dispossessed, and go out only by prayer and fasting. And again, there are those spirits that will hardly go out at any price, except it is by the will of those who harbor them. And what class are they? They are invited spirits. Invited spirits? Yes; many spirits watch their

Conquering Spiritual Evil

opportunity to thrust themselves into a person when and where they are not wanted, and such are much more easily cast out than those who are invited guests.

For instance, a person for some real or supposed injury or neglect from a friend, wishes to retaliate, to be revenged, and of course opens the way, and invites the spirit of jealousy to take possession; and the moment jealousy enters the breast, there is a perfect hell of happiness. No scheme that hell itself can devise to torment, perplex, harass, disturb, vex, or mar the peace of friend, wife, or husband, is left untouched, or unmoved; and by that time the breast of the harbinger is opened to all the evil spirits of Pandemonium—all have free access, and oh, what a world of glory dwells there!

And how shall that jealous spirit be removed? By the laying on of hands? The Lord won't deliver us from such an ordinance, in such a case. Why? That spirit was invited to take up its abode there, and while that spirit is made welcome by that person, what right have we to dispossess it? It would be abridging the agency of the individual who invited the spirit, for anyone to cause that spirit to depart, without the person's leave; and we choose that all should exercise their own agency and responsibility, and then they are subjects of accountability.

Other spirits, not particularly invited or desired, gain an easy access to those who are careless, heedless, and but too indifferent to the statutes, ordinances, and duties of God's kingdom; who neglect their prayers, their assembling together, and doing as they would be done unto; and from those spirits arise contention, strife, evil thinking, evil speaking, evil surmising, detraction, revenge, law-suits, and a host of such perplexing annoyances, sufficient to disturb a nation: but the man who is

Conquering Spiritual Evil

obedient to his God in all things—who knows no will of his own, only to do the will of his Father in the heavens, is free from these spirits; the devil has no power over him, for he resists him, and evil spirits are compelled to flee at his rebuke.” (p. 279)

This little article from nearly one hundred fifty years ago explains it well. When we **invite** evil entities in, they are hard to get rid of. But when we are obedient to God and become as Jesus Christ, they have no power over us and **will flee at our rebuke**. In the meantime, as we learn how to be totally like Christ, we are allowed to be tormented by stronger and stronger demons. This is as it should be. When we are in First Grade, the tests are quite easy. When we attend College, the tests are much harder. It is the same with learning how to handle spiritual evil; we progress from weak entities to strong ones as we mature spiritually. Otherwise, we don't learn what we need to know. I have met more than a few people that are fearful of this. They don't want to progress in spirituality. But we are not to remain in ignorance; we have been commanded to learn of Christ and His ways. Just know that when we don't choose to do the will of God, we put ourselves in jeopardy, in harm's way.

“And now, how much more cursed is he that knoweth the will of God and doeth it not, than he that only believeth, or only hath cause to believe, and falleth into transgression.” (Alma 32:19)

Brigham Young made an interesting statement:

“I want you to understand these things; and if you should say or think that I know nothing about them, be pleased to find out and inform me. You can see the acts of these evil spirits in every place, the whole country is full of them, the whole earth is alive with them, and they are continually trying to

Conquering Spiritual Evil

get into the tabernacles of the human family, and are always on hand to prompt us to depart from the strict line of our duty.” (JD, 3:369)

It is our duty to protect our family and ourselves from Satan and his legions. We do this by being aware of ourselves, our family, and our surroundings. When something doesn't feel right, it isn't. Listening to the Spirit is one of the most important things we can learn to do, right now. Our Father has counseled us to pray for discernment, as have the prophets. “Wherefore, beware lest ye are deceived; and that ye may not be deceived seek ye earnestly the best gifts, always remembering for what they are given.” (D&C 46:8) Satan certainly isn't being passive in his desire and actions to destroy what is most sacred and eternal. Therefore, we must take this counsel seriously. The war will rage on all around us whether we are conscious of it or not, then we quite possibly will become the victims instead of the victors. A proactive approach is very critical to our success against the adversary.

SENDING DEMONS AND DEVILS TO THE LIGHT

As discussed previously, I have learned from personal experience and from our experiences with Denise and other gifted people that there are three classes of dark entities. First: Earthbound spirits are people who have died but have not move on from this plane of existence to the spirit world. Second: Devils came with Lucifer and are our brothers from the pre-mortal life that rejected, cursed, and fought against the Savior and our Father there. Third: Demons are beings created by Satan in his realm, and they come to this plane of existence through portals.

Up to this point we have talked about “casting out” evil spirits, attachments, and the like. A few times those entities that were being cast out were told to go back to hell or to where they came from. However, there are some who believe that it is best to send them to the light. When a man tried to cast some demons from me when I was extremely ill, he talked kindly to the demons and told them to go to the light, that Lucifer had lied to them, and that Christ wanted to take them back, etc. When nothing happened, he got upset and told them he was going to send them back to the darkness of hell. Which he did. Then he declared they were gone. I lay there on the table not knowing if I should believe him or not. He then left and went home. I seemed to feel better, but then thirty minutes later, I became much sicker than I was before. Luckily I got the help I needed and recovered. After this incident was over, I remembered two other people who had experienced the same thing after “having the demons sent to the light.” Within thirty minutes one couple wanted to kill themselves

Conquering Spiritual Evil

and sat in their bedroom for two days waiting for a blessing to cast the demons out. The other was a woman with a young boy of about six years of age that was possessed. After being worked on and the demons sent to the light, he too was “normal” for thirty minutes and then he went crazy, finally ending up in the State mental hospital. Just recently a young woman attended a workshop to learn healing techniques where she was taught to send dark entities to the light. She thought it was such a good idea she invited the dark entities into her home to teach them the Gospel. She became possessed and tried to kill herself three times over a two day period.

I had to ask, “Why is this not working? Do the devils and demons come back stronger or do they just come back with “friends”? Do they really “go to the light”? What did the Lord Jesus Christ do?”

In the New Testament the Lord would always cast the demons and unclean spirits out, though he did send some demons into a herd of swine. He never spent much time with them, just took care of the problem by casting them out and moved on. And when Nephi, in the Book of Mormon, saw the Lord’s ministry in Jerusalem, he saw Him casting out and healing the sick.

“And he spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Lamb of God going forth among the children of men. And I beheld multitudes of people who were sick, and who were afflicted with all manner of diseases, and with devils and unclean spirits; and the angel spake and showed all these things unto me. And they were healed by the power of the Lamb of God; and the devils and the unclean spirits were cast out.” (1 Nephi 11:31)

This scripture doesn’t say where Jesus sent them to. This is what Ron Poulton’s paper said about this:

Conquering Spiritual Evil

“When the Lord first bestowed power upon his apostles it was a twofold power: ‘AND when he had called unto him his twelve disciples, he gave them power against unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal all manner of sickness and all manner of disease’ (Matthew 10:1). And this was the Lord’s charge to them: ‘Heal the sick, cleanse the lepers, raise the dead, cast out devils: freely ye have received, freely give’ (Matthew 10:8). They were obedient to the charge given: ‘And they cast out many devils, and anointed with oil many that were sick, and healed them’ (Mark 6:13).

Book of Mormon prophets noted that the power over devils and the power to heal were had among them and **would continue always among believers in Christ:**

‘And as many as had devils cast out from them, and were healed of their sickness and their infirmities, did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the Spirit of God, and had been healed; and they did show forth signs also and did do some miracles among the people’ (3 Nephi 7:22)

‘And these signs shall follow them that believe—in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover . . .’ (Mormon 9:24)”

These promises were reaffirmed to the latter-day saints:

“And who shall ask it in my name in faith, they shall cast out devils; they shall heal the sick; they shall cause the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear, and the dumb to speak, and the lame to walk.” (D&C 35:9)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

In no instance in the scriptures does the Lord send devils and demons to the light or ever teach it. Furthermore, devils and demons won't go to the light; it is painful to them. It is also my belief that the devils and demons can't go to the light. Devils made their choice in the presence of the greatest light in the universe, an irrevocable choice. Because they made that choice in the presence of the greatest Light, it is interesting to me that we believe we can change their minds. We really have no light compared to God, and our arguments would be miniscule compared to the greatest Light there is. Do we really believe that the devils are going to say, "Oh, yes. We were deceived by Lucifer. I think I'll change now. You have convinced me after talking to me for five minutes. I know I have rejected the Greatest Beings in the universe, rejected their Light, and fought against them for eons, but because of your argument, I'm going to change instantly." It is not my intent to ridicule the beliefs of others. I just am trying to put common sense into this argument in my own mind. Demons, created by Satan, can't go to the light either.

This question had been asked of me so many times, I finally got on my knees and asked my Father. The answer was that there is a difference between earthbound spirits, devils, and demons. Earthbound spirits surely **can** go towards His light through repentance, but devils have made their choice and don't have that option. Demons and Imps that are creations of Satan also have no choice.

I even went to several people that are quite gifted and asked if they had ever seen devils or demons go to the light. All of them said that they had never seen such a thing, but they had seen **dark earthbound spirits** go to the "plain of repentance" which is a gray or neutral area where they can repent and heal. Their opinion was that demons and devils don't have that option; they already made their choice.

I related this question to a friend and he inquired of the Spirit and was given the following:

Conquering Spiritual Evil

“The idea that fallen, rebellious spirits which rejected the plan of salvation before this estate will change their position, repent and elect to pursue salvation is a foolish thought. There are two separate questions within the matter:

First: Is it possible for them to do so?

Second: Is there a reason for them to do so?

In scripture we are informed there are sins which are unforgivable. Sinning against the Holy Ghost is one of them. Joseph Smith explained that this involves willful rejection of truth and deliberate decision to pursue an evil course. To stand in the light at noonday and choose instead the darkness. It is the choice of evil, and likened to crucifying Christ anew, by consenting to His death, knowing that it involves the shedding of innocent blood.

In every particular this is a description of those who, in the presence of God the Father and Jesus Christ, determined to reject the plan of salvation, reject the will of the Father, reject the offer of growth, and instead come out in rebellion against God.

It is a description of those who inspired the temptation of Adam, the murder of Abel, the inordinate wickedness which resulted in the Great Flood, the evil of Sodom, the rebellion of ancient Israel, the sins of Molech, the false and perverse religions of the ancient world and ultimately the killing of Christ.

Inspiring such deeds, encouraging such deeds and participating in them—if only vicariously, because of being disembodied—all qualify them as being guilty of unpardonable sin. It is therefore, not possible to obtain pardon for such evil spirits.

Even so, the first question remains unanswered because it is really an inquiry into the question of free will. That is, do they yet retain the freedom of will to decide they want to repent?

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Whether their conduct has utterly disqualified them from being able, yet is it possible for them to desire, to want, to seek for repentance. It is a curious question to pose because it presumes that all their past determination, their past rejections, their deliberate rejection of God while in His presence is not a sufficient basis from which to conclude they have already decided for all eternity to stand against His will and in utter contempt of His grace.

Given the nature of their past conduct, the question of changing now seems, at best, a mere theoretical question with no real basis from which to ever presume the choice would be made. If it is absolutely contrary to deliberate and eternal decisions already made, and if the change would in any event not be able to lead to a pardon of an unpardonable sequence of events already in their past, and if they continue to be involved with tempting man to do what is evil continually, then the nature, disposition and will of a spirit involved continually in active rebellion against God cannot, in any meaningful way, be said to have then the possibility of repentance. Not merely because past conduct disqualifies pardon, but because the nature of the person is such that an irrevocable determination has already been made.

Freedom to choose was provided in the first instance. But it has been exercised. The choice has been made. The choice was, and is, everlasting. Therefore such a fixed determination is, at this point, not possible to change. The choice has been made. Though man may wish the choice was other than it was, yet it was freely made and then accomplished with eons of continuous rebellion thereafter. The fixed nature of the behavior does not allow for the possibility of change. It is like asking a tree to become a bird. The tree would not even understand the question. Its nature, makeup

Conquering Spiritual Evil

and composition preclude it from making the choice.

The second question is also related to the first. For if there is no possibility of pardon from unpardonable sins, then there can be no reason for them to do so. The purpose of repentance is to change, to renew, to obtain remission and start anew. For those who can never merit pardon, there is no reason to attempt the change. It is, in a word, a futile act. Why would there ever be an attempt when the outcome is certain and futile?

Since the fallen, rebellious spirits have rejected God and His goodness, the only purpose of the attempt would be to admit their error. He whom they rejected, whose grace and mercy they despised, whose offer of life they deplore, are not likely to admit to their enemy that He was always right and they always wrong. It would be, for them, the admission of their own evil. But if they were capable of ever recognizing what they are to be evil, they would not have embarked on the fixed purpose to rebel and reject God in the first instance. There is, therefore, no purpose to an attempt.” (You might want to read that one twice.)

We must do our own searching and asking God for truth. That is true with this question as well. The “evidence” is clear, however, those demons, which are creations of Satan, cannot “go to the light.” Devils who chose Lucifer and Satan over our Father and the Lord, knowingly fought against them, and sought to destroy their creation and children, are sons of perdition and cannot “go to the light.” As my friend said in the above quote, “[They] can never merit pardon.” Dark earthbound spirits are able to go to the “plane of repentance” and from there receive gradual enlightenment. Earthbound spirits that are stuck, benign, or confused can immediately “go to the light.” If they will just look around them,

Conquering Spiritual Evil

they will see the light or light beings that are there to help them in their transition.

LITTLE CHILDREN AND POSSESSION

In the Book of Mormon, the prophet Mormon quotes the Lord to his son, Nephi: “. . . little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them” (Moroni 8:8). Scriptures like this show us that little children cannot sin, and they are alive in Christ through His atonement. Satan has no power to tempt them until they begin to become accountable.

“But behold, I say unto you, that little children are redeemed from the foundation of the world through mine Only Begotten; wherefore, they cannot sin, for power is not given unto Satan to tempt little children, until they begin to become accountable before me.” (D&C 29:46-47)

Even though children cannot sin, they however can still be possessed or afflicted by demons. Most parents interpret the above scripture to mean that demons and other evil spirits cannot torment them. That would be a belief that I had in the past. So when children report supernatural activities, in one form or another, we as rational adults don't believe them. We declare they have “active imaginations” or some such thing. We will even punish them for asking for help to get rid of what they are encountering. Why do we behave this way?

The greatest protection children can have from negative spirits are loving parents who have the stewardship over their children and are held accountable until children reach the age of accountability. Lifestyle and family associations can really affect any experiences your children might have with dark spirits. The

Conquering Spiritual Evil

environment in the home and how we parent are also important factors. For example, do we expose our children to the Savior and His teachings, or do we expose them to hours and hours of television. Even such seemingly innocuous shows as The Care Bears have story lines with demons, evil adults and kids, or spells being cast to cause people to behave in negative ways. They teach our kids to speak out spells to cause harm to someone they don't like.

Television has a hypnotic effect on kids. As parents we have all seen this. It takes their brain wave patterns down to a hypnotic level in which they are easily influenced and induced. When adults become filled with fear, it allows dark entities to enter. The same thing happens with children who are more easily frightened. Their personalities are not yet set, and therefore don't have much defense against hypnotic or psychological pressures from television, movies, or video games.

On the other hand, when we give our children a Christ centered home with uplifting music, literature, videos, etc., it will give them greater protection against being overcome by dark entities. Parental example is vital. What are our activities like outside of our home? Are our associations of a dark nature? Do we frequent the local bar, overuse drugs, and peruse pornography, all the while believing that these things have zero affect on our children? If we have disreputable associations outside the home, dark entities can come home with us, thereby exposing them to our children. This is a common problem and affects us more than we might realize. What are our activities like inside our home? Do we spend countless hours with violent and sadistic video games, television, or internet pornography? All of which can allow dark entities an entry way into our home.

If your children have sleep disturbances, night terrors, or sleep deprivation, it might be an indication that you need to clear out your home from dark entities, **a lifestyle change might be needed**, and you might even consider giving your child a blessing

Conquering Spiritual Evil

to cast off any undesirable entities that may have come calling. When our children are old enough, teach them to cast out and shield themselves as often as needed. One of the places with the most darkness is a public school. If your child attends a public school, he/she is in the middle of a cesspool of filth and darkness. I have met some teachers that understand this and have made their classroom a haven of peace through casting out and inviting the Spirit in.

A main reason why schools are so full of dark entities is because our youth are prone to giving up their agency to fit in. Peer pressure can be quite intimidating when you are young with little life experience. (Even we adults give up agency in order to fit in or “keep up with the Joneses.”) Once someone has given up their agency, the dark entities have permission to enter that individual. Dark earthbound spirits, devils, and demons are quite sly and experienced at getting us to give up our agency.

There are times when the problem of possession is generational. Actually, all devices of an evil nature can follow through the generations; spiritual gifts from God are also often generational.

After our first book came out, a woman called to pay me a visit. In our conversation she told me that her son and daughter-in-law had a little boy that was four years of age who was so hard to handle, they had put him in a “care center” near Salt Lake City, Utah. I had a hard time wrapping my mind around the concept of a little four year old being in a group home. The woman assured me he was doing okay and that he had actually been there since he was two.

“My question,” she said, “is this. I was sitting on the lawn outside the home with my little grandson. We were just talking when all the sudden a spider appeared on his cheek. It was very large. Then it just disappeared. It didn’t crawl onto his cheek and crawl off. It appeared and then disappeared. How is this possible?”

Conquering Spiritual Evil

In my mind I started praying and asking my Father in Heaven for help because I had no idea what to tell her. The Spirit told me it was generational, and schizophrenia was involved.

“Does your daughter-in-law or her family have any history of schizophrenia?” I asked her.

She seemed surprised by the question and said, “Yes, my daughter-in-law does. She is schizophrenic and so were her mother, her grandmother, and great-grandmother. There is a long history of it in their family. She and my son gave up their child because they couldn’t deal with him and his problems.”

“Well, your daughter-in-law is possessed with devils or demons, and the answer I am getting is that she has passed this on to her son when he was born just as it was passed on to her from her mother.”

This took a great amount of courage for me to get out of my mouth. Even though I felt those feelings and impressions come into my heart and mind, voicing them was hard because I felt I would be rejected or the message would be rejected.

We talked about casting off and getting her daughter-in-law help with her demon problem. As I expected, my answer was not well received and she got up to leave telling me that “little children could not be possessed.” I had no answer other than what the Spirit had told me to tell her. And if what she said was true, then how would she explain the experience of Jesus Christ? Just after the Lord was transfigured he had an encounter with one of the multitude:

“And one of the multitude answered and said, Master, I have brought unto thee my son, which hath a dumb spirit;

And wheresoever he taketh him, he teareth him: and he foameth, and gnasheth with his teeth, and pineth, away: and I spake to the disciples that they should cast him out; and they could not.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

He answereth him, and saith, O faithless generation, how long shall I be with you? how long shall I suffer you? bring him unto me.

And they brought him unto him: and when he saw him, straightway the spirit tare him; and he fell on the ground, and wallowed foaming.

And he asked his father, How long is it ago since this came unto him? And he said, **Of a child** .

..

When Jesus saw the people come running together, he rebuked the foul spirit, saying unto him, Thou dumb and deaf spirit, I charge thee, come out of him, and enter no more into him.

And the spirit cried, and rent him sore, and came out of him: and he was as one dead; insomuch that many said, He is dead.

But Jesus took him by the hand, and lifted him up; and he arose.” (Mark 9:17-27, emphasis added)

Ron Poulton’s discusses this incident in his paper:

“It was before this incident, earlier in the ministry of the Lord, that he had given power to his apostles to heal the sick and to cast out devils. As noted above, they experienced much success and had returned from their early missions firm in their testimony of the power conferred upon them. This was the first instance of their failure to command an unclean spirit.

This incident has been cited by Dummelow (1936) as one in which the child, being described as a ‘lunatic’ in another gospel, was actually suffering from a form of epilepsy, a physical ailment, of which he was healed by the Lord, and not a case of demonic possession. However, such explanation ignores the plain text of the scriptures and thereby dismisses from consideration several profound questions. First, the Lord asked the father: ‘How

Conquering Spiritual Evil

long is it ago since this came to him?’ What was the point of this question? Would it really have made a difference whether it had been a month or a year? It is the father’s answer that may hold the key; his answer to the Lord was: ‘of a child.’ The Gospel of Mark does not tell us the age of the boy when presented to the Lord nor the age of the boy when the affliction first began. However, the Greek adverb, ‘paidiothen’ here translated as ‘of a child’ is related to the noun ‘paidion’ which is a child, one as young as a new born infant.” (Poulton, pp. 11-12)

The spirit had told me that the four-year-old was possessed because it had been passed on from the mother. This was a completely new idea for me; yet the scripture seemed to indicate it is possible for a young child to be possessed.

At another time we received a call from a woman whose husband had left her and their children. She had a six year-old that was quite unruly, so unruly that when he was only three, her Bishop had told her that her little boy was possessed. She believed the Bishop because the boy was demonic and would try to harm her and his baby sister. The previous year she had called a man that helped with possession problems. He worked with her son for a long while. When he was done, she said her son appeared to be normal, calm, and sweet.

It lasted for thirty minutes and then he turned demonic again. When he became totally uncontrollable, she put her in the State Mental Hospital.

The boy had been in a home environment in which there was much unhappiness. His parents had a lot of contention between them that had gone on for many years and culminated in a divorce. Quite possibly, the parents’ contention allowed dark entities to enter their home. If we are full of sin and misunderstanding, can we pass the curses to our children? He has

Conquering Spiritual Evil

said He will pass the curses down to the third and fourth generation.

“And again: Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them; for I am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me.” (Mosiah 13:13)

Does that mean they could be passed to our children in the womb? Robert Bruce (2002) discusses an amazing case history in his book:

“A mother was concerned about her six-year-old son’s behavioral problems. She had been practicing meditation and core-image work for some time, and so decided to apply this to her son. While her son was taking a nap on the couch, she sat beside him and relaxed. She focused upon him, visualizing his image with all the thoughts and emotions she felt about him. As the image of her son appeared in her mind, she attempted to turn this image over to see what was behind his behavioral problems. The image would not budge, so she tried another method of tearing strips away from the surface of the image.

After several minutes of deep concentration, the image of her son vanished and the image of a beer bottle appeared instead. The mother was shocked as this was a particular brand of beer that she drank regularly, and she realized at that moment that her drinking problem was related to her son’s problems. She attacked the image with a cleansing technique... She then set about changing her life. She gave up drinking and sought professional help for her alcoholism. In time, her son’s behavior problems resolved, and her family life was greatly improved.” (p. 277)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

There may be times when we search and search for the problem and can't seem to find it. The answer just might be to look in the mirror as this woman did and see who really is the problem and then get on our knees and repent, change, and come unto Christ.

In church one Sunday we observed a woman whose two or three-year-old son was playing contentedly on the bench when suddenly he got this horrible look on his face and started to misbehave in a severe manner. Denise turned to me and casually said, "He has devils on him." It certainly looked like he did.

Robert Bruce discusses Negs (his term for dark entities of all types) in relation to children:

"...Negs will often try to gain a child's confidence by pretending they care for them. Sometimes Negs will pretend to be invisible playmates often pretending to be a child of a similar age to the child they are working on. Negs use rewards and punishments to condition children to respond to their programming.

This is the same basic conditioning device Negs use on adults. Children feel bad when they disobey and feel good when they obey. Children quickly learn to keep such things to themselves as adults seldom believe children's tales and often punish them for making up disturbing stories. But the Negs will continually get children into trouble by influencing them to misbehave. It's in the nature of Negs to lie and deceive.

While some invisible playmates seem harmless, seeming is not a good indicator of intent. Invisible playmates should be judged on the effect they have on children. But convincing children to turn away from invisible playmates can be difficult, often driving the problem underground. Even so, parents are in a better position to influence their

Conquering Spiritual Evil

own children than are Negs, and good parenting can do much to circumvent problems that might arise from this type of association.

Some Negs, once successfully attracted to a child, will back off until the child grows into an adult. However, other Negs will move in and begin integrating with a child's personality immediately. When this happens, Negs begin forming the dark side of a child's personality. Marked behavioral changes will usually occur at this time. For example, a once kind, generous, sociable child may suddenly become cruel, selfish and critical." (Ibid, p. 126)

A Psychologist, Dr. Edith Fiore (1988) did hypnotic regression with people that were possessed and wrote a book about it called "The Unquiet Dead." She worked with a woman who had been born premature and was able to talk to the earth-bound male spirit that had been in her for about twenty years.

"A particularly fascinating case involved a compassionate surgeon who, dying suddenly in a car accident, returned to his own hospital and was drawn to the body of an infant still in the womb and about to be born prematurely. He commented:

'This little soul was to be born so early—seven and one half months and only two and one half pounds—that she needed more. She was too weak to survive by herself. I could give her more; I could give her the strength she needed until she could go on by herself. She was so tiny, so tiny! She needed me—and I needed her. I still needed to experience things; with her I could experience what I hadn't and wanted to.'

Conquering Spiritual Evil

After he [separated from her]—more than twenty years later—the patient said, ‘He was kind, but it seems that he had taken over so much that it didn’t give me a chance to grow.’” (p. 31)

Fiore related another story of a young girl that became possessed by an earth-bound at the age of seven.

“In a puzzling case, a female entity possessed my patient as a very young girl when her family built their house on the land that had been the site of the spirit’s former home over eighty years earlier. This vengeful entity had first tried to vent her anger on the girl’s father and mother. But because the parents’ auras were too strong, my patient, then a seven-year-old child, became her victim. From the time of the possession on, the girl’s personality drastically changed; she became extremely shy and especially afraid of public speaking.

...we found that the possessing entity had been publicly hanged as a murderess before a jeering crowd... This miserable spirit had carried the emotions of that traumatic experience into the child she possessed. When she finally left, my patient was immediately relieved of her crippling, long-standing fear and gave a lecture in her church without any anxiety.” (p. 32)

In both of these experiences the people were dealing with earthbound spirits and not demons or devils, though the possibility exists that the earthbound spirits may have had demons or devils on them.

My daughter Denise said that while she was pregnant, she learned more about the abilities of evil entities. She said that when she gets mad, they enter not only her, but also her unborn baby. So

Conquering Spiritual Evil

giving in to the negative emotion of anger, she is not protecting her unborn infant. Then she said, “It is harder to get rid of them in my baby than to get rid of them in me.” That is a very scary thought, but it makes sense because if she allows anything negative to come into her, it goes to the least protected and most vulnerable area, the unborn child. If that negative entity is allowed to stay, the child will be born with it. Then it could have an inconceivable influence over the life of the child, as the above story illustrated. Therefore, we might consider taking a newborn infant in our arms and blessing it and even casting out if the Spirit tells us to. I know this is not “socially acceptable” in church (to cast out), so it might be done in the privacy of our home, of which we have stewardship over, and are tasked with keeping clean and pure for our family. We can still do a public blessing in church with all the extended family present.

Children with possession problems exhibit a wide variety of psychological, behavioral, and physical problems. Following is a list of these changes/observations: tired, listless, withdrawn, and daydream a lot. They can also be cruel, selfish, demanding, and extremely aggressive. One of the most interesting signs to me is they can display signs of obsessive compulsive disorders. Some kids become hyperactive or have attention deficit disorder.

A friend of the family has a son that had several obsessive compulsive disorders which they had tried to control by medical means, but nothing had helped. One day this family was at the park with another family. The mother of the other family, (who has spiritual sight) observed the children playing and commented, “Do you know your son has an earthbound entity attached to him?”

The boy’s mother said she had no idea of such a thing, but when at home, his father voiced a blessing and cast off the offending entity. The boy’s obsessive compulsive tendencies diminished remarkably.

Of course there can be other causes of these disorders, but possession is never considered in modern day diagnoses. We can always ask in prayer if the problem is related to possession or

Conquering Spiritual Evil

attachments; we might be surprised, but we tend to deny what we were told because it's too strange, or we are concerned about what our neighbors, church friends, and family might think if they knew. Maybe they would think we have done something evil to attract dark entities, or something is really wrong with us. If possession **is** an option, find someone who can help.

Often our children will have “imaginary” friends. Most of us just ignore it, and allow the child to have this make believe “friend”. But perhaps they aren’t “make believe.” A good friend has always had the gift of seeing dark entities even as a child. He and his siblings played with these entities until their father, who also has second sight, found out and taught them not to entertain such beings. For those of us who are “less sighted” might our young children actually be seeing and playing with unseen beings that are of a dark nature? Are our children bothered by them? When they try to communicate problems of this nature to us, do we listen? If we don’t, we might be denying them a “normal” childhood and productive adulthood.

A psychologist, Benjamin Bruce (2002), related the following about children and dark entities:

“The problems that children face are far from predictable. Childhood trauma can have very different effects upon different children, and as they develop into adults there are infinite variables that compound this unpredictability. There are the effects of the individual differences in personality for every child, as well as the biological, psychosocial and environmental factors. . .

Two scenarios: A child exhibiting Neg-related problems is told by his parents that it’s all in his mind and that he should just be normal. Regardless of this “great advice” the Neg phenomena may continue (while he tries to sleep for example) to the detriment of the child’s physical and psychological health. There is also in interaction

Conquering Spiritual Evil

between the environment (the Neg interference) and the child's individuality, the thoughts and actions that are particular to him. The child will soon realize that his experiences are either **real**, if he is intelligent, perceptive, and trusts his senses, **or fictitious** if he is unable to discriminate and has low self-esteem.

The former scenario (a sense of **real** experience) will promote a feeling of isolation within the child, and he will think that his life is special in some way. He may also lose respect for his parents and feel unloved, as they do nothing to protect him from the terrifying phenomena. That latter scenario (a sense of **fictitious** experience) will cause the child to feel derogated, with his reality undermined so that he starts to doubt all his perceptual experiences. This is worsened by the lack of a quality sleep and the mental influence to commit strange or horrifying acts that may result from Neg interference. This creates a schism or rift in the psyche, where the child's private world becomes separated from the public world of "consensus reality." The child now believes he is abnormal and mentally deranged.

This abnormality can be exacerbated with derogatory labels from his family and peers such as "freak" or "weirdo," or with clinical labels such as "schizophrenic" if he is introduced to a professional. The latter scenario will also be compounded with any antipsychotic or sedative medication (or other treatment) received, and the side effects of this. Over time, both scenarios may lead to a similar outcome of delinquency and aberrant or criminal behavior as the child/adult seeks to fit in and attracts like-minded company: people with similar strange and erratic thought and behavior. The child/adult may even be institutionalized, especially if any aberrant and destructive urges are acted upon.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Conversely, when these experiences first began, the parent(s) could have been more sympathetic and investigative of the source of the problem and the possible presence of Negs. Indeed, it is possible that the child is suffering from mental illness or experiencing the negative side effects of real-life problems, such as child abuse, **but all possibilities should be explored.** If parents are observant and open-minded, any serious Neg interference should become noticeable, if it exists. This often come with multiple parasomnias (sleep and sleep-wake rhythm disorders) such as: sleep paralysis, nightmares, night terrors, night sweating, open-eyed REM, sleepwalking, head banging, head rolling, body rocking, bedwetting, sleep talking, and tooth grinding. Although these parasomnias may exist as simple childhood disorders in their own right, links with Neg activity are conceivable. . . But one should be on guard not to become paranoid or to develop a witch-hunt mentality. This line of investigation must be conducted with extreme caution, in plain view of all the facts. Otherwise, a self-fulfilling prophecy could develop and come to fruition, which would counter the intention of genuinely helping suffering children.

If the child is aware that he is being taken seriously with a mind toward problem resolution, there will be less chance of the potential mental schism in the aforementioned scenario resulting, and the child will find his perceptions more trustworthy. His self-esteem and self-respect will improve, as will his love and respect for his parents. He will feel more comfortable with, and connected, to reality, even if reality is extended to include abnormal events. . .

As well as validation of experience, the person must also be made accountable for their thoughts and actions, such as with the application of mental discipline, and help given accordingly.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

However, this does not mean that one should blame the victim, especially a child, for their Neg-related problems. But if this accountability does not occur, the person will not develop the necessary responsibility for his or her actions, and may actually “luxuriate” or wallow in their problems and not face reality. This can lead to other psychological disturbances from basic immaturity to complex personality disorders later in life.” (pp. 269-72, emphasis added)

As a young girl, Denise, saw dark spirits, and they scared her. We discussed them with her and how to deal with them; we gave her tools and understanding. She learned not to fear them. Children are often braver and more open than adults to the reality of these entities. As parents we need to listen to and observe our children, and then pray for spiritual direction.

We know that we can cast off evil entities and provide shields for ourselves, our family, our home, and property, but what can we do as preventative measures? First, we need to evaluate our own behavior. Do we come home angry, frustrated, and full of judgment? Is there some repenting that needs to be done to keep our home as clear and clean as possible? Are we addicted to pornography, drugs, alcohol, or television? Are our books, magazines, music, and television viewing uplifting? The point is that we have a stewardship to keep our home atmosphere as clean as possible and move toward being more Christ-like and filling our home, our children, and ourselves with the Spirit by reading the scriptures with our family every day, saying our family and individual prayers night and morning, holding family home evenings, and observing the Sabbath. In other words, turn off the television and computer and turn on God. “**Be still** and know that I am God.” (Psalms 46:10)

Other things we can do are to encourage our children to keep their rooms physically and spiritually clean. They can put up

Conquering Spiritual Evil

pictures of Temples and the Savior in their rooms. I did a book review once where a young woman said she had to share a room with a teenage sibling, and every time her sibling turned on his music, she could feel the darkness enter the room. She was beside herself wanting to stay away from such things and not getting the help from her sibling or parents in the matter. **Learn to meditate and teach your children to find that quiet place in their hearts and how to listen to the Spirit.** Discernment is always advised and warranted. **Checking with the Spirit and using discernment is mandatory.**

Concerning meditation, David O. McKay said: “In our worship there are two elements: One is spiritual communion arising from our own meditation; the other, instruction from others....Of the two, the more profitable...is meditation.... Meditation is one of the most secret, most sacred doors through which we pass into the presence of the Lord.”

Let all of us “pass into the presence of the Lord” and keep our children safe from these hazards. Let us be wise stewards over that which the Lord had entrusted to us—His most precious asset—His children. It is our responsibility as parents to keep a safe environment for our children. We start with ourselves, by keeping ourselves unspotted from the world to bring His light-filled environment into our homes.

EARTHBOUND SPIRITS

“Earthbound spirit” is a term used for those spirits whose physical bodies have died, but their spirits stay on this earth plane. There are many things that can cause a person’s spirit to remain here whether they know it or not. Many stay because they have addictions or just they don’t want to leave. Many church members don’t believe it is possible for spirits to get “stuck” here on this earth. They believe that everything comes back to our memory so that we move on to bigger things. Other people believe and have even published books that state that every earthbound spirit is dark and evil in nature. Both statements are not true.

Brigham Young was talking about earthbound spirits when he said that if we were able to see the spirits of deceased Lamanites, we’d see many thousands of them still in Utah, from Salt Lake to St. George. For the most part these are the “ghosts” that haunt buildings, cemeteries, and other places. Some are benign, some are pranksters, some are curious, and some are just plain evil, just as they were when they were alive.

My daughter, Denise, wrote about a young earthbound boy in her book “In His “Arms” who had drowned during Pioneer times in the creek behind our home in Mt. Pleasant. Whenever she crossed the bridge, she could hear him call her name. He was literally stuck in the water. Also our friend’s son was about three at the time and who could see spirits, often went to the water to play with this spirit boy. I heard him tell his mother, “Joey can’t leave the water.”

There is one aspect of dealing with earthbound spirits that I had never considered before: They can be offended by us mortals. A book called *The Boy Who Saw True* is about a boy who lived in the 1800’s and was without a veil. In the book the young boy

Conquering Spiritual Evil

talked about an earthbound spirit of a man from Ireland that he chatted with. So I thought it would be amusing to talk in an Irish accent and invite him to come. I had learned from past experience that if you wish someone that has passed on to come, you just ask them.

I had asked him to come, so I assumed he was there. I was trying to feel him there, talking to him in this very poor Irish accent. Suddenly Denise pops in the room and says, “Dad, you’re making him mad. You don’t have a good Irish accent.”

I so offended the Irish man that he hung around just to get even with me. While we were sitting at dinner one night, a pan suddenly flew off the kitchen counter. Denise turned to me and said, “He’s still mad at you.”

Another time a stack of soda pop toppled over. Finally I figured it was time to make peace. The last thing we needed in our home was a poltergeist. I asked him to come, and I sincerely apologized for the accent, telling him that I really wasn’t trying to make fun of him. After that he left us alone.

It is even possible to offend people that have transitioned through the veil, even though they aren’t earthbound. I developed the ability where I could feel the presence of my father who had passed on, and I really enjoyed him being with me when I was driving. He had been a truck driver for over thirty years, and his presence was comforting and enjoyable while I was on the road.

One day I could tell that he was gone and someone else has showed up. I had not felt that energy before. Denise happened to walk by and I asked her if I had someone new. She indicated that I did have someone new with me. I asked if it was my Grandma Mendenhall. “Yes,” she said.

Then I made a really dumb comment. “I wish I still had my dad with me.”

Grandma Mendenhall left. Denise told me that I had really offended her. It took a year before she came back.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

I really feel there are many earthbound spirits that are neutral. They are just lost souls that haven't transitioned yet. A good friend told me she met a woman who has helped earthbound spirits move on to the spirit world, somewhat like the TV show "The Ghost Whisperer."

As we become more familiar with spiritual things, the Lord can use us to help others like this woman that helps earth bound spirits transition. It could be relatives, close family members, or even strangers that we could help move on. As always, it must be done with the Spirit in the bounds the Lord has set. It is true that knowledge is vital in this area, but the Spirit is even more vital.

It is an interesting fact to me that many earthbound spirits don't know they have passed on. In our book "Possibilities...Lessons from the Spirit" we discuss a male earthbound spirit that lived in our home when Denise came home from the hospital. He realized she could see him and followed her around. It was him that Denise was yelling at the night I discovered she could see spirits.

I talked to him that night, in the spirit, and told him he was dead, that he had died in an automobile accident. Denise reported the next morning that he didn't believe me. "He said that you are the dead one and need to get out of his home."

Previously I mentioned the boy from the 1800's that could see through the veil. One day an earthbound spirit came that had been a friend of his tutor. The spirit didn't believe he was dead, and so the tutor talked him and tried to convince him that he really was dead.

The earthbound spirit said, "I remember being quite sick. I went to the hospital and finally woke up feeling really good."

He seemed confused and couldn't understand why people would ignore him and couldn't hear him talk. He eventually got upset and left, still believing that he was mortal.

As Brigham has said, there are many earthbound spirits that roam the earth. Many are malevolent, others are benign.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

“There are millions and millions of spirits in these valleys, both good and evil. We are surrounded with more evil spirits than good ones, because more wicked than good men have died here. . . The spirits of the just and unjust are here. (JD, Vol. 4 pp. 133-134, Brigham Young, December 4, 1856)

“There are myriads of disembodied evil spirits—those who have long ago laid down their bodies here and in the regions round about, among and around us; and they are trying to make us and our children sick, and are trying to destroy us and to tempt us to evil. They will try every possible means they are masters of to draw us aside from the path of righteousness.” (JD, Brigham Young, 6:73-74)

George Q. Cannon wrote:

“I have no doubt that many of my brethren and sisters have sensibly felt in various places and at various times evil influences around them. Brother Joseph Smith gave an explanation of this. There are places in the Mississippi Valley where the influence or the presence of invisible spirits are very perceptibly felt. He said that numbers had been slain there in war, and that there were evil influences of spirits which affect the spirits of those who have tabernacles on the earth. I, myself, have felt those influences in other places besides the continent of America; I have felt them in the old battle-grounds on the Sandwich Islands. **I have come to the conclusion that if our eyes were open to see the spirit world around us, we should feel differently on this subject than we do; we would not be so unguarded and careless, and so indifferent whether we had the spirit and power of God**

Conquering Spiritual Evil

with us or not; but we would be continually watchful and prayerful to our Heavenly Father for His Holy Spirit and His Holy angels to be around us to strengthen us to overcome every evil influence.” (JD, Vol. 11:30, emphasis added)

Some of the places most frequented by earthbound spirits are hospitals, graveyards, and prisons. Previously I told of a hospital security guard who has actually seen these spirits on the security cameras. (Demons and devils also haunt these places.)

We are taught that we are the same individual when we cross over to the spirit world as we are here. “...for that same spirit which doeth possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of this life, that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world.” (Alma 34:34)

So it is that if someone dies and does not cross over, but stays here, he will still have all of his addictions, attachments, etc. Then when he finds a mortal “host” to prey upon, he will give those problems to that host whenever the opportunity arises.

In a hospital, any invasive procedure could open up the patient’s aura and allow unwanted entities to enter or attach. Priesthood blessings and prayer are vital when a person is scheduled for a shot or for surgery.

Earthbound spirits who had addictions in the body or mind still have the addiction in the spirit. They will stay near mortals who have the same addictions they do in order to satisfy their addictions through these mortals. For example, an earthbound with an alcohol addiction will frequent the bars. When a mortal gets drunk, a hole is created in their aura which then allows the earthbound (also demons and devils) to attach themselves to that person. The same is true with people using drugs or displaying any negative emotion.

Addictions to pornography can also be initiated and fed by earthbound spirits. A few years ago a couple came to visit. The husband explained that he has been addicted to pornography since his teens. There have been periods he was able to be free of it, and

Conquering Spiritual Evil

then it slams him again. Once during a conference, he secretly downloaded inappropriate material on his laptop while pretending to take notes. Others noted this and reported it to his employer. He was interviewed, he confessed, and his job was immediately terminated.

While he was talking, I was praying to the Father to help me know what the root of his addiction was. The impression came that he had an earthbound spirit attached to him which then had demons attached to it. I told him this, “You have an earthbound spirit attached to your chest, and it has at least one demon attached to it”. I wondered aloud if the fact that he had accessed the pornography was a call for help from his real self and not from these “attachments” that had some control over him. An understanding came to his face. He said he had felt something on his chest for a long time.

I then could sense “it” even more, almost “see” it. It was hissing at me and hating me, wanting to destroy me. My feeling was it didn’t like being discovered and talked about. I informed him that if the Savior casts it off, he might feel a “loss” of “his friend” since they have been together for so long and **that he would need to fill the “hole” with the Savior and His love.** Furthermore, he would need to learn to put up shields continually. When I asked if he and his wife would like a “second witness,” they agreed, so we went to visit with “Kitten.” I asked Kitten if he had anything on him at all. She said that he had an earthbound spirit on his chest and a demon on the earthbound spirit. We had received our second witness. She then said a most interesting thing, “They aren’t fully integrated with him yet.”

He told her that he has frequently fasted and prayed to be rid of the problem. She indicated that might be the reason it hadn’t fully integrated with his spirit body. Being a very visual person I envisioned in my mind the “Borg” from Star Trek and how it integrates with its host until it completely takes over. (Sometimes Hollywood visuals really help me in seeing what might be going on).

Conquering Spiritual Evil

I asked if he had any hexes, devices, or implants on him. She said, “All of the above.”

We went back to my house, and we each prayed. Then I voiced a blessing in the name of Jesus Christ and cast them out along with all the other “spiritual” attachments. After the blessing we discussed how the earthbound spirit probably would try to come back to him. I told him about shields, how they worked, and how to put them up around his body. We discussed how to shield his house, car, and even workplace. After receiving instruction, they expressed their appreciation and left.

I had never in my life contemplated that a mortal might have an earthbound spirit attached to them, which was addicted to something, and that addiction in turn could cause the mortal to have the same problem. Also I never imagined that earthbound spirits might also have demons or any other dark things attached to them.

The man later shared a part of his journal with me:

“...I have had repeat visits from my long-time spirit-friends, those demons who were part of my life for so many years. Because of the time that they haven’t been with me, I am now better able to discern their promptings and implanted thoughts. Before, I thought those implants were my own thoughts. Now, I recognize when I am being tempted. I am much more quick to successfully request the Lord’s aid at those times.”

I often marvel how the Lord helps us along His paths, how He helps us understand how He works, how unseen things work, and how He allows us to help our brothers and sisters on this earth.

Ron Poulton in his paper describes a similar incident of a man who traveled a lot in his work and who eventually conquered pornography by not only reading scriptures and praying, but also by

Conquering Spiritual Evil

always “cleansing” his hotel room of any evil entities whenever he was “on the road.” Poulton concludes with these comments:

“[The man] said that the thoughts and the urges to watch improper programs simply ceased, without any effort on his part, other than his faith in God’s willingness to honor the priesthood and the name of his Son. He said that sometimes a single rebuke was sufficient for an entire business trip. On other occasions he was required to rebuke more often, not to control his thoughts, but to maintain what he came to understand as a clear space. He had experimented on the witness and promise of Paul:

“There hath no temptation taken you but such as is common to man: but God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that ye are able; but will with the temptation also make a way to escape, that ye may be able to bear it” (I Corinthians 10:13).

His battle against pornography had irreversibly changed. It was no longer a battle of one part of him against another part; it was simply a matter of his discerning and rebuking the influence of unwanted evil around him. . . [This man] was not overcoming or conquering anything; he was not learning and applying new insight to change his thoughts or behavior; he simply vanquished a present enemy. . . He could have struggled, and perhaps eventually overcome this problem, many persons have done so. What [he] did was to recognize the true nature of the trouble he faced and the **personal enemy that brought it to him**. He discerned that his enemy was imminent. He won, not by fighting the good fight, but by **exercising his faith and priesthood to refuse the contest**.” (Poulton, pp. 23-24, emphasis added)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

As Brigham Young said evil entities are all around us, wanting to destroy us, make us sick, try and tempt us. These are not dull-witted thugs. They have been practicing their art for millennia and are quite good at what they do. The more light we have the harder they will work to entrap or entice us. It is always dangerous to underestimate the power and appeal of evil. If we don't have an understanding of how they operate or recognize their operations in this creation, it could be catastrophic. Addictions to alcohol, drugs and pornography are no small things to consider. It is imperative for us to realize how evil operates and how we can stop it.

In my own life I have had more than a few experiences with earthbound spirits. Just recently in the last several years I have put on much weight. I knew it was related to my heart problems, but it seemed to be so much more. The past several months I felt there was more to it than just gaining weight because of a bad heart. I was severely addicted to sugar.

Finally I started focusing on the idea that I might have an earthbound spirit attached to me causing these desires. They were intense and constant. It seemed a bit much, even for me.

My daughter, Denise, happened to be over one night, and I asked her if I had an earthbound spirit attached to me.

"Yes, you do," she answered. "He is making you have cravings for food and sugar."

"How long has he been with me," I asked.

"Several years," was her reply.

Later that night I knelt and expressed my gratitude to my Heavenly Father for the experience of having had this earthbound man with me for these past years. I told Him of my strong desire to be free of this man. I focused intently on this desire. Then in the name of Jesus Christ I commanded the earthbound man to leave. I then shielded myself from him. The cravings were gone.

Ten days later I still didn't have those cravings for sugar. In my mind I kept wondering if it really could be this simple. The

Conquering Spiritual Evil

answer has come that it can be this simple if you are focused with true intent, asking Father for His help in the name of the Son, while expressing gratitude for the experience and then casting out the problem. But about two weeks later I was on the road and had an experience where something didn't go my way and I judged the person. I thought nothing of it.

While driving home I started to tell other drivers how stupid they were. I kind of chuckled at my good driving ability that they didn't have. This should have been a huge red flag for me! When we start expressing and thinking things or doing things that we normally don't do, it is a warning that we are being influenced by an evil entity. After arriving home one of my granddaughters brought us a cupcake for St. Patrick's Day. I started to crave the cupcake. I realized then that the earthbound was back, and he had brought friends with him. I started the repentance process all over again in order to cast them off.

Some days I feel like I take one step forward and two steps backward. After some time on my knees and feeling better about everything, I cast them off again. Will they be back? If I don't mend my way, they most assuredly will come back.

Earthbound spirits can cause us problems that we might attribute to our childhood or earthly pressures.

A young man in our ward believed he was gay although he didn't live that way. One day he came over to the house and declared that he was tired of "being gay." When Denise came into the room, he asked her if he had any attachments.

"Yes," she answered, "you have an earthbound woman attached to you."

"How do I get rid of her?" he asked.

"Pray and ask the Lord to remove her."

He dropped to his knees right there in our living room and asked God to remove this earthbound female attachment. Shortly after that he left.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

The next day, he excitedly told us, “I don’t like pink anymore!”

Over the next two years he changed physically and became more masculine. He eventually asked to go on a mission and was denied by the Stake President because he felt was not cured of his gay tendencies. Unfortunately he felt unaccepted by those leaders and even ward members, so he found solace with gay friends again.

What a sad outcome. He needed support and help to truly heal, but unfortunately some leaders are not trained in these things, they don’t understand and are afraid of it and, therefore, choose to ignore it. These kinds of possibilities—possession and even earthbound spirits—are not ever discussed. As Ron Poulton’s paper suggests, there is a persistent blindness of people, even a refusal to acknowledge that these things are real. Brigham Young stated, “We should not only study good, and its effects upon our race, but also evil, and its consequences.” (JD, 2:94)

An earthbound spirit can attach to a person and change his or her sexual orientation. We had an experience in Taylorsville that taught us this.

Denise and I were doing a book review in Taylorsville, Utah. On the front row was a woman with her “daughter” seated next to her. After the review, the woman quietly asked Denise if there was anything attached to her son who was sitting next to her. As she looked spiritually, she said: “Your son has two earthbound women attached to him.”

“How do we get rid of them?” she asked.

“He has to want to get rid of them. If he does want to get rid of them, he needs to just ask Christ to take them away”. We also taught him how to put up shields around himself, as the “friends” would try to come back to their former host.

Ron Poulton shares another story about a man who struggled for years with feelings and urges toward homosexuality. Even after a mission, marriage, and three children, he got to the point of giving it all up because the urges to associate with

Conquering Spiritual Evil

homosexuals over the Internet were too strong. Then on a Sunday evening things began to change.

“On a Sunday evening his wife asked a friend to come to their home to visit with Robert and her. As they sat and visited, Robert explained his situation. He averred his life-long homosexuality and his powerlessness to do anything about his situation. The friend bore his testimony to Robert, but even more important the friend viewed Robert as having a spiritual problem, one brought on by Robert’s poor choices, **which were continuously supported by unclean spirits.** As they sat together, the wife and friend offered many silent prayers. They sought for the Spirit of the Lord to descend upon Robert. There were periods of long discerning silence. The prayers were answered when the Spirit of the Lord did arrive in power. The silence was broken when something let go in Robert and he took hold of his chest, began to cry and plead for help. **A priesthood blessing was given; it commenced with a rebuke of the unclean spirits of homosexuality and immorality.** Robert was promised peace and freedom through that night from the influence of unclean spirits that he might consider his situation, but in the morning he would be required to take steps to set his life in order to maintain heavenly protection.

Following the blessing Robert sat and cried. Repeatedly, he shook his head and said, “What was I thinking, I almost lost everything.” He said it was as if he had been asleep. He rested that night and early in the morning he and his wife visited their families. Robert bore witness of the change that had taken place within him. **It was as if his heterosexual identity had been restored immediately to him.** .

Several years have passed since Robert underwent his trial. He has remained faithful to his

Conquering Spiritual Evil

wife and family. He has been restored to full activity in the Church. He has never experienced any further uncertainty about his sexual orientation. He knows he cannot afford an unclean thought and he has an unshakeable testimony of his Savior and an adversary that nearly ruined his life.”

Dr. Fiore (1988) says in her book:

“Entities of the opposite sex often are the cause of a great deal of confusion about sexual identity. Homosexuality, transsexuality and transvestism are the extreme results of this kind of possession...Sexual hang-ups are part of the repertory many entities bring with them. Their own problems and proclivities manifest themselves when the possessed engage in sex. At one extreme, their hosts may even be prevented from approaching their partners!

One of the causes of homosexuality is possession by spirits of the opposite sex. If the possession began before puberty, heterosexual development often was disrupted and the afflicted grew up believing **they** desired sexual partners of the same sex, when it was the entities who were determining their choices. Every homosexual patient I have done a depossession on has had at least one exceedingly dominating entity of the opposite sex who was determining the sexual preference. Often these patients told of feeling they were “trapped” in bodies of the wrong sex. . .

I have treated a number of transvestites, **all** with possessing spirits of the opposite sex. It was they who bought the clothes and dressed up to suit their fancy, much to the confusion and embarrassment of their victims.” (pp. 36, 43)

Doctor Modi (1997) in the section of her book about earthbound spirits describes it the same way:

Conquering Spiritual Evil

“In some of my patients, possession by an entity of the opposite sex has caused confusion in their sexual identity, especially when the possession occurred before puberty. A female spirit in a man may desire sex with a man, and this desire and attraction may in turn become the desire of the male host toward another male. The host may think he is a homosexual, when in fact he is only acting on the spirit’s desire.

“Transsexualism: A possession by an entity of the opposite sex, who is unhappy being stuck in a wrong body, may push the host to have a sex-change operation.

Gail had a strong urge to chew tobacco, wear men’s clothes, and have a sex-change operation. Under hypnosis, she found the spirit of a man who was very uncomfortable being in a female body and admitted giving Gail the strong urges to have a sex-change operation. Her urges were relieved after releasing the entity.” (p. 270)

When I meet people who claim to be “gay,” I ask my daughter what she sees on them. **There has never been an occasion where she did not see one or more earthbound female spirits attached to a gay man and has always seen earthbound male spirit(s) attached to a gay woman.** This has been not only confirmed by others gifted with spiritual sight, but also by psychiatrists such as Dr. Fiore and Dr. Modi. .

Casting out earthbound spirits or evils spirits may not solve all of a person’s problems. These things can leave deep wounds, both emotional and spiritual, and healing often takes time. Some will probably need a support group or at least family support. Some people may need counseling or even psychotherapy. Energy workers understand how these wounds can fester and affect quality of life and even be passed on generationally. They can be called upon to assist in the healing as well. Karol Truman’s book

Conquering Spiritual Evil

“Feelings Buried Alive Never Die” is well worth reading. These “left over” wounds should not be left to “heal themselves”; it is vital to get extra help as quickly as possible.

We have found that almost always the “entity” will try to come back. That aspect alone could require several people in support who understand the value of “shielding” and the use of other tools of light.

Other physical problems that Dr. Modi found that could be caused by earthbound spirits are:

“Migraine headaches, dizziness, fainting spells, convulsions, hearing problems, ringing in the ears, vision changes, neck and shoulder pain, back pain, arthritis, chest pain, shortness of breath, asthma, palpitations, throat pain, difficulty in swallowing, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, constipation, gastritis, esophageal ulcers, colitis, abdominal pain, obesity, anorexia, PMS, hot flashes, aches and pains in different parts of the body, different skin conditions, neuritis, numbness, weakness, tingling, chronic fatigue, allergies, etc.

Psychological Symptoms: Depression, recurrent dreams and nightmares, poor concentration and memory, suicidal thoughts and preoccupations, panic attack, fears and phobias, sexual problems, homosexuality, transvestitism, mood swings, homicidal thoughts and impulses, symptoms of schizophrenia and psychosis, dissociative identity disorder, multiple personality disorder, relationship problems, obesity, bulimia, anorexia nervosa, obsessive-compulsive behavior, drug and alcohol abuse and addiction.”
(Remarkable Healings, Shakuntala Modi, M.D.)

Not all earthbound spirits are dark or evil. Some are confused because they died suddenly or perhaps violently. Once they understand their situation, they usually move on. Some are

Conquering Spiritual Evil

quite benign. “Sighted” people have reported that many children are in cemeteries as earthbound spirits. They are confused and don’t know why they are there, and most aren’t even aware their physical bodies are in the grave.

Negative emotions can keep a spirit earthbound. Whether benign or evil these earthbound spirits do NOT have the right to inhabit our bodies or attach themselves to us. Because there are earthbound spirits that are capable of causing us much harm, they all need to be cast off immediately. They are not our friends. We should check and clear ourselves often.

HELPING EARTHBOUND SPIRITS MOVE ON

As mentioned previously there are many individuals who help earthbounds to move on. I feel it is a very important work. The Prophets have indicated that there are many people stuck here, some may even be our relatives.

Brigham Young (1855-1866) stated:

“There are myriads of disembodied evil spirits—those who have **long laid down their bodies here and in the regions round about**, among and around us; and they are trying to make us and our children sick, and are trying to destroy us and to tempt us to evil. They will try every possible means they are masters of to draw us aside from the path of righteousness.” (Vol. 6, p. 73-74, emphasis added)

I personally am not of the “camp” that believes that all earthbound spirits are dark. Many are not, they are “stuck”, lost, deceived, benign, and of all sort of dispositions.

In my daughter Denise’s book *In His Arms* she relates a story about a little boy who had drowned during pioneer times in a creek and was “stuck” there as an earthbound spirit.

Our neighbor and her son were gifted and helped “Joey” leave this world. His mother told Joey that his parents missed him and that he ought to go to them. Denise suggested that we invite Jesus to come take Joey to his parents. We did that, and when Joey left with the Lord, the neighbor boy exclaimed, “There they go!”

My family is familiar with a wonderful woman that is quite gifted with spiritual sight. She has helped many earthbound spirits

Conquering Spiritual Evil

move on. One day when she and her daughter (who is also spiritually sighted) were driving down the road in our valley, they both could hear a young child crying. They stopped the car and they “saw” a young child by the side of the road. Apparently, the child had been killed during the Indian wars and had been “stuck” in that spot for over one hundred years. She and her daughter helped the child move on to the light.

She is a blessing to both sides of the veil, especially those that are earthbound and need a little understanding. What a gift she is to those individuals. What a blessing she could be to church members if we truly believed what the Lord declared in the D&C.

“And all these gifts come from God, for the benefit of the children of God.” (D&C 46:26)

Several years ago Denise, Kenneth, Stephanie and I headed up the mountain to show some of the sites to Kenneth. The first location we went to was an ancient battlefield, and we decided that each of us would go to a different part of the area and pray.

Thirty minutes later we were all back to the car except Stephanie. Another thirty minutes went by before Stephanie appeared walking towards us.

Stephanie related the following:

“As I was getting out of the car to go on my walk, a scene flashed across my mind. I was down in a ravine and could see people scurrying about. Several men separately ran the other direction while I watched a young woman and small child coming in my direction. In that short space of time, I noticed that they all seemed dark complected and were wearing brown, rough designed clothing that I might describe as animal skins. It happened so quickly that I paid it no heed and began my walk. For a while I sat on a fallen tree, prayed, and sang

Conquering Spiritual Evil

hymns. As I began walking back to the car, I felt two tugs on my shirt.

I stopped cold in my tracks. Making certain that my feet were planted, I slowly turned around being conscious of every possible point, so I could know if it was a twig from a passing bush or any other obstacle, as I know no human was near me at this point. There was nothing within 10 feet of where I was standing. I immediately remembered the scene and knew that the tug must have come from the child! I realized that it was the Mother and child that I had seen hurrying up the ravine and that they wanted something from me. So I returned to the fallen tree and began to sing. I also began to feel the desire to talk or to “teach a lesson”. I began to tell the Story of the “Plan of Salvation” as I understood it, at a basic child’s level. . .

I concluded by telling them not to be afraid of the Beings of Light that had often come to them. They were there to help them, teach them, and bring them to their loved ones. I expressed my heartfelt love for them, for our Father in Heaven and our Savior, Jesus Christ and bore testimony of the truths of which I had spoken. I could feel that I was finished. I sang a couple of more songs and then began to journey back to the clearing where I saw Doug coming to meet me.”

A year later I was in the same location with a man whose veil had dropped many years ago, and he could see spirits, earth bound, and otherwise. I asked this man if this woman and her daughter that Stephanie had taught were there. He said that there was a woman and her young daughter standing there, but they were no longer “earth bound” but had just come to see what we were doing there.

He found out from the woman that she and her daughter had survived an attack from another group, had been taken in by a group of people who began to teach them about Christ, and then

Conquering Spiritual Evil

were killed later when that village was attacked. Stephanie had helped them see the light and leave this world.

Once I had the distinct impression that I needed to travel to a town about one hour south of our home. I had no idea why. Just before arriving in the town, I had a vision of a cemetery that was surrounded by hills on three sides in the shape of a “U”. On the sides of the hill I saw a huge host of Native American spirits. I supposed that these would be some of the Lamanites that Brigham Young talked about when he said their spirits inhabit the cities from Salt Lake to St. George.

I was to look for a cemetery and I had no idea where it was located. Part way through town the Spirit told me to turn left. I did and within a short distance I found the entrance to the cemetery which was surrounded on three sides by hills just as I was shown in the vision. The Spirit told me to drive to the far side of the cemetery, get out of the car, and offer a prayer. I felt foolish doing this but obeyed.

I knelt behind the biggest headstone I could find, hoping that no one would see me. Wow, I was grateful for those hills surrounding the place! I offered a prayer and asked that all those earthbound spirits that wanted to be released to transition to the light.

As I drove home, I could feel that many of those earthbound spirits were following me. It never occurred to me to ask why. Soon life took over, days went by and they were out of my mind.

A few weeks later Denise wanted to know why all those Lamanite spirits were in our yard. I chuckled and told her they must have followed me from the town south of here and decided to stay. We actually felt they had come to offer protection for our family as gratitude for being released.

Then several months later Stephanie and her daughter, Rachael, were going to fly to Hawaii, and they wanted a blessing before they left and asked me to voice it.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

In the blessing they were told that some of the Lamanites in the yard would go with them for protection. I thought that was a little strange to be in a blessing, but didn't say anything about it. We forgot about it, and they went to Hawaii.

A few weeks after Stephanie and Rachael got back, Denise commented, "Dad, do you remember those Lamanites that have been in the yard for a long time now?"

"Yes, I remember them," I said.

"How come half of them are wearing 'hula skirts'?"

I laughed and laughed. It's not often you get unsolicited validation of something the Spirit had you do months ago.

A good friend of my family has never had a veil her entire life. So she has dwelt with many earthbound spirits and helped some of them move along. Following are two of her experiences.

"My children had some friends that they played with. They came home and told me that their friends were living in a small cabin instead of their large new home. Seems that the lights would go on and off, plates would move, and other poltergeist activity would go on. It scared their children and hence the move into the cabin.

The father knew I had abilities and asked for help. I went over and checked out the house. There was a woman and her child there, both were earthbound spirits. The woman apologized profusely for the problems she had caused. She was just begging for help, and no one could hear or see her. She just didn't know what to do or where to go and was just hoping for someone to help her and her child.

I prayed to Heavenly Father and asked what could be done. I was told to tell her to look up. This was something she told me that had never occurred to her. I told her to look up and see the light, that her family was there waiting for them.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

She did so and took off. The mortal family moved back into their home with no further problems.”

She related another story:

“There was an earthbound spirit at a friend’s home. The man had died, well, actually committed suicide unknowingly by drinking a teaspoon of Drano every day. He had been diagnosed with cancer. He kept trying to contact his family, but they couldn’t see or hear him. While alive he had known of me and my gifts. Somehow he found out where I lived. He took the chance and came to the property line.

Since my property was shielded or protected he could not come onto it. He kept calling and calling my name until finally I heard him. I got permission from Heavenly Father to answer him since he was there for a specific purpose. So I answered back that I did see and hear him.

The amount of relief that came upon him was huge. He was utterly lost and confused; to have someone hear him that he actually knew was huge. He started crying he was so relieved. . .

We discussed his problem. . . I explained that he needed to look to Jesus Christ and go to the light. He told me that he didn’t see any light. Because he had been so sick before he transitioned, he could not remember how to pray. I had to actually help him through a prayer. After the prayer, he saw the light and left.”

This woman has done a great work in helping earthbound spirits move on. But she is very careful about how she goes about it. There are reasons for this as the next story will demonstrate.

Another friend, Aaron, related a story about how an earthbound spirit attached himself to his family. Aaron’s sister

Conquering Spiritual Evil

named him Fred. Aaron's father and his siblings all have the spiritual gift of seeing spirits.

Fred enjoyed irritating the family members. He would tickle toes at night while they tried to sleep or scare them by appearing in the mirror when they combed their hair. He prowled the hallways of their basement and did other obnoxious things.

One sister was having some "growing up problems", and Fred became her confidant. She confided in him about everything until Fred claimed ownership over her. This frightened her. She wanted him to go, but he said that if she banished him, he would go after her children. This really scared her. Finally they got rid of him, or so they thought.

At a seminar on our property several years later, we talked about these things, and Aaron related the above story. While he was talking, a "sighted" friend saw Fred come onto our property and past the angels that we had asked to guard the place. Two huge guard angels grabbed him by the arms and took him away. They would not allow him to come back.

Aaron also mentioned that another sister lived in an apartment building that use to be a hospital. He visited the place once and saw that it was full of earthbound spirits. He never went back. He was wise.

There are other stories about helping earthbound spirits move on. As I said, there are gifted people who help them to do so. I admire them. This really is not a new concept.

When situations call for removing one or more earthbound spirits, we should pray first and ask what to do in each case because we can't force spirits to move on to the light. We can always cast them out or we can lovingly teach them to look up or to **find the light**. However, if particular "nasty" earthbound spirits are encountered, it might be best to cast them out and then shield against them. Either way, the Spirit needs to be included in the process.

LAYERED POSESSION

While there is no scriptural precedent that shows earthbound or “unclean” spirits can be possessed, it has happened.

In the previous chapter I mentioned an experience with a man who had come to my home after being fired for accessing his pornography at work. The Spirit told me that he had an earthbound spirit attached to him that, in turn had an attached demon. This was confirmed by another friend with second sight.

After this incident I discussed the possibility of earthbound spirits having attachments with my “sighted” daughter, Denise.

“I see it all the time, Dad,” she said. She estimated that over half of those earthbound spirits she has seen have demons, devils, and even other earthbound spirits attached to them.

In Dr. Edith Fiore’s (1988) book she relates the following experience:

“As Barbara came in for her seventh session, I could see that things were not going well for her. She looked depressed, and her whole body reflected her mood.

“I’m discouraged! There’s so much garbage in my life! I have a real feeling of helplessness. Many times, in the last couple of weeks, I’ve been so depressed that it takes all my conscious effort to pull myself up. I feel I’ll never lose the weight—I’ll die like this!

“Have you thought of suicide?”

“Oh, yeah! It’s been real strong. I know it’s not me. I’m a real survivor! The first time it hit, I was forty. I got incredibly depressed. I felt the same way this past week. I even got sick, that’s why I had to cancel my appointment. I haven’t been sick

Conquering Spiritual Evil

in a long time—at least a year. I created it to hide. I was exhausted, shaking, sweating! I slept twenty-four hours straight through. It's all tied in with the depression.”

Under hypnosis, Barbara's finger signals indicated that she had an entity who had joined her when she was twenty—more than twenty-five years ago. When I asked if it was male, both the “yes” and “no” fingers lifted. Further questioning revealed that the spirit had been a homosexual female who had committed suicide.

Regressed to the woman's death, Barbara reported that she had jumped off the Golden Gate Bridge. Her face registered concern, and she said, “I know who she is—the daughter of a friend! I really liked her a lot. Such a neat person. I couldn't figure out why she was so unhappy. At first, I refused to believe she had committed suicide. Just before she did it, she wrote a letter to one of her friends telling him she was homosexual. Even her psychiatrist couldn't reach her.”

I then asked her to remember when the entity took possession of her.

“When I took her picture home. I don't know why I asked her mother if I could keep it.” After a long pause, she admitted that she couldn't remember her name. Immediately, a different voice came through, quietly saying, “Jean.”

I wasted no time and spoke to her, calling her attention to someone she loved dearly, who had come for her. She left without further ado with her great-aunt.

Barbara announced, “We've been together—fighting!”

“What do you mean?”

“I would look in the mirror, and it wasn't really me I was looking at. Sometimes I felt very strange. I never relaxed! Always on edge. Fearful of heights. I was terrified of walking across the

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Golden Gate Bridge, which we did in 1979. I could have so easily crawled up there and gone over—again! I was not okay with myself. I had a strong identification with Jean.”

After a pause, and looking puzzled, she reported, “They’re still here, sitting and listening, Jean and her great-aunt.”

I asked Barbara to speak directly to her, explaining she should go into the Light and the spirit world.

“It’s almost like I invited you, Jean. I was envious of you. You were all I wanted to be. I knew you felt a lot of pain inside. I felt so bad when you committed suicide.” Barbara continued to talk to her and finally persuaded her to go to the Light, which apparently she did.

“I didn’t know who I was. I don’t feel like I’ve ever felt the same since her death. She’s been with me like a big burden for years. Now that she’s gone, I feel emptiness—like a cancer has been taken out. Something’s been cut away, like I’ve had a costume on and now it’s been taken off. A lot of tension’s just been relieved.

“I feel strange—like there’s another person here! She’s the other person who was with Jean. She is very white and very heavy. She’s so fat, she’s like a big bubble. Her chin goes right down to her chest. She has almost orange-blond hair. (Long pause.) Margaret’s her name. She was a friend of Jean’s from high school. She had an attachment to Jean—in love with her. She killed herself . . . maybe because of Jean not returning her love the way she wanted it — physically. Then she possessed Jean.”

So Jean was possessed at her death! Who really committed the suicide, Margaret or Jean? Maybe Jean’s homosexuality, which she couldn’t accept, drove her to kill herself. Or was it the spirit acting out? All these hypotheses were flashing into

Conquering Spiritual Evil

my mind as I asked Barbara what Margaret was feeling.

“Lost and angry.”

I decided to address the spirit directly. I wanted her to acknowledge her death to prepare her for the eventual depossession. “How did you kill yourself?”

“OD’d—I swallowed aspirins. (Pause.) I don’t feel well. I feel a lot of pain in my abdomen. (Long pause.) Jean swallowed aspirin too, before she jumped off the bridge. I wanted her to live. I didn’t know what to do. I couldn’t talk to her. I was . . . just with her. It wasn’t my fault she died! (Long pause.) We’d been together—all three of us, for a long time.” (pp. 82-83)

The therapist finally got Barbara to leave. It was her first encounter with a person with two earthbounds attached to each other. Would it be possible that Margaret, during her earth-life had an earthbound spirit on her to cause her to have homosexual tendencies? It is interesting to contemplate.

Dr. Modi (1997) found the same problems with her patients:

“According to my patient reports, one of the most common reasons that human spirits stay earthbound is demon possession. It is really the demon entities inside the earthbound spirits who are afraid of the Light. These earthbound entities with demonic influence claim that the Light burns their eyes and they cannot stand it. So they turn away from the Light. The demons inside these earthbound entities also feed them thoughts exaggerating their anger, hate, guilt, and fear, keeping them from going to heaven.

Max had a female entity, Katy, inside who said: ‘I died of stomach cancer. I knew I was supposed to go to the Light, but every time I made

Conquering Spiritual Evil

an effort to go to the Light, I felt something or somebody was holding me down and I could not go up. And somehow I ended up in this person.”

Max saw inside Katy **a large demon entity** who bragged about giving her cancer and keeping her from going to the Light. After releasing the dark entity, Katy was able to go to heaven.” (p. 239, emphasis added)

On another occasion Dr. Modi writes about an earthbound entity that “had a demon entity in him that made him angry and hateful. After the demon entity was released, he (the earthbound entity) did not feel angry and hateful toward Cindy (the mortal) and had no desire to take revenge. He was willing to go to heaven and was released to the Light.”

It stands to reason that two dark entities are probably more powerful than one. If a demon is attached to an earthbound that is then attached a mortal, they are probably a powerful combination. So, once they are cast out, and we allow them back in through our anger or any dark/spirit-less emotion or judgment, they happily re-enter with stronger friends. Remember what Matthew said about this?

“When the unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places, seeking rest, and findeth none. Then he saith, I will return into my house from whence I came out; and when his is come, he findeth it empty, swept, and garnished. Then goeth he, and taketh with himself seven other spirits more wicked than himself, and they enter in and dwell there: and the last state of that man is worse than the first. Even so shall it be also unto this wicked generation.” (Matthew 12:43-45)

Not only do they come back with “friends”, their friends are more wicked than they were. They are not limited to bringing

Conquering Spiritual Evil

just “seven other spirits” with them. This is just a term that means many more. My sighted friends have seen them come back in legions. Many will band together, thereby becoming certainly more powerful than the one.

Sometimes casting out must be done in layers and in an attitude of prayer so the Spirit of truth can direct the process. Also protection to those watching must be provided, either by putting up a shield around them or having them leave the room. It is quite possible that the “cast-outs” would then enter another who may be feeling fearful. That is why it is so important to listen to the Spirit. If casting out is approached in a non-serious attitude, you may encounter more than you bargained for. For that reason I sent my wife and oldest daughter out of the house when Denise had a bad demon in her.

“And the evil spirit answered and said, Jesus I know, and Paul I know; but who are ye?

And the man in whom the evil spirit was **leaped on them**, and prevailed against them, so that they fled out of that house naked and wounded.” (Acts 19:15-16, emphasis added)

Therefore, when casting out evil spirits of any type, I follow the pattern set out by the Lord while He walked the earth. He simply cast them out. He didn’t usually converse with them; He demanded that they leave. If some of them requested something of Him, He gave his answer and cast them out. The Lord’s pattern is to get rid of them. “And Jesus rebuked him, saying, Hold thy peace, and come out of him.” (Mark 1:25). “. . . and suffered not the devils to speak . . .” (Mark 1:34) There are several scriptures showing the pattern which was established by the Lord. In this regard I’m talking about evil spirits, whether they are earthbound, devil, or demon—not benign earthbound spirits.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

In the D&C the Lord expands our understanding when He tells the wicked that He is “ashamed to own them before the Father”:

“Wherefore I will say unto them—Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels. And now, behold, I say unto you, never at any time have I declared from mine own mouth that they should return, for where I am they cannot come, for they have no power.”
(D&C 29:28-29)

The Lord teaches that He has prepared everlasting fire for the devil and his angels, that where He is they cannot come, so He doesn’t need to spend time dealing with them. Why should we do any differently?

When we encounter a “double” or multi-layered possession problem, it might take some effort to clear it or them all away, to cast them all out. We will need to listen intently to the Spirit and follow what it tells us to do. As we have seen, sometimes the earthbound is being controlled by the dark entities attached to it. When those dark entities were cast off, the earthbound spirit is usually agreeable to moving on.

PRIESTHOOD, WOMEN AND FAITH

Many LDS members believe that only the Priesthood can cast out devils, demons, earthbound spirits, etc. But even though women in the church do not hold the same Priesthood as men, they are often given “gifts of the Spirit” in which they can “see” spirits, recognize their character, and, when needed, can help trapped earthbound spirits to move on. We all seem to have our roles here on this earth, and our Father in Heaven has blessed us with gifts that match the roles we have been given. Since God is no respecter of persons, He gives “gifts” freely and expects us to use them.

The Priesthood seems to be a bit different from gifts of the Spirit. Hugh Nibley (2008) explains it this way:

“Repeat of repeat: Over whom does it [priesthood] exercise power, then? Over the spirits and over the elements—never over one’s fellow man, whose free agency is absolute and inalienable.

Christ commanded the spirits, and they obeyed him; but men he would not command, and he rebuked the apostles at Capernaum for suggesting it. ‘How often would I have gathered you together . . . but ye would not!’ (D&C 43:24)” (p. 257)

The Lord tells the men of the church to use His Priesthood with care:

“No power of influence can or ought to be maintained by virtue of the priesthood, only by persuasion, by long-suffering, by gentleness and meekness, and by love unfeigned; by kindness, and pure knowledge, which shall greatly enlarge the soul

Conquering Spiritual Evil

without hypocrisy, and without guile.” (D&C 121:41-42)

The priesthood is not here for us to use with unrighteous dominion, command or to use compulsion to force others to do things according to the priesthood holder’s desires or to think that they have the ONLY solution to the influence of evil. He may lose his priesthood and authority as the Lord has declared in D&C 121:

“Behold, there are many called, but few are chosen. And why are they not chosen?

Because their hearts are set so much on the things of this world, and aspire to the honors of men, that they do not learn this one lesson—

That the rights of the priesthood are inseparably connected with the powers of heaven, and that the powers of heaven cannot be controlled nor handled only upon the principles of righteousness.

That they may be conferred upon us, it is true; but when we undertake to cover our sins, or to gratify our pride, our vain ambition, or to exercise control or dominion or compulsion upon the souls of the children of men, in any degree of unrighteousness, behold, the heavens withdraw themselves; the Spirit of the Lord is grieved; and when it is withdrawn, Amen to the priesthood or the authority of that man.” (vs. 34-37)

This statement from the Lord ought to be enough to scare the living daylights out of anyone who holds it. Brigham called it an “onerous burden” to hold the priesthood. **It is something that certainly can condemn us if we abuse it.** We probably abuse it often if the Lord declares that many of us are called, yet few of us are chosen. If we even try to “exercise control” or “dominion or compulsion” over anyone in any degree of unrighteousness, we lose the Lord’s Spirit and have NO authority or priesthood. We are left

Conquering Spiritual Evil

to ourselves, and the Lord states that we would even “persecute the saints” and “fight against God.” (D&C 121:38) If God leaves us to ourselves, what will come in to take the place of His light or Spirit? It’s the adversary’s darkness that will come and reside in the void that was created when the Lord’s light left.

An article in the *Millennial Star* in June of 1852 discussed this situation in relation to dark spirits:

“Some husbands are so mighty big because they are the head, that the wife has no room in the house; if she thinks, she thinks wrong; if she speaks, she speaks wrong; if she acts, she acts wrong; she can’t do a right thing for the life of her; and do what she will, no matter, she is as likely to get a cuffed ear as any thing else, and a little more so; and if she ask forgiveness, she would meet with the consoling retort from her dear lord, ‘yes, and you’ll do the same thing again next minute.’ Why all this? Because the dear husband, the great lord of the house **has got so many devils in him**, they make him so big there is not room for any body else in that house.” (p. 280, emphasis added)

We are not immune to this tendency to exercise unrighteous dominion or take the mantle of the priesthood very casually. So once we have taken another person’s agency or allowed them to take our agency, we are open to having dark entities possess us.

In the April 2010 General Conference, Elder Boyd K. Packard made some very pointed and quite startling comments to the priesthood holders about the Priesthood. Are we as priesthood holders doing what the Lord warned us against in Section 121 of the Doctrine and Covenants? Elder Packard said in part:

“Priesthood is the authority and the power which God has granted to men on earth to act for Him. When priesthood authority is exercised

Conquering Spiritual Evil

properly, priesthood bearers do what He would do if He were present.

We have done very well at distributing the **authority** of the priesthood. We have priesthood authority planted nearly everywhere. We have quorums of elders and high priests worldwide. But distributing the **authority** of the priesthood has raced, I think, ahead of distributing the **power** of the priesthood. The priesthood does not have the strength that it should have and will not have until the **power** of the priesthood is firmly fixed in the families as it should be.

. . . The authority of the priesthood is with us. After all that we have correlated and organized, it is now our responsibility to activate the **power** of the priesthood in the Church. **Authority** in the priesthood comes by way of ordination; **power in the priesthood comes through faithful and obedient living in honoring covenants.** It is increased by exercising and using the priesthood in righteousness.

Now, fathers, I would remind you of the sacred nature of your calling. You have the power of the priesthood directly from the Lord to protect your home. **There will be times when all that stands as a shield between your family and the adversary's mischief will be that power. You will receive direction from the Lord by way of the gift of the Holy Ghost."** (Ensign, May 2010, emphasis added)

LDS men will have power in their priesthood when it is firmly fixed in the family as it should be, through faithful and obedient living in honoring covenants. We can then increase that power by exercising and using it. What an insightful and timely talk by President Packer.

The Lord goes on to say in Section 121:

Conquering Spiritual Evil

“We have learned by sad experience that it is the nature and disposition of almost all men, as soon as they get a little authority, as they suppose, they will immediately begin to exercise unrighteous dominion.

Hence many are called, and few are chosen.

No power or influence can or ought to be maintained by virtue of the priesthood, only by persuasion, by long-suffering, by gentleness and meekness, and by love unfeigned;

By kindness, and pure knowledge, which shall greatly enlarge the soul without hypocrisy, and without guile—.” (D&C 121:39-42)

The priesthood is basically used to command the elements, commanding spirits, and performing ordinances. But when the Lord declares that is the nature of most men to exercise unrighteous dominion when they get what they suppose is a little authority, they ought to be really careful how they treat those with gifts that are out of the ordinary. They should be careful about the declarations they make as they lord their supposed authority over these members, threatening to pull temple recommends or holding church courts if they are not obeyed. If they do so, the Lord has declared “Amen” to their supposed authority, and they certainly will have no priesthood power. Also, in light of these scriptures, priesthood holders ought to be hesitant about declaring that women have no right to cast out dark entities or use their God-given spiritual gifts to help earthbound spirits move on.

There are times when the entities are so powerful that it will require the higher priesthood along with great faith and at times fasting and prayer. And sometimes the situation is so dramatic and time sensitive, it requires immediate action on the part of a woman because no priesthood holder is available. Women and even children who have no priesthood in their home have the right to cast Satan out in the name of Christ. It requires no priesthood authority to do so for the less powerful entities. However, if they

Conquering Spiritual Evil

have access to a believing priesthood holder, ask him to come to the house and clean it out using the priesthood power and then shielding the home.

Such an experience happened in Brazil when an investigator who was possessed went on a rampage in the house, and after he had done major damage to the room, he turned his attention to the women who happened to be there. There was no way possible they could protect themselves from this possessed man; he was just simply too strong. **As he started towards them, one of the Sisters raised her arm to the square and started praying. Those in the room say they saw what looked like lightening shoot from her shoulder and hit the man, knocking him against the wall.**

The demon was gone. She didn't need priesthood in that moment; she needed her Savior. She had invoked His named and was saved.

In the "Words of Joseph Smith", we have this counsel concerning gifts given to women:

"[Joseph Smith] gave a lecture on the Priesthood shewing how the sisters would come in possession of the privileges, blessings, and gifts of the Priesthood, and that the signs should follow them, such as healing the sick, casting out devils, & C., and that they might attain unto these blessings by a virtuous life and conversation and diligence in keeping all the commandments." (p. 119)

He also said:

"No matter who believeth; these signs such as healing the sick casting out devils &C. should follow all that believe whether male or female. He ask'd the [Relief] Society if they could not see by this sweeping stroke that wherein they are ordained, it is the privilege of those set apart to administer in that

Conquering Spiritual Evil

authority which is conferr'd on them—and if the sisters should have faith to heal the sick, let all hold their tongues, and let everything roll on. . . . Respecting the females laying on hands, he [Joseph Smith] further remark'd, there could be no devil in it if God gave his sanction by healing—that there could be no more sin in any female laying hands on the sick than in wetting the face with water. It is no sin for anybody to do it that has faith, or if the sick has faith to be heal'd by the administration.” (pp. 115, 116)

I know a woman that had this experience. Her husband was away on business when her youngest son became quite ill with an earache, and since they were new in town, she didn't know anyone who could voice a blessing for him. He was in so much pain that in her distress she laid her hands on him and voiced a blessing of healing. He immediately went to sleep and woke up the next morning pain free. She didn't declare any priesthood; she just did it with mighty faith in the name of her Savior, Jesus Christ. She had the right to do this because he was within her stewardship and there was no one else available.

Since the 1930's the Brethren have asked women not to use this gift of blessing others in this manner. I do sustain them in their request, but know that occasionally such things must be done by women. Mighty prayer is a great blessing for all the saints, no matter who it comes from. Women also seem to have great faith in our Lord, and He will acknowledge that faith when they petition Him for help.

Little children, who have no priesthood, can use the gift of faith as well. We have a good friend whose young son has an extremely thin veil. He was always telling his Primary teacher about the pre-mortal life or where Jesus was sitting in the room. He told his mother that when dark spirits are around, he will raise his right arm and tell them, “Jesus doesn't want you here. Go away!” And they go.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Joseph Smith at age fourteen encountered the Adversary and thought he was going to be literally destroyed.

“But, exerting all my powers to call upon God to deliver me out of the power of this enemy which had seized upon me, and at the very moment when I was ready to sink into despair and abandon myself to destruction—not to an imaginary ruin, but to the power of some actual being from the unseen world, who had such marvelous power as I had never before felt in any being—just at this moment of great alarm, I saw a pillar of light exactly over my head, above the brightness of the sun, which descended gradually until it fell upon me.” (JSH 1:16)

In the first chapter of Moses after Moses sees God, the Adversary comes for a visit saying, “Moses, son of man, worship me.” Moses tells Satan that he (Satan) has no glory, as God does, whom he had just visited. He then declares to Satan, “Get thee hence, Satan.”

A short while later he again says, “Depart hence, Satan.”

It was at this point that Satan “cried with a loud voice, and ranted upon the earth, and commanded, saying: I am the Only Begotten, worship me.”

At this point Moses began to “fear exceedingly” and then saw the bitterness of hell. “Nevertheless, calling upon God, he received strength, and he commanded, saying: Depart from me, Satan, for this one God only will I worship, which is the God of glory.” Satan did not leave.

Finally Moses declared: “In the name of the Only Begotten, depart hence, Satan.”

Satan then departed. Moses told Satan three times to leave, and he did not go. But when he commanded Satan to leave in the “name of the Only Begotten”, Satan was forced to go. Moses never

Conquering Spiritual Evil

did declare any priesthood authority. He just used one of the names of Jesus Christ.

We all have the right to cast out demons and other unclean entities or spirits. As previously stated when the Lord cast out demons he never mentioned priesthood while doing so, he just cast them out. It is the husband's stewardship to protect his home and family. In fact it is his **duty** to protect his home and family. He does have the right to use priesthood to protect them if he feels so inspired. It is something that I would do and have done. Why not use all the tools in your arsenal that the Lord has provided?

Experience has taught me that some demons and devils are more powerful than others. For those with greater power, it would require corresponding power to rebuke and remove them, someone that has His authority and is full of His power. For those dark entities that are weak, dismissal in Christ's name is easier and can be done by anyone having faith on Him. Like the young son who said, "Jesus doesn't want you here. Go away!"

President Uchtdorf said in the last general priesthood meeting that we men of the LDS church live beneath our privileges. President Packard made the same statement. It might be time to "raise the bar" as priesthood holders and become clean vessels before the Lord. Then we can use the "power" that these good Brethren have talked about and keep our families safer from the adversary. Why are we not using this gift from God to cleanse our homes and property? Why are we not shielding ourselves from the adversary and entities of darkness and their devices? Should we not be using the Priesthood at every opportunity to bless the lives of our family and those within our stewardship? **Remember, a single woman has the right to ask the Lord for protection, to cast out, and to put up shields.** She also has the right to ask her local priesthood leaders to step forward and exercise the priesthood power to help protect her children and home. They may need some education in the process, so she must educate them. If they reject

Conquering Spiritual Evil

her and are prideful, they didn't have priesthood anyway—so says the Lord.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Chapter Twenty

AGENCY

We are given agency over our own lives and stewardship over our children while they are growing up until they become adults and “leave the nest.” We also have stewardship in regards to other individuals when we have a church calling. But that does not mean we have the authority to rule and reign over them by telling them what to do.

Remember, the 121st Section of the D&C warns about this “over-authority.”

“That the rights of the priesthood are inseparably connected with the powers of heaven, and that the powers of heaven cannot be controlled nor handled only upon the principles of righteousness. That they may be conferred upon us, it is true; but when we undertake to cover our sins, or to gratify our pride, our vain ambition, or to **exercise control or dominion or compulsion upon the souls of the children of men**, in any degree of unrighteousness, behold, the heavens withdraw themselves; the Spirit of the Lord is grieved; and when it is withdrawn, Amen to the priesthood or the authority of that man...We have learned by sad experience that it is the nature and disposition of almost all men, as soon as they get a little authority, as they suppose, they will immediately begin to exercise unrighteous dominion. Hence many are called, but few are chosen.” (Vs. 36-40)

It goes on to tell us that we should use “persuasion, long-suffering, gentleness, meekness, love unfeigned, kindness, and pure

Conquering Spiritual Evil

knowledge” when dealing with other individuals. This should be the way it is in all of our stewardships. God says here that almost all of us use force. But we need to step back and realize the importance of connecting with the Spirit and doing what it says to do.

We have all been blessed with spiritual gifts and are allowed to access those gifts for the benefit of others. The Lord has also instructed us to seek the best gifts in relation to not being deceived. “But ye are commanded in all things to ask of God, who giveth liberally; and that which the Spirit testifies unto you even so I would that ye should do in all holiness of heart, walking uprightly before me, considering the end of your salvation, doing all things with prayer and thanksgiving, that ye may not be seduced by evil spirits, or doctrines of devils, or the commandments of men; for some are of men and others of devils. Wherefore, **beware lest ye are deceived; and that ye may not be deceived seek ye earnestly the best gifts**, always remembering for what they are given.” (D&C 46:7-8)

The Prophet Joseph Smith has told us many times to seek the spirit of discernment, for when we are walking uprightly before God, the Spirit will tell us in that moment what it is we need to do within the bounds of our stewardship. The Lord is also telling us to do all things with prayer and gratitude, “that ye may not be seduced by evil spirits.” These are two huge keys in dealing with not only life but mainly dark spirits.

If we try to use unrighteous dominion, control, or compulsion over other individuals, it opens a doorway for dark entities to enter us because we are doing that which is evil in the sight of God. He leaves us “unto (ourselves), to kick against the pricks, to persecute the saints, and to fight against God.” (D&C 121:38)

Though we don’t have authority over human will, we do have authority over demons, devils, and earthbound spirits when they are trying to impose their will upon us. WE have the right to

Conquering Spiritual Evil

get rid of them. But we surely don't have any authority to impose our will upon another human being, especially if that person has invited an evil spiritual being to be with them. The following story from Kenneth Hagin (1986) illustrates this point in his book "The Believer's Authority."

"Many years ago I was holding a meeting here in Oklahoma and as I was ministering to the sick in the healing line, I had an inward intuition—I knew by the inward witness—that somebody in the line had a demon in him. That doesn't mean he was possessed—that's a different thing entirely. To be possessed is to be taken over entirely—spirit, soul, and body. You can have a demon in your body without being possessed by a demon.

I kept looking around. When a certain man stood within four persons of me, I knew the demon was in him. I never said anything out loud.

. . . Before the man stepped in front of me I thought to myself, I'm going to cast that thing out of him. I didn't say anything out loud; I just thought it. When he stepped up in place, before I could say anything, he spoke up. The demon spoke through him, whining in a high-pitched, nasal voice, 'You can't cast me out! You can't cast me out! You can't cast me out!'

I said, 'Yes I can, in the Name of Jesus.'

He said, 'No you can't. This man wants me to stay. And if he wants me to stay, I can.'

I said, 'You're right,' and passed him by."
(pp. 61-62)

He went on to say he met the man on the street a few days later and chatted with him. The man had more than one devil on him and knew it. Kenneth told him he would be willing to help him get rid of them. The man declined because he liked what they did for him.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

At the various seminars we have done, people have come up and asked for help in getting rid of demons on their spouse or older children. After we discussed the principle of agency, most would reluctantly agree they had no right to go against the other person's agency. But I could tell they secretly still wanted to do so. This is such an important concept to God that it is one of the things we "warred" about in heaven. Those of us here did not want to come to this earth and have Lucifer "make" us obey in order to return back to our Heavenly Father. Yet many people don't think twice about taking another's agency away. We will make them obey. "You will do what I tell you, or I will take your recommend away," seems to be a common threat in our Church. It is NOT God's/Heavenly Father's way!

Mr. Hagan had another experience. He was preaching for the first time in Oregon and at the end of his service, he did his usual healing line.

"I came to a woman. There was a man with her, and he did all the talking. She never said anything. I could tell by looking at her that she wasn't right mentally. The man said his wife was very nervous and had spent time in a mental institution.

Let me point something out to you here. You don't just exercise spiritual authority on behalf of other people per se; you've got to have the manifestation of the Spirit of God. That's why many are failing. They are trying to deal with spirits without the word of knowledge, discerning of spirits, or any unction (permission) of the Holy Ghost.

. . . When I laid hands on the woman in the healing line, I didn't see any spirits, but I had a word of knowledge. I didn't have discerning of spirits operating in my ministry then, but I had the word of knowledge operating. When I laid hands on her, her

Conquering Spiritual Evil

life ran off in front of me as if I were seeing it on a television screen, and I knew the whole story.

I said to her husband, 'I'm not going to minister to her. Take her to the pastor's study. When the meeting's over, I'll bring the pastor with me and I'll talk to both of you.' So he took her away.

The pastor and I went to his study. I found out that the woman's husband was a deacon in this church. I told him, 'I wanted the pastor here as a witness. He'll tell you he hasn't said one word to me about your wife. I don't know anybody in this state but this pastor. I never saw you or your wife before.'

'I'll tell you why I did not minister to your wife in public. When I laid my hands on her, I knew on the inside of me—I could see it all in an instant—that your wife once heard an evangelist say the Lord had spoken to him in an audible voice. She began to seek that God would speak to her in an audible voice, too.'

'What she failed to realize was that the evangelist didn't say he was seeking for God to speak to him that way—he didn't ask God to do it—he was just waiting on God. (When you begin seeking an audible voice, the devil will accommodate you. It's wrong to do this.)'

'Demons began to speak to her,' I continued. 'She began to hear these voices, and they drove her crazy. You told me she had been in an institution once. Actually she has been there twice, hasn't she?'

The husband replied, 'Who told you?'

'The Lord,' I said, 'He also showed me that you took your wife to a healing meeting, and the evangelist couldn't get her delivered, so you're mad at him. Then I saw that you took her to a prophet's meeting, and he couldn't get her delivered, and now you're mad at him. I wouldn't be able to get her

Conquering Spiritual Evil

delivered any more than the two of them, and you'd be mad at me. And that's the reason I wouldn't minister to her.

'Now I'm going to tell you why they didn't deliver her and why I can't deliver her: She doesn't want to be delivered. As long as she wants to hear these voices, she's going to hear them. She's not crazy. She's hearing everything I'm saying.'

I turned to her and said, 'Now, Sister, when you get to the place where you don't want to hear these voices, you come and I'll help you.'

'Well,' she said, 'I want to hear these voices.'

I said, 'I know you do.'" (pp. 64-66)

We are unable to help those who don't want help, and we especially are not allowed to go against their agency. This means that we can exercise our right to cast Satan out of our homes or anywhere else we have been given stewardship. As the head of my household I can cast him out whenever he appears. I can put up shields to keep him out. If someone enters my home and has demons on or in them, I have a right to shield against them. But if I enter someone else's home and realize it is full of entities, I have no right to cast them out. It is not my property, and, therefore, not my right to do so. The least I can do is protect myself by not going in or by putting up shielding and asking for angels to protect me and my family if they are with me. If someone comes onto my property full of evil, I have several options. I can put up with him, ask him to leave, or put a shield around myself to keep the evil from me, thereby not allowing it to jump to me. Even though I would love to put a shield around him, that would violate his agency, so I would not do that. Though there are times when the evil is so vile and could cause us so much trouble the Lord will allow us to put a protective shield around them to help keep us safe. This would be an extra shield, above the one you already have. It might be placed between you and the person or even around them to protect just you. **This is done only with permission from the Spirit.** It is

Conquering Spiritual Evil

dependent on what lessons are to be learned by us, along with other factors determined by the Lord. We must be careful about others agency, though the best protection might be to just leave.

One time we had a yard sale and many people come onto our property. I never thought about putting up protection against what they might leave behind. After the yard sale a “sighted” friend noticed that we had many dark entities on our property which he had never seen before. I promptly cast them off. But since it was my property, I had the right to shield it **before** the sale and ask that angels come and keep dark entities away. But if the people coming to the yard sale have entities on them, then they can get onto my property. For that reason it is important to cleanse your property/home after such events.

I had learned my lesson, so before a Johnson Reunion that we held on our property, I put up shielding and asked for angels to stand guard. One sighted women noticed an earthbound who had been mentioned during someone’s talk trying to cross the property line. She said that two large angels grabbed him by the arms and escorted him away. I was grateful I had shielded our place.

We have the right to help others when the help is asked for, and we should help them according to what the Spirit tells us to do — no more, no less. We have the right to protect our property, home, and cars. We should always be conscious of protecting those in our familial stewardship — our spouse and children. When I am teaching a Sunday School class at church, I have the right to cast out or cleanse the room before class. I don’t have the right to cast demons off of those that attend the class. We must be quite careful how we exercise our agency and not walk or step on the agency of others.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Chapter Twenty-one

BE SPECIFIC

When doing work on a spiritual level, I have found it is quite important to be specific. The following story offers a good example.

My wife and I had taken our daughter, Denise, to Nauvoo, Illinois, to see the sights. A friend had offered the use of her cabin that was about five miles from the city. The cabin sat next to the Mississippi River. It was a beautiful location, and we were really looking forward to spending the evenings there after sightseeing all day.

We had driven day and night to get there, so I was extremely tired. In the middle of the night Denise came to our room to wake me up. She said there were two earthbound spirits in her room, a man and his wife. They had lived on this spot many years ago. Denise felt that he had killed her. They were arguing, and he was threatening to kill her again. I found humor in the situation and told her they were already dead so what did it matter if he tried to kill her again?

She found no humor in my comment. She could not get to sleep while they were arguing.

“Would you come downstairs and cast them out,” she asked.

I agreed to come and do it.

We went downstairs, I knelt down on the floor, and raised my arm to the square. “In the name of Jesus Christ and by the power of the Priesthood I cast out all darkness.” Those were my exact words.

I asked Denise if they were gone.

“No, they are still here.”

“Why?” I asked, “I cast out all darkness.”

Conquering Spiritual Evil

“They aren’t considered dark. You need to cast them out specifically. They are earthbound spirits.”

I was tired and not happy about this development.

There are gifts that our Father will give us and some that we can ask for. A while back I had felt that I was given a sword, a spiritual sword. I could feel it on my back. (This kind of spiritual weapon is explained in chapter 26 on Weapons of Light.)

In my minds-eye I pulled out the sword and escorted the two earthbound spirits across the street near the river. I told them that we had permission from the current owner of the cabin to stay there. And as long as we were there, they were not welcome and that if they came across the street, I would dispatch them with the sword that I held in my hand.

Every time we came back to the cabin after a day of sightseeing I asked Denise if they were still there by the river.

“Yes, Dad, and they really don’t like you.”

This experience is a great example of how we must be specific in our supplications to our Father. It is also extremely critical to be specific in understanding what we might have attached to us or the person we are helping. Therefore, receiving revelation from our Father is vital in this process.

Earlier I told of a friend who had been full of implants, devices, hexes, curses, etc. When the blessing was voiced, the words were very specific, casting off each offending item of darkness.

Sometimes the situation requires more than just casting off. It may require fasting along with prayer—fasting by both the person with the problem and by the person voicing the blessing or casting off. It is imperative to be in tune with the Spirit and follow His directions exactly.

Don’t be in a rush to do something, unless it’s an emergency. I mentioned previously that someone had sent a spiritual spider at me which was pumping spiritual poison into me with its six legs. I was so perturbed that someone had sent this, I

Conquering Spiritual Evil

pulled out the sword on my back and swung it around my back cutting off the body of the spider. I immediately realized the mistake I had made. The body was gone, but I could still feel six legs “pumping” into my back. Now how was I going to get rid of this problem?

When Paul says we are wrestling “not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of darkness of this world, against spiritual darkness in high places” he wasn’t joking.

The battle is spiritual, and all of us are involved, whether we know it or not. The adversary is taking the fight very seriously, especially in these latter-days. Joseph said we must contemplate the darkest abyss. We need to learn how to combat the forces of darkness which is probably part of becoming like our Father in Heaven. I’m sure that Christ understands them, and that is why they have no power over him. When we become like Him, obeying the Father in all things and side-step fear concerning these “unseen” things, then they will have no power over us either.

There was another time when someone put some devices on me. I felt them on me and prayed about it. The thought came that I must be extremely careful about these. If I just yanked them off or pulled them off, they would double. After much meditation and prayer I felt to ask the Savior to come and take them off, and I needed to decide how He did it. So I asked Him to encapsulate each device within His energy field and then remove them, one at a time.

Could He have just removed them without harm to me? Probably, but He wants us to learn, to create, to use wisdom and thereby gain understanding of these things. This was true for the brother of Jared who was told to build the vessels to cross the ocean. He realized they needed to be tight enough to keep the water out. This meant no windows or light.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

“And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: **What will ye that I should do** that ye may have light in your vessels? For behold, ye cannot have windows, for they will be dashed in pieces; neither shall ye take fire with you, for ye shall not go by the light of fire.

And behold, I prepare you against these things; for ye cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you against the waves of the sea, and the winds which have gone forth, and the floods which shall come. **Therefore what will ye that I should prepare for you that ye may have light when ye are swallowed up in the depths of the sea?**”
(Ether 2:23, 25; Emphasis added)

The brother of Jared was required to mediate and then tell the Lord what he wanted done so they could have light. I’m sure he was inspired by the Lord, but it required effort on his part. He was actually taking something physical (the stones) and changing their makeup with the Spirit of the Lord. He brought spiritual power and creation into the physical realm and altered how it was. Stones that previously were just stones were now able to give off light. That alteration may just be spiritual and only available to those with “eyes to see.” Other times it may be seen by the physical as when Nephi’s brothers experienced a shock. An arm or finger that was just flesh now has the ability to point and shock. Joseph Smith did the same when he gave a handkerchief to a man and told him to wipe the faces of two sick boys, and they would be healed. He took something physical and added the spiritual to make it more than it was. The adversary will do the same thing only with darkness and evil. He takes spiritual matter and applies it to our physical body, thereby causing us pain and suffering. He has also taken dark spiritual matter and applied it to this physical realm. Sometimes that requires the gift of sight to detect, and surely it requires the gift of discernment at all times.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

We learn then, when dealing with darkness or evil, some things can be taken care of instantly, some need fasting, and some meditation and much prayer. We are to ask our Father for help and let the Spirit tell us what to do. This I learned from experience.

One time my brain had been in a fog for several days. I could not think clearly and thoughts would spin so fast, I could not concentrate on anything. The one thing I “forgot” to do was getting on my knees and asking the Lord what was going on. Instead I just cast out demons, devils, and earthbound spirits, but the fog remained. After several days of this, I visited a sighted friend. On the way over I cast off again and shielded myself so I would not leave anything in her house. Because my brain was still spinning, I casually asked her what might be going on. She wondered if I had any “cords” connecting me to a person I had seen in the hospital. Upon looking “inside”, I saw several cords leading away from me so I took my spiritual scissors and cut them. My mind stopped spinning and the fog was gone. Within seconds I was thinking clearly again.

Casting off in this situation didn’t help. **Dropping to my knees and asking my Father what the problem was should have been the first item on my list of clearing things away.** The problem is darkness can cloud our minds and actually make us forget what we should do. I had visited this man in the hospital, and I guess had allowed him to attach to me. In this experience I learned that what was attached to me wasn’t necessarily dark or evil. It had come from someone that was extremely ill, and was in a coma or sleeping. He may have wanted out of his body for a while. Or he may have wanted to see what was “swimming” in my head. (That is a scary thought.) Lastly he might have been confused about what was going on with his own body and was looking for help. Whatever the reason, he just happened to attach to the first “open” person that came to his room.

What I have learned from all of our experiences is we must ask in every situation what we are to do. **Revelation is imperative**

Conquering Spiritual Evil

from our Father in every case. Yes, we could use our minds and analyze the situation in order to figure out what's happening. But once we have analyzed the situation, we should get on our knees and ask if it is correct and how to deal with it. We might ask Him what He would have us learn from the situation. After we have done all of this, it is important that we follow that revelation's instructions precisely.

Could He ask us to do something that might seem strange and out of the ordinary such as encapsulating the devices that had been placed on you and then asking Him to remove them or cutting cords that had been attached to you? Absolutely! Our Savior made the statement that He did the will of the Father in all things. If that is so, then the Father told Him to do some strange things:

“And they bring unto him one that was deaf, and had an impediment in his speech; and they beseech him to put his hand upon him. And he took him aside from the multitude, and put his fingers into his ears, and he spit, and touched his tongue; and looking up to heaven, he sighed, and saith unto him, Ephphatha, that is, Be opened. And straightway his ears were opened, and the string of his tongue was loosed, and he spake plain.” (Mark 7:32-35)

Or the Lord with a blind man: “When he had thus spoken, he spat on the ground, and made clay of the spittle, and he anointed the eyes of the blind man with the clay, and said unto him, Go, wash in the pool of Siloam, (which is by interpretation, Sent.) He went his way therefore, and washed, and came seeing.” (John 9:6-7)

What if Jesus had told his Father that sticking his fingers in the man's ears or spitting in clay and putting it on the man's eyes was way out of His box? They would have remained deaf and blind. We can remain possessed with cords and devices attached or

Conquering Spiritual Evil

a myriad of other things that evil can put upon us, or we can do the will of the Father in all things, thus becoming like Christ.

Previously I related the incident with the young woman who had accidentally swallowed sunflower seeds and had gone into anaphylactic shock. When I first laid my hands on her head for the blessing, the Spirit told me to cast out the demon that had been attached to the sunflower seeds. That seemed like a strange thing, and I did wonder what those around me would think about casting a demon out of her that “was attached to the sunflower seeds.” But I did it and am grateful for the lesson of not judging what the Spirit tells me to do.

There are many other examples that could be cited about being specific when we cast out, release evil entities, get rid of hexes, curses, devices, implants and all the other myriad of evil things that can be placed upon and in us. We just need to remember to ask our Father for revelation about what is going on and what to do about it and then act immediately on what was revealed to us. “And ye are to be taught from on high. Sanctify yourselves and ye shall be endowed with power, that ye may give even as I have spoken.” (D&C 43:16)

We can be as specific as we want, but if we don’t have real intent it won’t matter because our Father won’t listen. In the book of Moroni, Mormon was very specific about this.

“And likewise also it is counted evil unto a man, if he shall pray and not with real intent of heart; yea, and it profiteth him nothing, for God receiveth none such.” (Moroni: 7:9)

Right before this in verse six, Mormon tells us the if we give a gift or pray unto God, “except [we] shall do it with real intent it profiteth [us] nothing.” The following story by George Q. Cannon (1882) profoundly illustrates this principle:

Conquering Spiritual Evil

“After joining the Church Elder Parry was often troubled in his sleep by evil spirits. Upon one occasion he inquired of the president of the Liverpool branch why it was that he was thus annoyed. The Elder replied that some persons were troubled more than others, and told him to use the following words in his prayers before retiring to rest: **‘O God, the Eternal Father, I ask Thee in the name of Thy Son, Jesus Christ, to give Thine angels charge concerning me this night, and allow not the powers of darkness to molest my spirit nor body.’**

He did this, and was troubled with evil spirits no more, until one night, feeling very sleepy, he uttered a hasty, formal prayer and went to bed. During the night he was almost overcome by the power of evil spirits, which were visible. Unable to utter a word, he prayed fervently in his mind to the Lord to release him. In an instant the heavens appeared to him to open, and he saw an angel descend towards him. The personage took hold of him and raised him up a little, and immediately the powers of darkness disappeared.

Elder Parry asked the angel why it was that the Lord permitted the evil one to abuse him in such a manner, to which he replied: **‘Because thou didst not pray from the heart, but with thy lips.’**”
(p. 45, emphasis added)

If we desire what we do to be effective, not only must we be specific, but it is also imperative we do it from the heart, **meaning with real intent**. “They drawn near to me with their lips, but their hearts are far from me.” (JS – History 1:19) If we are guilty of this, then it is possible to not only offend God, but also to be overcome by the adversary. It is my hope we do everything with real intent and from the heart, thereby having God on our side at all times in this fight.

LETTING DARKNESS IN

We let evil and darkness into our lives in numerous ways, and we are not aware of it. Demons can be attached to the medicine we use, the food we eat, or be at the places we frequent. Some of us don't want to give up our "sins" to allow the light in. We enjoy our movies with the little bit of nudity or small sex scene. We love our violence. We love to control, compel, and exercise unrighteous dominion over others.

The bottom line is if it doesn't uplift, it doesn't come from God. (D&C 50:23) There it is, plain and simple. What a great rule of thumb to go by. If the activity we are involved in, what we are saying, or even thinking doesn't uplift, it is not of God.

I received an email from a gentleman whose son is autistic and apparently sees "dark" spirits which frightens him. After conversing through email several times, I made a three-hour drive to meet him. I prayed much during those three hours. I didn't feel I knew much and had no idea how I could help anyone with the problems he was having, especially knowing that they had already gone to a spiritually gifted woman.

When I arrived I met the son (whom I'll call Eric) who looked more like a twelve-year-old instead of nine years old.

"Are you the guy that's going to help me with my demon problems?" he asked.

"Well, I don't know," I answered. "Are you having demon problems?"

"Yep."

"Let's just see what happens," I told him.

Eric's father explained that Eric was born during his mother's four-minute C-section which was quite traumatic for their little son. "For the first nine months of his life, Eric wouldn't

Conquering Spiritual Evil

move. He would just lay quietly wherever we put him,” his dad told me.

They placed stuffed animals around the edges of his crib, but noticed later the animals would all be moved around. They would put them back and came back later to the same thing. They couldn't figure out what was going on. At one point one animal was put next to his head. They put it back on the edge of the crib and stuffed it in between the slats, only to find it later next to Eric's head again. They soon came to feel that this was a “good spirit” that was watching over their son and welcomed it.

Later in his life when he got off the school bus, he'd literally run home as fast as he could, scared to death. Finally he told his parents he was scared by the dark things he saw. Eric even drew pictures of them for his parents. In less than one minute he drew beings which were all uniform in appearance, something Eric didn't have the ability to do.

Eric told them that he sees a particularly big and dark being outside on the sidewalk all the time and often comes up to the window and frightens him. It has red eyes and looks really evil. He even sees these entities in the mirror. Eric is now so scared that he requires one of his parents with him at all times. This has made life difficult for the family.

I told Eric's parents that I really didn't know what I could offer them other than the experiences from my life or from people I know. So I asked if they understood what was meant by “putting up a spiritual shield?”

They had no idea what that meant, so we discussed Samuel the Lamanite from the Book of Mormon. He was calling the people of Zarahemla to repentance while standing on the city wall. The people took exception to what he was doing and sent many arrows in his direction. Either they were all real bad archers or Samuel had a “shield of protection” around him because they were unable to hit Samuel with their arrows. I told them I believed it was the latter.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

I explained that these are spiritual shields. After telling them about other experiences with shielding, they seemed to understand the concept.

Eric's parents asked me if the dark being might be able to enter their home. We discussed many ways that darkness can enter. They had other children in the home and I told them it can enter through contention between children, and especially between parents. When I said this, they looked at each other and admitted that they did argue "more than they should." I wondered if that might be the cause of much of Eric's problems. I mentioned bad sites on the Internet and dark movies which can also attract dark beings.

Their son was so sensitive, it would require a lifestyle change for the family to protect and shield him from the adversary. Unfortunately the parents really didn't seem to want to do much about changing the way they lived. They just wanted Eric to stop seeing the "problem."

It reminded me of a time when I had some dark entities bothering me for weeks. I just could not shake them off. Later I had the following conversation with a gifted friend. I had told her I wanted to know who was sending them and why they were bothering me. She said the most amazing thing.

"Do you want to get rid of these demons?"

"Of course I do," I said.

"Do you want to know what the problem is and how come they are bothering you?"

"Yes," I replied.

"Go look in the mirror, and you will see your problem. Then go home and repent," she said quite bluntly.

Wow, I could get angry at what she had just told me. How dare she say that I am the problem, that I'm being plagued with demons because of MY sins and MY lack of repentance! I'm a good guy; I try to obey the Lord. How could I be the problem! Or I thought, I could accept what I had asked for — her opinion —

Conquering Spiritual Evil

and do as she suggested. I swallowed my pride and did as she suggested. Fasting and prayer relieved the problem. My friend was right; it had been me.

Most of the time we ARE the problem. Our actions, thoughts, judgments, wrong intent, perceived injustices, conclusions, false perceptions and other things WE do, bring on the problems, the dark entities that bother us and can be a problem for our families. Are we doing what the Lord has asked? Do we pray morning and night? On our knees? Do we meditate daily? Are we feasting on the scriptures? Do we stay away from things of darkness or just “sneak a peek?” How are those television shows with the revealing costumes? But the dancing sure is great, isn’t it. Maybe we are the ones who require a lifestyle change. Certainly we need to continually repent because the Lord declared: “That which doth not edify is not of God, and is darkness”. (D&C 50:23) He knows us, our day, and our activities. He knows of our lewdness, taking part in adultery, murder, fornications, and every other vice **vicariously** through our television shows and the internet. Joseph Smith commented on the Saints in his day. I doubt we are much better:

"How vain and trifling have been our spirits, our conferences, our councils, our meetings, our private as well as public conversations—too low, too mean, too vulgar, too condescending for the dignified characters of the called and chosen of God, according to the purposes of His will, from before the foundation of the world! We are called to hold the keys of the mysteries of those things that have been kept hid from the foundation of the world until now." (DHC vol. 3, p. 295)

Wow, what would he say about us today? Once again, maybe it is time to get on our knees and repent. We seem to be dealing with the gospel on a very superficial level.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

I have received a few emails from women whose husbands go out and drink alcohol at the bars or at friends' houses. Then they come home, hug their wives, and transfer demons, devils, or earthbound spirits to them. One woman felt a sharp stabbing in her back and realized what had happened. She tried to get rid of it herself and eventually called a friend who does energy work. Working together they were able to free her of the attached entities. Our spouses, children, and others could unknowingly bring entities into the house which then could cause all kinds of family problems. You can pick up dark entities in many places, not just in bars. Therefore, we should be aware of where our children are and what kind of activities they are involved in. Where we go and what we do affects our household positively or negatively daily. When we look towards Christ for help and protection, we will have a firm foundation and be able to overcome everything negative thrown at us. The Lord said in Helaman:

“And now, my sons, remember, remember that it is upon the rock of our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that ye must build your foundation; that when the devil shall send his mighty winds, yea, his shafts in the whirlwind, yea, when all his hail and his mighty storm shall beat upon you, it shall have no power over you to drag you down to the gulf of misery and endless wo, **because of the rock upon which ye are built, which is a sure foundation,** a foundation whereon if men build they cannot fail.” (Helaman 5:12, emphasis added)

The devil is powerless when our lives revolve around Christ and His light, not video games, television, sports, and a myriad of other devices and activities put there by the adversary to take our focus off the Lord and onto Babylon. There are those who get more pleasure out of riding 4-wheelers or boating than they get out of Sacrament meeting. But if we truly understand the Spirit and

Conquering Spiritual Evil

invite it in, Sacrament meetings become meaningful and can give us pleasure. There is a huge difference between what Babylon offers and what the Lord offers. The Lord offers us joy. Babylon offers fun. Fun is short lasting and fleeting while pure joy in the Lord is long lasting and eternal. There is quite a difference, and certainly the choice is ours. **Isn't it amazing how many of the world's "pleasures" seem to come with spiritual attachments, most of which will ruin our lives if left to fester?**

Another way we let darkness into our lives is by giving up our agency to others. The experience I related about the man who ran sweat lodges and then took peoples' energy and replaced it with devices is a good example of this. He made us sign a paper before we entered the sweat lodge. None of us read the paper, thinking it was just a release from, but as I look back, I believe it was really used to give our agency to him. He was in control, even after we left the sweat lodge.

I met a man who at first seemed kind, said all the right things, and put up a great "righteous" front. A few months later I realized how deceived I had been. (He has since passed away or I would not be telling about him!) I became good friends with his assistant who had stayed with him because he had talked her out of over five hundred thousand dollars, and she was "going to get it back or kill him."

People who came to get blessings from him thought he was a translated being. She didn't believe that, but she knew that he had incredible powers of mind control that he used on women who came to him. One of these women lived in Logan. He would send out to her mind the message to come to him. So in the middle of the night she would leave her husband and children, drive to Salt Lake City and meet him at a hotel where he'd have his way with her.

This woman finally left his employ, but he continually sent things to her mind, trying to get her to do things to herself or others. She learned how to shield herself from him, which worked

Conquering Spiritual Evil

most of the time; though when she became fearful, he was able to get through to her.

This is what Denise wrote in her book:

“I wish I could say this really loud; WE DON’T GIVE OUR AGENCY TO OTHER PEOPLE, EVER! If we do, they can control us, and there are many people out there that do this type of thing. There are spiritual vampires that look for people that will give them their agency. When we give our agency away, we give these people our energy, our power.

Satanic people do this all the time — whether on this side of the veil or the other side as demons or devils. Besides having a dark aura, some satanic people on this side have a spiritual snake up their spine. They are bad people. They think they can hide from others. I see them all the time. They are in every **church**, every business and government and do really bad things to other people. It will be nice when they are all finally gone from the earth.”

I had a man call me from out of State that had a very interesting story to tell about a woman in his Ward.

“One evening after getting home from work, before I had a chance to change out of my work clothes, there was a knock at the door. Upon opening the door, I found a woman from my ward standing there that lived just around the corner from me. She looked very upset and agitated. In an urgent voice she explained that she needed a blessing and asked if I would give her one. I asked her what was going on, and she explained that there was an evil spirit that was bothering her.

As I questioned her further, she began to reveal to me that she had invited this spirit in order to receive information and answers to questions that

Conquering Spiritual Evil

she would ask him and in so doing over the course of a few months, had experienced a sense of power and amusement from the process. She explained that another woman in the ward had introduced her to the method to invite spirits and get instruction from them. She explained that all had been going well, and she was really excited about getting answers to her questions but that little by little this spirit had been exerting more and more power over her physically. Rather than just giving her answers and advice, the spirit was taking slow control and it had reached a point where she was losing control of her body and her amusement was now turning to fear.

She asked me again if I could give her a blessing and cast it out. I found the whole thing rather disconcerting and was more than a little apprehensive, but seeing her urgent need, I invited her in.

After bringing her a chair and getting her seated, I asked her full name and prepared with some trepidation to lay my hands on her [head], she began to speak to the spirit and warned it that 'Now you're going to be in trouble, now that the priesthood is here,' going on like that for a few moments.

Then, laying my hands on her head, I began the blessing and stated words something to the effect of, 'By the power of the Melchizedek priesthood and in the name of Jesus Christ I lay my hands upon you and I cast out the evil spirit that resides within you.'

She drew in a sharp breath and said, 'He's gone!'

I closed the blessing thinking to myself, 'Well that wasn't so hard,' but the moment I removed my hands from her head, she drew in another quick breath and went kind of rigid and exclaimed, 'He's back!'

Conquering Spiritual Evil

I laid my hands upon her again and repeated the command and she said, 'He's gone again.' This cycle was repeated a few more times but with the same result, except for a mounting sense of conflict and agitation going on between her and the spirit and a rising sense of trepidation in my own mind. Finally I laid one hand on her head and raised my right arm to the square and began to say the words, 'In the name of Jesus Christ I command you to depart,' repeating them over and over.

The whole time this was going on, she was writhing in the chair and her head and legs were jerking about uncontrollably while she yelled and screamed at him to leave, while declaring to me when the spirit had left her or re-entered her body which happened each time I removed my hand. Needless to say I was more than a little shaken and was beginning to feel quite a bit of fear about the whole situation. Finally I broke off the blessing, and she again affirmed that the spirit had entered her body again. Feeling defeated, I decided that there was nothing more in my power that I could do by myself but to call for some help.

I called the Bishop of our ward but was not successful in reaching him. I then called the 1st counselor and briefly explained the situation, and he informed me he would be over soon.

While we waited, the sister sat on my couch and continued her harangue with the spirit. He was in apparent control of her body as she jerked and twitched and writhed as she sat there having her battle with him. I was very upset and disconcerted about the whole situation and found myself wanting her to leave my house because of the possibility of the spirit taking up residence within it. I invited her to go outside with me, and we stood in the yard in front of my house where she and the spirit continued their battle. It began to escalate as she assured the spirit that now it would be in real

Conquering Spiritual Evil

trouble since the 'Big Guns' were on their way. The spirit had control of her body to the extent that he would force her to run in a circle with her off balance to one side so that she would run in an ever tightening circle until she fell down on the ground and began to kick and writhe while she continued to inveigh against the spirit. Then she would get on all fours and stand up again, trying to remain in control, but the same scene would repeat itself. I began to worry more about the neighbors seeing this spectacle on my lawn than about the spirit, so I suggested we go back inside where she retired to the couch again with the same result as before. After twenty minutes or so, I saw the First Counselor arrive, bringing with him the Elders Quorum President. With the news of their arrival, both the woman and the spirit seemed to become immediately subdued.

Greeting them at the door, I quickly and briefly tried to explain what had just transpired. I felt shaken, sheepish and beaten by my inability to cast out the spirit, and as I related this information to them, their response to me . . . was a look of revulsion, contempt and disgust, and the tone of their looks and voices was as if to say 'Why did you even get mixed up in this whole affair to begin with?'

As the woman was seated and they prepared to lay their hands on her, I slunk to the couch and waited to see what would happen, while noting again their contemptuous glances in my direction. As I had observed before, she and the spirit had remained perfectly still the whole time up till then, but I fully expected that they would momentarily be in full conflict again as before, when I had singly laid my hands on her.

I found it to be a very strange thing to behold that she remained as placid and calm as if she were about to be set apart as a secretary in the

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Sunday School. As I watched and listened, they spoke words of admonition and advice, but they never spoke words of command or priesthood power to the spirit, and I suppose there was really no reason why they should have believed that there was a spirit, as serenely as she sat there. As the blessing began to near its close and was finished, I witnessed her begin to slowly shake her head back and forth, which I clearly understood to be an indication that she knew the spirit was still in possession of her body and had not been cast out.

She could still sense its presence; it just was not acting malevolently against her at that moment. She stood up, shook their hands, paid polite deference to them, listened to their admonishments, said thank you, and left as if nothing was wrong and all was right and well again with the world. At least that is how those two priesthood holders would have perceived it.

Presently, they had all departed leaving me to contemplate the strange and fearful experience I had just had.

I tried to shake off the feelings of pain and discomfort concerning the whole ordeal over the next few weeks and was soon doing better, but not long after I heard some chilling news that snapped the whole affair back into sharp and excruciating focus.

The news was being spread that the woman had been arrested for attempted murder and that it was her teen-aged daughter that she had tried to kill. As the details unfolded, it was revealed that she had continued to be plagued by the evil spirit until one night she had been awakened in the middle of the night with the evil spirit telling her that her daughter was very evil, which continued with such insistence and power until she was ultimately convinced by, or was under such control by the evil spirit that she got up, went to the kitchen, procured a large knife and

Conquering Spiritual Evil

then proceeded to her daughter's bedroom where she attacked her daughter while she slept.

At the woman's trial she claimed that she heard voices tell her that her daughter was extremely evil and that she needed to be killed. She was ordered to have a mental evaluation which found her to be insane and she was committed to a mental institution."

This story so clearly illustrates how the woman gave up her agency to a spirit in exchange for answers to her questions and the "power" she felt the spirits gave her. The exchange the spirits required was control of her body and then her soul. Not only was her life destroyed, so were other people's lives because she sought power and answers that spirits could give her.

When I was first told this story, I thought the spirits were able to get back into her because she did not shield herself. Later, after talking to the man who told me the story and reading the event again, I realized that the spirits were hiding in her, pretending to be gone. It would have required someone with great discernment to find it, just as Joseph talks about, and then use Priesthood power to expel it because of the integration of the woman and the evil spirit.

The story also shows how we as Priesthood holders and leaders need to be open. Just because something we are presented with is outside what we have encountered and experienced doesn't mean it isn't real. To treat a fellow priesthood holder with a "look of revulsion, contempt, and disgust" isn't how the Lord would deal with a similar situation either. The Lord clearly sates, "No power or influence can or ought to be maintained by virtue of the priesthood, only by persuasion, by long-suffering, by gentleness and meekness, and by love unfeigned; by kindness, and pure knowledge, which shall greatly enlarge the soul without hypocrisy, and without guile." (D&C 121:41-42) We ought to look at ourselves and determine now how we might act in a similar situation. Would we be like

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Him? If we act in judgment instead of love, would that then allow the adversary power over us and the opportunity to control or influence us? Does that allow him in?

So, this is another major way the adversary gets his power -- **we give it to him.** It is how he gets into our lives; we allow him in. Denise has always said that public schools, especially Jr. High and High School are places where many demons hang out because many of our children are willing to give up their agency to others just to be part of the crowd and fit in. Peer pressure is real, and children will do irrational things in order to belong to a group and not be cast out. The sad thing is that when they do give up their agency, the adversary strengthens the temptations, and many give in to his enticements.

I have heard of people who “channel” spirits. This means they are inviting the spirit into their body or mind so the spirit can speak through them. In other words, you become a “channel” for the spirit to speak through.

I know of a Stake girls’ camp where the young women would perform what they thought was a joke in order to scare the younger girls. They would make a new girl lay on the ground tell her that she was to “channel Aunt Jemimah”. Then a different girl would sit on a chair that straddled her. The idea was to be scary and pretend to “channel” the spirit.

At this particular camp the girl on the ground was extremely “open” spiritually and had some entities actually go into her when she “channeled” Aunt Jemimah. She started to convulse and was foaming at the mouth. The young women leaders thought she was just fooling around. Because the leaders believed she was just pretending, they would not allow anyone to come near her or help her in any way. One of the men that were attending the camp as a priesthood leader said he thought it might be possession. That was quickly dismissed by the others.

This experience illustrates how children give in to peer pressure and how peer pressure can even come from adults. But

Conquering Spiritual Evil

the main point is that we don't really believe we can have problems with the adversary or his demons; that it is not possible to become possessed. I would be very careful about being part of or having a "channeling" experience intended as a joke or not. When we voice things, inviting beings to come in, we can open ourselves to all kinds of problems.

Channeling can be extremely deceptive and dangerous. Those spirits that come through a channel usually present themselves as some advanced spirit of enlightenment that has come to tell you how "over there" really is or give you advice about your life. They will use some famous Christian name or that of an Eastern mystic. Seldom do they channel as "Bob" or some other common name. Many times they will put themselves above Jesus or just say he was a great teacher and not the Christ. Many represent eastern ways of thought and will put their masters such as Buddha over Jesus. They may tell you many truths in order to insert one falsehood to get you off track. Most will talk of and tell you of your past lives. Many channeled spirits will tell you they see this mortal world from a better perspective or a higher level than we do, and they have much wisdom to impart gained from millennia of experiences through many lifetimes on this earth. In our exuberance we might willingly accept the "wisdom" from these beings of supposedly higher ethereal realms and believe all they tell us to be "infallible utterances." Where are these beings really from, and whom do they really represent?

The other question I have is why would God want us to learn from a channeled book or being when we haven't taken seriously what He has already given us? As a church we still stand under condemnation for not taking the Book of Mormon seriously and learning from it. A couple of readings aren't enough. It must be studied, learned from, and then what is learned put into action; it is the "fullness of the gospel of Jesus Christ." If we don't want to stand condemned then we can't afford to be dabbling in questionable and dangerous practices.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

We must follow the pattern the Lord has set in the scriptures. He uses dreams, visions, angels, and the still small voice. His pattern is to read the scriptures and study them out in our minds and hearts. Then we ask our Father in the name of Christ to help us understand or to gain an enlarged testimony of truth. We are to learn through the Spirit. “Verily, verily, I say unto you, I will impart unto you of my Spirit, which shall enlighten your mind and fill your soul with joy.” (D&C 11:13) and “Learn of me, and listen to my words; walk in the meekness of my Spirit, and you shall have peace in me.” (D&C 19:23) He offers us “joy” and “peace.” He will teach us line upon line or with great visions, whatever we are ready for and have merited.

Modern revelation has told us the best way to learn is by the Spirit. But it does not say the “spirits.” We have been commanded to learn from the scriptures and from the Spirit or Lord. His Spirit will enlighten our minds as we “listen to [His] words.” I would much prefer to learn from the true Master instead of the “masters” that parade around with all of their wisdom because none of them can get us back to the Father. So why should we bother with the other “masters” and end up far below the Celestial realms?

Joseph Smith said that some revelation is of man, some of the adversary, and some of God. We just need to make sure what source our information is coming from.

I am not implying that we are not to ask for help from other world beings, Celestial or otherwise. We have been told that we should ask for help from angels of light. Our ancestors are waiting to help us with genealogy, etc. We need to be very careful with things like channeling, however, where spirits are invited to come and talk **through** us.

Darkness will try to enter our lives any way it can. The most important thing we can do is to stay Christ-centered. When we make Him the most important thing in our life and seek to do His will at all times (like He sought to do the Fathers’ will), we will stand a much better chance of keeping all evil at bay. Like Elder

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Holland just said in conference, it's tough being on Satan's team all week and trying to take off his jersey and put on the Lord's. It just doesn't work.

COVENANTS AND CORDS

The Lord has stated:

“ . . . All covenants, contracts, bonds, obligations, oaths, vows, performances, connections, associations, or expectations, that are not made and entered into and sealed by the Holy Spirit of promise, . . . are of no efficacy, virtue, or force in and after the resurrection from the dead; for all contracts that are not made unto this end have an end when men are dead.” (D&C 132:7)

Since the Lord has also stated that “there is opposition in all things,” it seems that there would also be opposites to the Lord’s covenants, contracts, bonds, etc. For example, a group of witches is called a “coven.” It has the same root as “covenant” which is a formal, binding agreement. Evil groups are very precise in the ordinances they perform when they make covenants just as righteous groups are. They understand the power that it gives them. And believe me, it does give them power. That is one reason so many people are involved in dark practices; they desire power. This is not some fabricated idea from Hollywood intended to frighten us. It is very real, and we mortals are here to choose what “camp” we want to be in -- one is life; the other is death.

Just recently I was in an LDS home that was “haunted”. The couple told me that when the neighbor’s child found out, he was thrilled because, he said, the spirits could make them rich. In fact his parents were following the spirits and doing what they say in order to get rich. This would be like giving up your car keys, your house keys, and any other keys you might have, to a stranger so that he is in total control of you.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

In a previous chapter I related the story about the woman who sought a blessing from the hands of her neighbor who knew she had demons in her. They had come in because she had literally invited them. She had been taught how to do “automatic writing” by someone in her ward. She would invite spirits into her body and let them write things down on paper. They would tell her what to do and give her information about other people. At first she had liked the “power” she felt this information gave her. Gradually she began to feel the weight of the control of these demons and wanted out. The only problem was they wouldn’t leave, and no one seemed to understand the problem or how she might have been helped.

Once, after I had voiced a blessing to a woman, she told me that she had attended “meetings” in which they got in a circle and said and did things of a negative nature. Then she said that much of what they did was aimed at me and my family. She admitted that she had been “mind controlled” (her words, not mine).

It was during one of these attacks on me and my family that a good friend showed up because the Lord had sent her. (This woman is without any veils). She saw us all sitting in the living room unable to function. After studying us for a moment, she explained that we were under a severe spiritual attack by those who knew exactly what they were doing. Therefore, she needed to ask for warrior angels to come and stop the attacks immediately because these people were doing dark ordinances against us. I can testify they were very real.

The Lord has His ordinances as well. He teaches us that even the Aaronic Priesthood “has power in administering outward ordinances.” (D&C 107:14) The Melchizedek Priesthood has the greater power and which is found in higher ordinances. Speaking of this Priesthood He said: “Therefore, in the ordinances thereof, the power of godliness is manifest. And without the ordinances thereof, and the authority of the priesthood, the power of godliness is not manifest unto men in the flesh.” (D&C 84:20-21) My

Conquering Spiritual Evil

former bishop always told us to go to the temple and “come out endowed with power.” I now understand what he meant.

Another way that evil can enter our bodies is through the use of spiritual cords. A spiritual cord can be likened to the umbilical cord. This physical cord allows nutrition and oxygen to pass from the mother to the unborn baby. Since the Lord declared that to Him all things are spiritual first, we probably also have a spiritual umbilical cord attached to us from our mother. When an older person seems to still be emotionally connected to his or her mother, we might say that “it is time to cut the apron strings” or the “umbilical cord.” Those attachments are spiritual in nature, and the energy can go either way until it seems that the energy of one is being used by the other. This energy stealing can happen between two people any time between pregnancy and adulthood. Most of the time this is subconscious, and the mother really does not mean to do it. However, if this energy drain continues into adulthood, it can create deep-seated emotional problems.

This is just one example of how we can interact through a cord. An example of a good cord would be that of a couple who is righteous before the Lord. As they express closeness in their relationship, a cord develops between them. Denise talked about the cords she sees between husbands and wives in her book *In His Arms*:

“One of my favorite things to look at spiritually is the connection between a husband and wife. There is a spiritual connection I see from the man’s heart to the heart of his wife. It also goes from her heart to his. It is like a ‘tube of light’, kind of. I don’t have the ability to really describe what it looks like. It is ‘light’ though and also is alive or living.

There are different colors to it, depending on where the man and the woman are in their relationship to each other and to God. The closer

Conquering Spiritual Evil

they become like Heavenly Father and Heavenly Mother, the closer to a gold color it becomes. The more they listen to the adversary and have a terrible marriage, the closer to black or darkness it becomes.” (pp. 158-159)

A man came into our restaurant once who could see energies. When my wife came into the restaurant, he asked me if she was my wife. I asked how he knew. He said that he could see a spiritual cord between us from heart to heart. What an extraordinary witness to what the Lord does for us and how He allows us to connect with our spouse.

So cords of light or cords of darkness can be created between individuals or groups that have emotional ties and relationships. Family, friends, people you work with, and even enemies can all have cords between them. Cords of light or darkness are created both subconsciously or consciously. Dark entities, mortal or not, will use cords to bind us to them and drain our energy. They can also transmit things to us through them. Dark mortals can send cords into our energy to control and use us or even find things out about us. This is, of course, evil and should never be done. It is against God’s laws to purposely control or affect someone else’s energy without their permission. Demons and devils use them to control and cause emotional, physical, and spiritual problems.

If you don’t feel right, feel out of sorts, are anxious, nervous for no reason, or have pain in a “strange” place ask in humble prayer for the Spirit to guide you. Ask if you have any attachments of a negative nature causing the problems. It could be anything from a negative entity to a cord attachment problem.

If we had a contract or obligation with someone and failed on our end or the other person failed on his end, the resulting negative feelings could result in a cord attached between the two parties. **Repentance and asking forgiveness** is vital in order to sever the negative attachment between the parties. The Lord has

Conquering Spiritual Evil

stated that we are “to forgive one another; for he that forgiveth not his brother his trespasses standeth condemned before the Lord.” (D&C 64:9) Perhaps the best way to get rid of negative cords is to forgive the other person and ask for forgiveness for ourselves. Then go to the Lord in prayer and tell Him what you have done, that you have asked for forgiveness for your trespasses and forgiven them of theirs, after which **you ask Him to cut the negative cord** that existed between you and the other person. In addition forgiving others He has told us:

“But behold I say unto you, love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them who despitefully use you and persecute you.” (3 Nephi 12:44)

If we do more than just forgive those that hate and despise us, if we love, bless, do good, and pray for them, the cords will not bind us or exist between us. Those that try to attach them will not be able to do so. We will be protected in Christ.

Cords can exist when a marriage dissolves, especially a temple marriage. There will still be cords of attachment between the two parties. At one time these were cords of love, honor, and respect, but most likely those have dissolved and have been replaced by negative cords. When cords of resentment and all other negative energies remain, they must be removed or they will be carried through this life into the next. This is a spiritual connection, and when one of the parties dies, they can still cause problems through this connection while in the spirit world. Also, dark entities can use these cords to enter our bodies. They will do their best to keep the negative energies between the two parties alive and thriving, thus feeding themselves and allowing them to grow stronger in us.

Furthermore, we must clear ourselves from all former **negative**, dark covenants, contracts, bonds, obligations, oaths,

Conquering Spiritual Evil

vows, performances, connections, associations, etc. while in this life. Use of the atonement (repenting and asking forgiveness) is vital to our eternal salvation in this regard. These same principles can be applied if you feel you have **dark** covenants, contracts, bonds, obligations, oaths, vows, performances, connections, associations, etc. that are connected to you.

If you feel you have cords attached to you that are of a dark nature, it is important to get rid of them. These dark, evil cords absolutely need to be cut. Some cords are not of a dark nature but still need to be severed. I mentioned previously the story about the man in the hospital that had attached cords to me that weren't of a dark nature. He was just confused. They still needed to be cut, as they had caused confusion in my mind for days. All negative cords can be cut with a priesthood blessing, by someone that does energy work, or by yourself using weapons of light. (Explained in the Weapons of Light chapter). You can use a spiritual sword and cut them, or just use your imagination and create some scissors. Use them to cut the cords that are attached to you. These are ways we can become clean before the Lord.

It is absolutely necessary to clear ourselves of all negative and dark energies, entities, including evil covenants and binding cords. All of this clearing is to be done in the name of Jesus Christ, and we are to follow the Spirit while doing so.

IMPS AND OTHER ODDITIES

I remember watching cartoons in which the main character had a little angel on one shoulder and a little devil on the other shoulder. They were each trying to influence him. Of course it was a cartoon, so it wasn't real. At least that was my childhood supposition.

Ron Poulton discussed the “promptings” we get from the adversary:

“The principal tool of the adversary is a “prompting,” a thought which passes through a person's mind. It is within the dominion allotted the adversary that he has power to suggest things to our minds, invitations to entertain that which is contrary to the will of God. The most subtle temptations come in an individual way, as personal promptings to do wrong. And certainly, as is evident from his assault on our senses, the adversary understands that one picture can be worth ten thousand words when teaching how to sin. Brigham Young confirmed that our thoughts can be caused, in some sense, by our interactions with external forces. He said:

The origin of thought was planted at the beginning of our being. This is not telling you how it came there, or who put it there. Thought originated with our individual being, which is organized as independent as any being in eternity.

The origin of thought and reflection is in ourselves. We think,

Conquering Spiritual Evil

because we are, and are made susceptible of external influences, and to feel our relationship to external objects. Thus thoughts of revenge and thoughts of blessing will arise in the same mind, as it is influenced by external circumstances.” (JD, 2:135) (Poulton, pp. 15-16)

A while ago I had the opportunity to talk with an eighteen-year-old girl whose veil had suddenly dropped allowing her to see the spirit world. She told me many stories about what it was like to suddenly have spiritual sight.

One of her first experiences was when she was in the grocery store with her mother. They were in the produce section which was right next to the liquor section, when she noticed a man pushing an empty cart next to her. What really got her attention was the fact that this man had an Imp on his shoulder whispering into his mind. The Imp was telling the man to forget about groceries, that he should load up on beer and have a party at his home that night.

She watched in absolute fascination as he whirled his cart around and went straight to the liquor section, loaded up with beer, and headed to the checkout stand. She was shocked that he had obeyed what the Imp was telling him to do!

Joseph stated:

“There are three independent principles—the spirit of God, the spirit of man, and the spirit of the devil. **All men have power to resist the devil.** They who have tabernacles have power over those who have not.” (May 16, 1841, William Clayton’s Private Book, Emphasis added)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

This same girl told me of going on a date with a young man. During the date she was stunned to see an Imp on his shoulder telling him what to tell her. The boy repeated verbatim what the Imp told him to say. She told him that what he had just said was a lie but he assured her that it was the complete truth. The young woman never dated him again.

Imps are lesser demons, small in size, of various shapes, created by Satan, and trained by his demons. They are vicious, manipulative, and love to tempt those that are greedy, foolish, and gullible. My gifted friends have told me how they seem to come with one purpose and that is all they do, but they are very good at it. I have told the story of a small devil (Imp) that would stab my thigh every time I judged someone. He was quite easy to cast off. One gifted friend likes to punch them off of her. The one on me did his task and that was all he did—stabbed me every time I judged someone. I would cast him off, and then when I judged someone, he would immediately come back and stab me.

Other Imps cause irritation, short tempers, and all manner of negative emotions. They will try to get us to do things that aren't right or could cause us problems, like having a beer party. When a small child gets one on them, it can cause hyper-activity. As I said, they are not created with much intelligence, but are very effective at what they do.

They are also considered as “cannon fodder” by Satan and his demons. This kind is usually a small, round, black, fuzzy creature that scurries along quite fast. When coming through a portal into this world, they will send the Imps out first to see what happens to them. If they are destroyed, it isn't any concern.

There are more than Imps that are sent to destroy us. All classes and variety are trained by Satan and his leaders to cause us problems. They are very powerful and extremely competent at what they are assigned to do to us. If they fail at their assignment, they are taken back to hell and tortured. (Don't let that bother you; the only way they can succeed is by you going to hell through

Conquering Spiritual Evil

obedience to them). There are many of these evil entities named in the scriptures: false spirits (D&C 50:2); lying spirit (Alma 30:42); spirit of fear (2 Timothy 1:7); spirit of whoredoms (Hosea 4:12); contentions (Mosiah 2:32; 3 Nephi 11:29); spirit of jealousy (Numbers 5:14); and many others.

If the prompting is good and holy, it is from a divine source; if it is harmful and against righteous principles, it is quite assuredly an evil spirit sent from Satan. A good example is when we feel like we aren't worthy to pray or we shouldn't pray. ". . . for the evil spirit teacheth not a man to pray, but teacheth him that he must not pray." (2 Nephi 32:8) When encountered or felt, it is best to dispose of them immediately. Ron Poulton shared some wise advice in his paper when he said "The scriptures give several descriptions of the strategies used by the devil to implement his cunning plan. He executes his plan carefully (2 Nephi 28:21). He urges all to abuse their agency that he may come and take 'away light and truth, through disobedience' (D&C 93:39). He will fulfill, at least in some measure and for some period of time, his promise of easy happiness in sin (3 Nephi 27:11; Alma 30:60). He leads at a pace calculated to pacify and lull into carnal security by whispering that 'all is well' (2 Nephi 28:21). He emboldens with false and vain and foolish doctrines (2 Nephi 28:9). He urges all to contend with one another over truth, according to their own learning (2 Nephi 28:4). He denies there is a God and claims that all power is given to man (2 Nephi 28:5). He denies the justice of God and teaches that mercy will overcome justice (2 Nephi 28:8). He 'flattereth away and telleth them' that there is no devil nor hell (2 Nephi 28:22). He 'whispereth' in their ears, until he grasps them with his awful chains' (2 Nephi 28:22). (pp. 14-15)

We also create positive and negative thought entities. When we have a thought, and put emotion to that thought, it is created as a spiritual entity. (Moses 3:5) If the thought is evil or of a dark nature, it will condemn us. That is why the Lord said we will be condemned not only for our works, but also for our thoughts.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

(Alma 12:14) All of the dark evil thoughts of mankind are created spiritually and many of them are floating around “looking” for something to attach to. They seek areas of lower vibration or darkness. If our aura is “down,” we don’t have shields around us, or we are negative, they are attracted to us, and can attach to us. These “entities” can then attract other forms of darkness and create an entry way for them to attach to or go into us.

There is another kind of dark entity that is being unleashed on mankind at this moment. Earlier, the doctrine of “opposition in all things” was briefly discussed. Brigham Young said “Men and women never could be prepared to be judged and condemned out of their own mouths . . . without the power both of God and the devil. **We are obliged to know and understand them, one as well as the other, in order to prepare us for the day that is coming, and for our exaltation.** Some of you may think that this is a curious principle, but it is true. . . . **We must know the evil in order to know the good. There must needs be an opposition in all things.**” (Vol. 4, pp. 372-73; emphasis added). It was briefly mentioned that in order to see angels, we must see their opposite. In order to see the Lord, we will be visited by His opposite. Satan has set up his kingdoms, as has the Father. There truly is opposition in ALL things.

After Cain killed Abel, and was confronted by God, he was told that he would “be a fugitive and a vagabond in the earth.” The Lord then “set a mark upon Cain, lest any finding him should kill him.” (Moses 5:40) In our LDS “lore” we are told that Cain wanders the earth. Hatch (2008) relates David Patten’s experience with Cain as told by President Joseph F. Smith:

“It was in the evening, just twilight, when Brother Patten rode up to my father’s house, alighted from his mule and came into the house. The family immediately observed that his countenance was quite changed. My mother having first noticed his changed appearance said: ‘Brother

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Patten, are you sick?’ He replied that he was not, but had just met with a very remarkable personage who had represented himself as being Cain, who murdered his brother, Abel. He went on to tell the circumstances as near as I can recall in the following language: ‘As I was riding along the road on my mule I suddenly noticed a very strange personage walking beside me. He walked along – beside me for about two miles. His head was about even with my shoulder as I sat in my saddle. He wore no clothing, but was covered with hair. His skin was very dark. I asked him where he dwelt and he replied that he had no home, that he was a wanderer in the earth and traveled to and fro. He said he was a very miserable creature, that he had earnestly sought death during his sojourn upon the earth, but that he could not die, and his mission was to destroy the souls of men. About the time he expressed himself thus, I rebuked him in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and by virtue of the Holy Priesthood, and commanded him to go hence, and he immediately departed out of my sight. When he left me I found myself near your house.’”

Brother Hatch goes on to say: “There has been much debate among Church members as to whether God cursed Cain to roam the earth until the Second Coming. Some feel that David Patten’s account of seeing and speaking with Cain in 1835 adds evidence to the theory that Cain continues to roam the earth. **Doctrinal and logical evidence**, however, supports the argument that Cain does not continue to walk the earth. Two suppositions would support this idea; 1) God would probably not have translated Cain and given him a terrestrial body just so he could remain on the earth, e.g., like John the Beloved; and 2) unless Cain were translated, how would he have survived the flood? Therefore, it is possible that David Patten saw Cain’s spirit in vision, rather than seeing him as a translated being.” (pp. 295-96, emphasis added)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

There is no argument if Br. Hatch wants to declare this idea as his “supposition,” which he did. But he also stated that “doctrinal and logical evidence” supports his supposition, but he never gives us any “doctrinal” evidence. And whose logic supports his idea that David Patten saw Cain in the “spirit in vision”? Also, I would never dare “suppose” what God “would probably not have” done. That takes great courage. God has stated that His thoughts are not like ours and neither are His ways. (Isaiah 55:8)

The scriptures and the prophets state that there is opposition in ALL things. If we have translated beings of light like John the Beloved, the Three Nephites, and “holy men that [we] know not of” (D&C 49:8) on the earth, would not that doctrine require us to have their opposite, meaning translated beings of darkness on the earth too? Cain is the perfect example. Would not “logic” also require such a thing? When this idea first came to me, I prayed about it and received my answer. Then I approached several of my sighted friends for a second witness. Their response was that yes, Cain is very dark spiritually, and yes, he walks the earth, cannot die, and this is because he is **translated in darkness**. I will not speculate how this happens or is possible. I will just say that it matches the pattern of opposition in ALL things. In my own mind, and after much deep thought and prayer, I received a witness of the truth of this concept. Then I asked for a second witness and received that.

These sighted friends also said that Satan is releasing these beings now – all the more reason to stay Christ-centered at all times. There has never been a greater need for us to stay on His path and use Him as our guide, and example. Personal revelation is essential. You will not be able to use the Brethren, local leaders, your mother-in-law, or the mailman. There is no such thing as collective salvation; it is individual between you and the Lord. Therefore, personal revelation will be the only way for the righteous to survive what will be coming at them.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Chapter Twenty-five

PURE EVIL

I received the following email and with the writer's permission I will quote parts of it:

“. . . About eighteen months ago our daughter had some experiences that left her with the ability to see demons and so on. We gave her your books so that she could gain an understanding in what she was seeing as well as to be able to relate to someone who was experiencing what she was experiencing. She has been blessed that we were able to find people that could help her understand what was happening to her. She is a lovely girl who will be graduating from high school in the next two weeks.

The reason that I am writing is that we bought an old LDS church to use as our home and we also use the Chapel area for my husband's [business]. Anyway, unbeknownst to us when we bought it, it had been used for satanic ritual. Every level of the building had a blood sacrifice done in it. It has many portals that we can't seem to keep closed. Everything that we do or have tried doesn't last. It has been rededicated so many times that we couldn't begin to count them. We have tried everything that we know or that anyone has suggested. It used to last for a few days and then things would start back in. Lately, it has gotten really bad. Everyone is getting marked up, having devices put on them and scratches that don't heal up unless the priesthood is used. The numbers of demons and unclean spirits that are taking up residence are innumerable. Anything that we do

Conquering Spiritual Evil

makes it worse for us. I keep having the feeling that it can't be kept clear until we can close the portals. You mentioned some people in your book called "Possibilities" that work with people who need help with demons and unclean spirits. I don't know if they know how to close portals or if we just need to give up and leave. I know as it is now, that we could never sell the building to anyone else. Our daughter is always exhausted living in this house where she is bothered all night long."

When I called them, they told me more about what was going on and pled for any help anyone could offer. Within the week I was heading to their home. There is no way that I would consider myself to be someone that could fix their problem, so I called several gifted friends that I knew could offer some advice and help. I also referred to the scriptures to see what they offered.

"And Satan said unto Cain: Swear unto me by thy throat, and if thou tell it thou shalt die; and swear thy brethren by their heads, and by the living God, that they tell it not; for if they tell it, they shall surely die; and this that thy father may not know it; and this day I will deliver thy brother Abel into thine hands. And Satan sware unto Cain that he would do according to his commands. And all these things were done in secret." (Moses 5:29-30)

Here Cain is being taught satanic doctrines and murder, and he passed it onto his posterity. One of Cain's posterity said:

". . . Hear my voice, ye wives of Lamech, hearken unto my speech; for I have slain a man to my wounding, and **a young man to my hurt**. . . For Lamech having entered into a covenant with Satan, after the manner of Cain, wherein he became Master Mahan, **master of that great secret which was**

Conquering Spiritual Evil

administered unto Cain by Satan; and Irad, the son of Enoch, having known their secret, began to reveal it unto the sons of Adam. Wherefore Lamech, being angry, slew him, not like unto Cain, his brother, Abel, for the sake of getting gain, but he **slew him for the oath's sake.** For, from the days of Cain, there was a secret combination, and their works were in the dark, and they knew every man his brother. Wherefore the Lord cursed Lamech, and his house, and **all them that had covenanted with Satan;** for they kept not the commandments of God, and it displeased God, and he ministered not unto them, and **their works were abominations,** and began to spread among all the sons of men. And it was among the sons of men.” (Moses 5:47-52, emphasis added)

I knew these things were from Satan through covenants with oaths attached. Their works were “abominations” which would mean the most heinous, dark perversions imaginable. They slew men and “a young man” or children. So we have the introduction of satanic sacrifice during our earliest history.

Then we have the history of Abraham:

“My fathers, having turned from their righteousness, and from the holy commandments, which the Lord their God had given unto them, unto the worshiping of the gods of the heathen, utterly refused to hearken to my voice; for their hearts were set to do evil. . . Therefore they turned their hearts to the **sacrifice of the heathen in offering up their children unto these dumb idols.** . . Now, at this time it was the custom of the priest of Pharaoh, the king of Egypt, to offer up upon the altar which was built in the land of Chaldea, for the offering unto these strange gods, **men, women, and children. . . Even the thank-offering of a child did the priest of Pharaoh offer upon the**

Conquering Spiritual Evil

altar which stood by the hill called Potiphar's Hill, at the head of the plain of Olishem. Now, this priest had offered upon this altar three virgins at one time, who were the daughters of Onitah, one of the royal descent directly from the loins of Ham. **These virgins were offered up because of their virtue;** they would not bow down to worship gods of wood or of stone, therefore they were killed upon this altar, and it was done after the manner of the Egyptians." (Abraham 1:5-11)

The Old Testament also has accounts of nations and even Israel that offered human sacrifice. It has been prevalent in many cultures throughout time. Most are familiar with the Incas and their human sacrifices through Hollywood movies. Hawaiians even sacrificed some of the early explorers and conquerors of their lands. This has been a familiar motif in nearly all societies from ancient times until now. Our government even sacrificed Native Americans by giving them blankets with smallpox all over them in order to eradicate the "problem."

Why do we have the idea that these were ancient barbaric practices done by paganistic people? It's just like the LDS therapists who told my friend when asked how they deal with satanic possession in their practices that "They didn't really understand how the mind worked two thousand years ago like we do today." We have this proud idea that we are so much more intellectual and sophisticated than they were anciently, so we would never have these kinds of satanic sacrifices today.

Adam was far more advanced in his relationship to God than we are today. He walked with Him in the garden and knew Him. Yet Cain immediately introduced pure evil into his posterity who then perpetuated it. We are not immune; we have the same problem today. It has been with this earth through all of our history. Satan is the same today, with the same practices and dark

Conquering Spiritual Evil

arts. He does not change what has worked for millennia for those of a dark and evil nature.

On July 19, 1990, Elder Glenn L. Pace, then a counselor in the Presiding Bishopric, sent a memo to the “Strengthening Church Members Committee” on the subject of “Ritualistic Child Abuse.” This is in part what the memo said.

“[I have] met with sixty victims. That number could be twice or three times as many if I did not discipline myself to only one meeting per week. I have not wanted my involvement with this issue to become a handicap in fulfilling my assigned responsibilities. On the other hand, I felt someone needed to pay the price to obtain an intellectual and spiritual conviction as to the seriousness of this problem within the Church.

Of the sixty victims with whom I have met, fifty-three are female and seven are male.”

He goes on to say much more. It is available on the internet if you wish to research it. The really sad comment is that Satanic Ritualistic Abuse and Sacrifice exists with some of the members of our church, as both perpetrators and victims.

There had been much written and said about satanic or ritualistic child abuse during the 1980’s and into the 1990’s, Elder Pace being one of them, but by 1995 the common consensus was that it was all made up, and the adults were having what they called “false memory syndrome.” Once again the psychologists prevailed with their wisdom, declaring there was no such thing as satanic ritualistic abuse. If you issue an accusation nowadays, you will basically be labeled a crackpot looking for fame or trying to get back at someone you don’t like. The reality lies somewhere in the middle. Of course there is satanic ritualistic abuse, and of course there is false memory syndrome. The adversary is very cunning and

Conquering Spiritual Evil

uses every device possible to confuse us. It requires the Spirit to direct us in these things, just as Joseph counseled.

The purpose of this chapter is not to dwell on this problem or explain in detail what they do. Our purpose is to recognize that these things are real, and they do exist today as they have all throughout the world's history.

If you have the unfortunate experience to walk into such a thing as these people did when they bought the old LDS chapel, it will then become very real to you, too. These things are pure evil.

This family had bought what they thought would be a great place to raise a family and have space for their business. Now they were in the middle of the most malevolent, evil spirits they could ever encounter.

On more than a few occasions I have been around evil spirits and have seen what they can do. Then when I moved to Mt. Pleasant years ago, I met a woman that had been in training to be a high priestess in the satanic cults in the United States. I interviewed her on three separate occasions. She related the most horrific stories about what she had been required to do. She finally walked away from it even though they told her they would kill her if she left. She said to go ahead because she would not participate any more. No one should have to suffer what this woman was made to endure.

Years earlier I had met a woman that had been satanically abused by her parents. She realized it and moved from them. Then one day while talking on the phone to her mother, her mother said a few words to her. They were "trigger" words that activate certain activities or actions previously programmed into her mind. This woman told me she found herself on an airplane flying back east with her children to visit her mother. She did NOT want to do this because she knew that while there her mother would satanically abuse her children, her mother's own grandchildren. But she had no control over herself. (I have watched people use mind control

Conquering Spiritual Evil

on others. After certain things were said or done, the other person was like a zombie and just sat there not moving for hours on end.)

With all this and more in mind I drove to the converted church-home. My gifted friends had given me several suggestions. One told me to make sure I took sage with me in order to smudge the place. I am one-quarter Native American, and I know that smudging works to drive out evil spirits. I wanted all the help I could get. Another friend and I discussed doing a specific ordinance to protect the property, close the portals, and drive the entities away. I also decided it would be a good move to go down fasting and praying. The main reason I knew the Lord wanted me to go was to get an education about “pure evil” because we all need to understand that it is very real. My only problem was I didn’t really want to know how real, but I did want to help this family if possible.

I arrived at the place and talked to them for quite a while. It had started six years ago when they bought the place. The children’s friends slept over one night and watched in fascination as the basketballs rolled all around the gym floor. It was great fun. Electronic toys played all night even after they took the batteries out. Finally they got rid of all the electronic toys. Many other things began to happen. At times they saw earthbound spirits in the house, especially several earthbound children. One young boy would put his face in the corner of the room. Nearly all of their children saw this spirit.

Then two years ago the sixteen-year-old daughter’s veil dropped. That is when the activity escalated. Now the beings on the other side realized she could see them. One was a real nasty earthbound that would push the shower curtain in on her and then watch her get dressed. He even wrote things on the fogged mirror in the bathroom.

She quickly realized that there were entry ways into this building. She watched in horrid fascination as demons would crawl through the “portals” into this world. They would come after her

Conquering Spiritual Evil

from midnight to about four in the morning. One day at school her neck was hurting quite seriously. When she went home, her mother lifted up her hair and found three sixes carved into the back of her neck and also on her hip. They wouldn't heal. Eventually, she asked her father for a priesthood blessing to heal the wounds. But after the blessing the dark activity increased even more. If priesthood was used in the home, the dark entities made the family pay for it. She woke up after this with "X's" carved on her womb and breasts. These wouldn't heal either until she received a priesthood blessing.

The family found people who thought they could help them, so several different things were done, even dedicating and re-dedicating the house. Nothing helped. After a very gifted woman told them that children had been victims of satanic ritualistic sacrifices there, the teen-aged daughter, who had been given spiritual sight, began talking to the earthbound children she had seen. One little girl said she had been sacrificed in the basement and her body thrown in a furnace. The earthbound boy that kept his face in the corner said he was scared of the devils and demons in the place, so he was hiding from them. He, too, had been satanically sacrificed. In all there had been three children this had happened to. The daughter helped all three to move on to the spirit world.

We smudged the entire building from top to bottom with sage. The old chapel had a "cry room" in it, and I just smudged the entry way into that area. Then we did an ordinance that had been suggested by a friend. After that I voiced a priesthood blessing that cast out all of the dark entities. The girl said it was better after it was all done; that it was clean. The family then left to go to a wedding reception.

I still didn't feel good about it and went outside to sit in my car. I called a sighted friend that had looked at the place distantly before I left. She asked if there was a second floor to the building, I said there was. "Well, there is still a portal there that is swirling

Conquering Spiritual Evil

right now.” She suggested I go up there and take care of it. This was something that I really didn’t want to do because I was alone.

I finally “girded up” and went back inside and up the stairs. When I got to the top of the stairs, I knew the portal was in the cry room. That was where one of the satanic sacrifices had occurred. So I raised my arm to the square and in the name of Jesus Christ I cast out. I pulled out my spiritual sword and cut up the portal and all the demons that were still there. Then I asked for angels to come and clean up the remains and the building in general. After doing all of this, I went back outside and called my friend. She “looked” and was amazed at how clean the place was. “What did you do to clean up that portal?” she asked. I told her I used the Lord, a sword, and a few angel friends.

While sitting in the car waiting for this family to come back, I spent some time asking the Spirit some questions. I was shown that the Lord wanted to give this eighteen-year-old girl a gift. It was a sword. The sword was beautiful; I could see it in my mind’s eye. There were jewels in the handle. There was also a pouch that had some things in it that I couldn’t see.

After the family came back and we had spent some time talking, I told the daughter that the Lord had a gift for her, and she should look in front of her to see it. She looked with her spiritual sight and recognized it as a “spiritual sword.” She described the jewels and what it looked like. I explained its use to her. She asked where she should place it, and I told her to ask Him. She did and said, “Oh, it goes on my back.”

Just then she saw a portal open in the hallway. I told her to go make good use of her sword. She closed her eyes and took off in the spirit. A few minutes later she opened her eyes and said, “That was fun. When I cut the demons, they dissolved into powder and then the powder turned into nothing.” She had been given a tool that could help her with this problem in the house.

I left the next day hoping they could get some relief. But alas it was not to be. Within two days it had started all over again. I

Conquering Spiritual Evil

called the sighted friend who was familiar with the problem. She said that the family had two older children who weren't exactly Christ-centered and their attitude and activities were bringing it all back. She went on to explain that because children's blood had been spilt there, it was a satanic temple. It was to be a portal for demons and such to enter into this world. (As we will go through a "tunnel" or portal at death to the light, they also need a portal or tunnel to enter this world.) Burning the building to the ground was one way to close the portals and cleanse the building from the blood of the innocent.

I have come to the understanding that these things are pure evil and are real. The adversary mimics our Lord's rituals. Satan gets his power from us as we go into fear, anger and the rest of the negative emotions. His rituals are also designed to give him power the same as the temple rituals or ceremonies of Light give us power.

“Yea, verily I say unto you, I gave unto you a commandment that you should build a house, in the which house I design to endow those whom I have chosen with power from on high.” (D&C 95:8)

When the father of the family called me a week later, I told him what my friend had said. He agreed that as long as the two older children were in the home, the portals could not be closed. Interesting how we do affect our environment by our choices, either negatively or positively, sometimes to the detriment of those around us.

When we are the victims of such things, it can cause a permanent entry way into our spiritual body which in turn could give us physical and even psychological problems. I read of an energy worker that worked with a woman that was LDS, a returned missionary, and who had the gift of seeing spirits since she was a small child. She told the energy worker that in her first year of college, she had a devil attach itself to her and that it took her three

Conquering Spiritual Evil

years to get rid of it. She told the worker that she had to forgive an abuser before she could expel the devil. She said the pain caused by the abuse made a spiritual hole in her that allowed the devil a place to dwell and because of her anger towards her abuser, she had a large patch of darkness that was also a weakness in her defenses. So this spirit slipped in and lived off of her. This further opened her to other attacks. It was necessary to forgive her abuser in order to close this area of darkness in her. The very act of forgiving allowed the Savior's atonement to take effect and heal her. It is a true principle for all of us. He has declared that we must forgive everyone who offends us in any degree. If we don't forgive, He is unable to forgive us. These are true principles. So forgiveness DOES allow the atonement to take effect. It is required so we can heal spiritually, mentally, emotionally, and physically.

I mentioned before my daughter that worked at a home for sexually abused girls. She and the counselor spoke often about how the girls really could never heal. The counseling programs the girls experienced could only help them in part, seldom completely. The counselor realized that all of the girls had possession problems resulting from the abuse they suffered. Being a facility that received government funding, however, they were never allowed to bring in any kind of spiritual advice or help. My daughter wished they could start by casting out the demons every girl had in and on them and then teach the Gospel of Jesus Christ and the principles of forgiveness, then they might have a chance of completely healing from their "wounds."

This chapter is included to show you that pure evil **does** exist and those that have had the unfortunate circumstance to be touched by it need our understanding and help, not our judgments.

INTRODUCTION TO WEAPONS OF LIGHT

The adversary has many weapons he uses against mankind daily. We have all experienced them without realizing it. I have talked about several weapons in earlier chapters and also in our other books. The level or grade of the demon determines the tools they have available to them. The darker they are and the more like Satan, the darker and more malevolent the tools are. Remember their objective is to cause us as much pain and suffering as possible with the end goal of destroying us. A small impish demon can bother and irritate us but will not be able to cause us much physical harm, similar to the small devil that stabbed my left thigh every time I judged someone. An attack from a more advanced demon may cause us to feel our life is certainly over.

The Lord does not leave us without ways and means of combating the adversary and his minions because the war is literal and has eternal consequences. Mainly, ignorance is not bliss. It pays to know and understand all we can about the adversary and what the Lord has provided for our own defense.

He has stated:

“Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord,
and in the power of his might.

Put on the **whole armour of God**, that ye may be
able to stand against the wiles of the devil.

For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but
against principalities, against powers, against the
rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual
wickedness in high places.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Stand therefore, having your **loins girt about with truth**, and having on the **breastplate of righteousness**;

And your **feet shod** with the preparation of the gospel of peace;

Above all, taking the **shield of faith**, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the **fiery darts of the wicked**.

And take the **helmet of salvation**, and the **sword of the Spirit**, which is the word of God:

Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints.”
(Ephesians 6:10-18)

This advice is also cited in section 27 of the Doctrine and Covenants. If the Lord makes sure it is repeated in two different standard works of His church, we need to pay close attention to the message. **Paul is talking about the armour of God as it relates to a spiritual preparedness for war.** He is telling us that the battles we engage in are not “against flesh and blood” because our adversaries are spiritual beings and, therefore, the war is spiritual. They can and will do “spiritual” things to us that will manifest in our spiritual and physical bodies. We have discussed many examples of this.

Gird your loins, shod your feet, take the helmet and the sword, praying always, and watching are all actions which must be done to have the protection — the armor; it is proactive, not inactive! Pro-active = taking protective or preventative action or measures BEFORE something happens. It is imperative that we understand the spiritual nature of the fight AND understand how to engage the enemy in order to win the war. Many have told me that Christ will win the battle for us. True, He is the general, but we are His soldiers and now is time to get prepared and into the battle. Part of the preparation is to be familiar with the tools He gives us for the battles we are engaged in whether we are conscious of the

Conquering Spiritual Evil

battle or not. Spiritual weapons can stop physical things as well as spiritual. They can destroy physical as well as spiritual, too.

Obviously the greatest weapon or tool of light we can use is the Lord Jesus Christ. Eliza R. Snow (1996) related an experience her brother, Lorenzo Snow, had, where he realized the importance of being proactive and involving the Lord Jesus Christ:

“Not long after Brother [Lorenzo] Snow was appointed to preside over the Church in London, a circumstance occurred which plainly illustrated the interference of evil spirits in human affairs, and most strikingly their use as instruments to oppose the progress of the latter-day work. A band of them undertook to frighten him from his post . . .

At the time referred to, he occupied a well furnished upper room, and directly after his appointment to the presidency, after retiring to bed at night, he was aroused from sleep by the most discordant noises. It seemed as though every piece of furniture in the room was put in motion going . . . back and forth against each other in such terrible fury that sleep and rest were utter impossibilities.

He endured the unceremonious visitation for several nights, each night thinking it was the last, that they would leave as unbidden as they came, until the fact forced itself upon his mind that **so long as he would tamely submit to their aggressions, so long they would continue to repeat them.** Something must be done. **He must claim the right of master over his own premises.** Accordingly, **after a day of fasting** and before **kneeling to pray**, as was his custom before retiring for the night, he **read aloud** a chapter in the Bible, and then, **in the name of Jesus of Nazareth**, and by the **authority of the Holy Priesthood**, rebuked those spirits, and commanded them to leave the

Conquering Spiritual Evil

house — went to bed and had no more disturbance.” (pp. 112-113)

Lorenzo Snow realized the evil entities would stay as long as he submitted to their presence. He first prepared himself, and then used the greatest spiritual tool we have, the Lord Jesus Christ to rid himself of the problem. Nothing compares to Him who is the greatest of all and commands all.

But there are times when He requires us to use our ingenuity to take care of a problem. Just as the Brother of Jared was asked what he wanted the Lord to do so they could see in their boats. The Lord had him create the solution. He will do the same with us. It will help with our personal growth and our desire to come unto Him.

Many times the Lord will have us use symbols, signs, or even tokens. Often these signs are symbols of Him. For example, Moses was required to make a serpent and put it on a pole for the Israelites to look upon in order to be saved from the fiery serpents. The act of looking up to the serpent and being healed was a symbol of Christ’s ability to save us as we look up to Him. It is interesting that Satan took over the symbol for Christ—the serpent—and made it his. These fiery serpents were killing the Israelites just as Satan tries to destroy us. The Lord had Moses put the “True Serpent” on a pole for those who had the faith to look up to Him who could heal them and protect them from the adversary.

When we work toward becoming like Christ, then we have the greatest protection we can have against the adversary. That doesn’t mean we won’t be buffeted and have challenges. Those will surely come as they are part of this life. It means that we can overcome all things through Him who has already overcome all things and knows exactly how to get us through all the challenges of life. He gives us His armor to help in this battle.

Shields and shielding are great tools to use at all times. The act of reading the scriptures puts shielding around us, especially

Conquering Spiritual Evil

when voiced out loud. How? The vibrations from reading scriptures cause shielding to surround us, as does praying vocally. Asking for shielding in the name of Jesus Christ makes it even stronger. One of my energy-seeing friends sees the vibrations of the words when she reads scripture. She has experimented with reading quietly and out loud. Out loud is stronger and causes light to grow around us. It is stronger with a family doing this. We are taught one way of doing this, it is called “the true order of prayer.” Something we did as a people in our stake houses until the 70’s when it was discontinued.

She feels this happens because we are focused on Christ and His energy, His light. Even our subconscious is forced to focus on Him, and it responds back with a higher vibration of our own spiritual and physical selves. She has even tried different translations of scriptures and has found it varies between them. Some produce a stronger effect. She feels that Hebrew is the strongest. I wonder why Joseph was so intent on learning Hebrew?

Singing Hymns will produce the same effect. Several LDS General Authorities suggested that when improper thoughts come into our minds, we sing Hymns. Hymns increase the vibration of our energy bodies, spiritual, and physical, and drives out the darkness which is trying to create problems for us. Darkness cannot share the same space as light.

Each week we have the opportunity to partake of the sacrament. We have previously discussed the first part of the prayer where we ask God to bless and sanctify the bread and water to the **souls** of those partaking of it. Our soul is our spirit and body combined. (D&C 88:15) Partaking of sanctified bread and water makes it more than it is; it is now holy, and when we partake of this bread and water, our soul becomes more holy. This is a wonderful protection. The prayer says in part, “. . . that they may have His spirit to be with them. . .” His spirit is of a Celestial nature and has a higher vibration than ours. If we live to have His spirit with us, it is one of the greatest shields we could ever hope for. Could those

Conquering Spiritual Evil

who receive His spirit and remember Him wear a Celestial type of armor automatically? And could thinking about the complete Celestial armor of God move our thoughts to Christ and helps us remember Him? This would allow the power of the Holy Spirit to fill our whole soul with light.

“And if your eye be single to my glory, your **whole bodies** shall be filled with light, and there shall be **no darkness in you**; and that body which is filled with light comprehendeth all things.” (D&C 88:67)

It is interesting to me that the Lord says “your **whole bodies** shall be filled with light”. Is He talking about more than our spiritual body? How many “bodies” do we have beside a physical body and a spiritual body? There is a third body which people call the aura, or the energy body around our physical bodies. To those who see energy, individuals who are more Christ-like have an aura that is more white instead of yellow; white is the color of Christ’s energy, which means they are “filled with (His) light” just as He promised in the scriptures. (If we are the same frequency as Him, we will be able to see Him.)

It really is a phenomenal promise, isn’t it? The Lord continues: “For the word of the Lord is truth, and whatsoever is truth is light, and whatsoever is light is Spirit, even the Spirit of Jesus Christ.” (D&C 84:45)

Word of Lord = truth = light = Spirit of Jesus Christ
Jesus is in His word, as is His light.

“That which is of God is light; and he that receiveth light, and continueth in God, receiveth more light; and that light growth brighter and brighter until the perfect day.” (D&C 50:24)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

We are also told that the “glory of God is intelligence, or, in other words, light and truth. Light and truth forsake that evil one.” (D&C 93:36-7) All of this – light, truth, Spirit, intelligence, and word is Jesus Christ. He is all of it and makes it possible for us to forsake evil.

After our daughter’s coma and subsequent miraculous recovery, our life changed. We became more focused on Christ than we ever had been before, even covenanting to do His work, whatever it meant. From past experiences I know when the Spirit is with me. Serving a mission in Spain had been a great help in this regard. But with Denise and her always talking to the other side of the veil, I soon began to feel when other beings were present. In a previous book I related the incident in which I took my friend’s illness, and he didn’t die. It was during that incident I realized that Christ truly is real, and we can feel of His presence and His energy. I related another incident when I felt his presence in my truck and then the side window of the truck where He was sitting fogged up. He does give off “heat” or energy.

One Sunday before church started, I sat there thinking of Christ and what we had been through and how blessed we were. In my mind I told Him that I had not felt His presence for a while and asked Him to come and sit by me, knowing that He stated He stands at the door knocking and needs to be let in. I did let Him in; I felt His energy beside me. It was great. Then I went further, saying to myself that He would dwell in me if I let Him. So I asked Him to go into me. He did. I suddenly realized that with my sports coat on I was going to be very warm. I started to perspire. My friend, Tim, who was sitting next to me leaned over and asked what was going on because suddenly it was extremely hot next to me.

I whispered to him that I had asked the Savior to go in me, and He had. Tim has a great heart of a child, and he responded, “Cool.”

After Sacrament meeting Tim asked if he could sit on the other side of me during Sunday School because, “I feel like I’ve been cooked from my right side in and want the other side done, too.”

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Tim called the next day and said that he felt like he had a sunburn on the inside of his body; he felt cooked all the way through. He thanked me for the experience. I told him to thank the Lord, as I didn't do anything.

I relate this not to show anything on my part. I am impure, weak, and sinful and the Lord humbles me continually. It just shows what is possible and that the Lord is true to His word and means it literally. We just need to believe His word and believe Him. I have had some people tell me this is false doctrine. I testify that it is not, I choose to believe Him and what He says. When He states that He is in and through all things, it is true. He will go into us and burn out the dross and help us to become more pure like He is. It has nothing to do with gender, position, name, calling, relatives, or ancestry. It just requires faith and a belief in our Lord Jesus Christ.

The best shield or tool of Light we could ever have is for Him to be with us at all times, to have His Spirit in us at all times. It is Jesus Christ we need to look to, to emulate and to receive, not any man or men.

Besides the important tool of Light, the Lord has given us other tools we can use with discretion and permission. If we use these powerful tools impulsively and without asking for permission, the results may backfire. But He will teach us when we ask. My daughter, Denise, and I were presenting a book review when one of the men decided he would take over the meeting. It seems he came with his own agenda, because when he had a chance, he started talking and would not quit. I waited and waited for him to pause or even take a breath. After I got control of the meeting, he took over again the moment I paused.

I had the idea come to mind to ask the Lord for permission to use some tools of light to help this man be quiet. After asking for permission and receiving it, I sent cords of light around his voice box to stop him from speaking. Then I sent a band of confusion around his mind to confuse his thoughts.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

After another minute he suddenly stopped and said, “I have no idea what I am talking about, and I doubt you do either. I think I’ll be quiet the rest of the night.”

It worked, and we continued with the book review to the happiness of all the other people present in the room. I was extremely hesitant about doing this, but we had been invited by someone else to talk, so we had stewardship over the event, and he had come to disrupt and spread his agenda. That is why I asked permission to use a tool to change what was going on, and I feel the Lord approved it for the same reason.

Some workers of darkness use a spiritual shunt to literally take the life or energy out of a person. They are called spiritual vampires. Have you ever been in the presence of someone for a while, and then after you leave, you feel drained of energy. In my past there was a man that would do this over the phone with me. By the time we hung up, I was completely drained of energy. I could never figure out why and he was completely oblivious of what he created.

A woman that I have discussed previously experienced an emotional trauma. At the moment of this trauma, she felt a piercing assault in her heart area, and then her lower abdomen went completely numb. After this event she had a hard time feeling any emotion and had a complete lack of energy. A friend did some energy work on her, but it didn’t solve the problem. Another person who practiced energy medicine was called, and they worked together. They soon discovered why their previous efforts had been unsuccessful. The woman had over one hundred and fifty spirits attached to her, and they were the source of her chronic fatigue. They were literally sucking the life right out of her. The two women found the reason these spirits had had such success. She had a huge hole punctured in her spiritual energy grid with some kind of weapon in it which kept the hole open to spiritual invasion.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

They worked on casting out the spirits, closing the hole, and repairing the damage that had been done. They did some other things to help her emotionally, and thankfully her chronic fatigue disappeared. The device evil had placed in her is called a spiritual shunt which drains a person's energy and allows easy access for dark spirits to enter.

A few days after our experience in the sweat lodge with the owner, one participant just lay on her couch unable to do anything. She had absolutely no energy. With the Lord's help, we saw some devices on her, including a shunt. Another man and I voiced a blessing and cast the devices off of her. She immediately felt better.

One evening about the same time, I went jogging, but after going one half block, I could not breathe. I checked and felt I had a device in my lungs to keep me from getting a breath. I cast it off, but it came back again the next night. I asked my daughter about this. She confirmed that I did indeed have a device in my lungs.

"How is that possible?" I asked. "I placed shields around me."

"Some people are able to get through other people's shields," she answered.

The device had come from the man with the sweat lodge. I went across the street from his property and offered a special prayer in which I witnessed what had been done to all of us, and asked that all negative or dark things being sent our way stop, and that if he did send anything else, it would be turned back on him one-hundred fold. This was done with priesthood and in the name of Jesus Christ. All the problems from him stopped at that instant. This is a great tool the Lord offers us. With His permission we can stop what is being sent our way.

It is interesting that the Lord tells us in D&C 98:39-45 that we need to forgive our "enemy" if he comes against us and keeps repenting until "seventy times seven." If he does not repent and comes against us four times, then we "shall bring these testimonies

Conquering Spiritual Evil

before the Lord” and if he does not repent the Lord will “avenge thee of thine enemy an hundred fold.”

As I think back it was more than four times that we had been attacked by him, realized what he had done, and had forgiven him. It wasn't until we knew it was not going to stop that I went before the Lord with the “testimonies” and felt to say it would go back on him “one hundred fold” if he continued the attacks on any of us.

Later I did a seminar and was told by the Spirit to tell this story. Over the next two-week period nearly ten people came to me for a blessing or called to say they had their husband give them a blessing. **All** of these people had attended a sweat lodge with this man. Several of them were suicidal until they had the blessing to cast off the devices and/or spirits placed on them. Others had sudden health problems. After these blessings, their problems vanished.

Shunts can be used in spiritually positive ways as well, but with permission from the Lord.

I know a wonderful woman that has a spiritual shunt of light placed in her. It gives her energy and helps her cope with her physical trials. There has been many times when visiting with her that I have asked her and the Lord for permission to send my energy if it would help her. She is spiritually sighted and sees these kinds of things. She has thanked me several times for the energy sent her way.

One time she was helping me in a workshop and the participants were drawing on her energy causing her to become quite weak. This wasn't intentional on the part of the attendees. They had no idea they were doing such a thing. Because I had her permission to help her in any way possible during the workshop, in the name of Christ I immediately put up a shield around her and myself to give her energy and made it quite strong. I didn't say a word to her. In a few seconds she turned to me and said, “Thank

Conquering Spiritual Evil

you.” She knew what had been done and was extremely grateful for it.

Righteous people with permission may place a crescent of light on an individual to allow light to enter them. Or they can place the crescent on that part of their body or spirit that may need more healing or light. A spiritual crescent can be placed on our senses to enhance physical or spiritual abilities.

The adversary uses spiritual lust enhancers. (They are evil and real. Use His tools of light to disengage them.) On the other hand, our Lord also has spiritual light enhancers. They will allow one to feel more drawn or inclined to God and ways of spirituality. A good example might be Enos, who went out to hunt beasts in the forest. He reflected on the things taught him by his father and his soul hungered. This is what this device does and should only to be used when the Lord allows it.

In the scriptures are examples of weapons of light. One example is when the Lord told Nephi to shock his brothers who had evil intentions.

“And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thine hand again unto thy brethren, and they shall not wither before thee, but I will shock them, saith the Lord, and this will I do, that they may know that I am the Lord their God. And it came to pass that I stretched forth my hand unto my brethren, and they did not wither before me; but the Lord did shake them, even according to the word which he had spoken.” (1 Nephi 17:53-54)

What a wonderful example of the Lord’s power given to a mortal man in a time of need. His brothers needed to be reminded where true power comes from.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

“God speed” is another weapon of light mentioned in the book of John. Jesus entered a boat with the disciples and instantly they were across the sea.

“And when even was now come, his disciples went down unto the sea, and entered into a ship, and went over the sea toward Capernaum. And it was now dark, and Jesus was not come unto them. And the sea arose by reason of a great wind that blew. So when they had rowed about five and thirty furlongs, they see Jesus walking on the sea, and drawing nigh unto the ship: and they were afraid. But he saith unto them, It is I; be not afraid. Then they willingly received him into the ship: and **immediately the ship was at land whither they went.**” (John 6:16-21, emphasis added)

Sometime back, Denise and I were trying to get some errands done in Salt Lake City and get down to the book binder in Orem by 5 PM. We had one hour to get the errands done and get to Orem. The problem was it was already 4 PM and rush hour had started. To do the errands required we travel from one side of Salt Lake to the other during rush hour. I told Denise it was simply impossible to do what was required and be in Orem before 5 PM.

Her only comment was that the Lord was there, and He was saying, “Patience, young Sky Walker.” (I love His sense of humor). Denise laughed.

I had no idea how it happened, but it did. We pulled into the book binder’s parking lot at five minutes to 5 PM. I now know that the Lord can create “God speed” and allow things to be done in a time frame that seems impossible.

Once coming back from several book reviews in Nevada and Southern Utah with Rob, we received an emergency call from Rob’s wife, Jennifer. Jennifer told him that their son needed to go to the hospital immediately. We were nearly an hour from Spanish Fork when his wife called. Fifteen minutes later, we were

Conquering Spiritual Evil

approaching Spanish Fork, and Salt Lake City, where Rob lived, was another hour away. Fifteen minutes later we were nearly to the point of the mountain in Salt Lake Valley, and a few minutes later we arrived at Rob's house. I had been driving and had made sure I stayed only four miles per hour over the speed limit. When we arrived at his home, we knew we had experienced God speed. It was awesome.

The above scripture also describes the Lord's ability to alter a material substance, such as water. Either He altered it to make it as "ice" or hard so He could walk on it or He just levitated and moved along. He has the ability to levitate as do angels. We know this because they are described as floating in the air. They can also alter their own physical substance or that of something else or they could not come through what we perceive as "solid" walls. That is a great gift and can be considered as a tool of light.

Invisibility is also a tool of light.

"And all they in the synagogue, when they heard these things, were filled with wrath, and rose up, and thrust him out of the city, and led him unto the brow of the hill whereon their city was built, that they might cast him down headlong. But passing through the midst of them went his way." (Luke 4:28-30)

In order to pass through them, he might have been invisible, or he could have had shields or power around his body because they were not able to touch him. Abinadi in the Book of Mormon experienced this divine power surrounding him.

"And now when the king had heard these words, he said unto his priests: Away with this fellow, and slay him; for what have we to do with him, for he is mad. And they stood forth and attempted to lay their hands on him; but he withstood them, and said unto them: Touch me

Conquering Spiritual Evil

not, for **God shall smite you if ye lay your hands upon me**, . . . the people of king Noah durst not lay their hands on him, for **the Spirit of the Lord was upon him**; and his face shone with exceeding luster, even as Moses' did while in the mount of Sinai, while speaking with the Lord. And he spake with power and authority from God; and he continued his words, saying: Ye see that ye have not power to slay me, therefore I finish my message. Yea, and I perceive that it cuts you to your hearts because I tell you the truth concerning your iniquities." (Mosiah 3:1-3, 5-7)

Also in the Book of Mormon when Nephi declared the word of God and experienced opposition he was blessed with a gift of the Spirit which protected him.

"And it came to pass that when Nephi had declared unto them the word, behold, they did still harden their hearts and would not hearken unto his words; therefore they did revile against him, and did seek to lay their hands upon him that they might cast him into prison. But behold, the power of God was with him, and they could not take him to cast him into prison, for he was taken by the Spirit and **conveyed away out of the midst of them**. And it came to pass that thus he did go forth in the Spirit, from multitude to multitude, declaring the word of God..." (Helaman 10:15-17)

Our greatest protection is always the Lord and His Spirit. When we obey Him and gather His light into ourselves through that obedience, we have His protection. Nothing could be better than that. Below is an experience of Brother Andrew (2001) in 1957 while smuggling religious materials into Yugoslavia.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

“Just ahead was the Yugoslav border. For the first time in my life I was about to enter a Communist country on my own instead of in a group invited and sponsored by the government. I stopped the little VW on the outskirts of the tiny Austrian village and took stock.

The Yugoslav government in 1957 permitted visitors to bring in only articles for their personal use. Anything new or anything in quantity was suspect because of the black market thriving all over the country. Printed material especially was liable to be confiscated at the border, no matter how small a quantity, because coming from out of the country, it was regarded as foreign propaganda. Now here I was with car and luggage literally bulging with tracts, Bibles, and portions of Bibles. How was I to get them past the border guard? And so, for the first of many times, I said the Prayer of God's Smuggler:

‘Lord, in my luggage I have Scripture that I want to take to Your children across this border. When You were on earth, You made blind eyes see. Now, I pray, make seeing eyes blind. Do not let the guards see those things You do not want them to see.’

And so, armed with this prayer, I started the motor and drove up to the barrier. The two guards appeared both startled and pleased to see me. I wondered how much business came their way. From the way they stared at my passport, it might have been the first Dutch one they had ever seen. There were just a few formalities to attend to, they assured me in German, and I could be on my way.

One of the guards began poking around in my camping gear. In the corners and folds of my sleeping bag and tent were boxes of tracts. ‘Lord, make those seeing eyes blind.’

‘Do you have anything to declare?’

Conquering Spiritual Evil

‘Well, I have money and a wristwatch and a camera. . . .’

The other guard was looking inside the VW. He asked me to take out a suitcase. I knew that here were tracts scattered through my clothing.

‘Of course, sir,’ I said. I pulled the front seat forward and dragged the suitcase out. I placed it on the ground and opened the lid. The guard lifted the shirts that lay on top. Beneath them, and now in plain sight, was a pile of tracts in two different languages, Croatian and Slovene. How was God going to handle this situation?

‘It seems dry for this time of year,’ I said to the other guard, and without looking at the fellow who was inspecting the suitcase, I fell into a conversation about the weather. I told him about my homeland and how it was always wet on the polders. Finally, when I could stand the suspense no longer, I looked behind me. The first guard wasn’t even glancing at the suitcase. He was listening to our conversation. When I turned around he caught himself and looked up.

‘Well, then, do you have anything else to declare?’

‘Only small’ things,’ I said. The tracts were small after all.

‘We won’t bother with them,’ said the guard. He nodded to me that I could close the suitcase and with a little salute handed me back my passport.”
(Andrew, 2001, pp. 107-108)

It can be quite amazing when we let go and let God take charge.

There are many tools of light available to us. We can create whatever is needed in the moment if the Spirit allows us. There are times when the Spirit will not allow us to use the power the Lord has given us. In the Book of Mormon, Amulek told Alma that they should stretch forth their hand to stop the innocent women and

Conquering Spiritual Evil

children from being killed. This was a horrendous event, and Amulek knew they had the power to stop it. But Alma said the Spirit told him:

“I must not stretch forth mine hand; for behold the Lord receiveth them up unto himself, in glory; and he doth suffer that they may do this thing, or that the people may do this thing unto them, according to the hardness of their hearts, that the judgments which he shall exercise upon them in his wrath may be just; and the blood of the innocent shall stand as a witness against them, yea, and cry mightily against them at the last day.” (Alma 14:11.)

We use His Priesthood and His weapons He has given us only when He allows it. When we do so, we will be standing with Him, not with Satan.

I have heard some energy workers ask “the heavenly hosts to bind them (spirits) and take them to whatever prison has been prepared for them so that they cannot harm us anymore.” This is not sound doctrine. Yes, it is possible to bind dark entities with priesthood and even ask angels to bind them. You can also send them back to hell because it is not possible to take them to the light. But when they are sent back to hell, bound or not, they will eventually be sent back here again to torment us. That is why they were cast down here to this earth, to provide the opposition we need. If they were forever bound in a “prison”, they would not be able to fulfill what they have been sent here to accomplish — to test and try us. The Lord has decreed that He will take care of them. Of course they will be “bound” during the millennium because of the people’s righteousness, but will be unleashed for the final war and then destroyed.

The last weapon of light is a sword of light or as the scripture said: “. . . the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God.” (Ephesians 6:17) A spiritual sword is mentioned in the

Conquering Spiritual Evil

scriptures as a **2-edged sword** (coming from the mouth) in Ephesians, Revelations, Hebrews, 1st Nephi; **sword of the Lord** in Judges, Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ephesians, and D&C 27 and 101; a **flaming sword** in Genesis and the Temple Endowment.

Several years ago I realized that the Lord had given me something which was on my back. Denise confirmed it was a sword. One of the first times I used it was at the cabin on the Mississippi River when we went back to Nauvoo. I escorted the earthbound couple across the road with it. Then I dreamed I was sword fighting the adversary all night. The next morning I mentioned this weird dream to Denise, and her only comment was, “What makes you think it was a dream?” It apparently wasn’t a dream; it had been a real event in the spirit.

I have found there are rules to all of His weapons He allows us to use. The sword is withdrawn with His permission only. Without His permission it would be considered a weapon of darkness. The following true event shows several ways it can be used.

Our friend, Kitten, has been without a veil her entire life and has suffered much because of it. She lives in an encapsulated world in her home. She keeps protective shielding around her property, house, room, and herself. Her husband has received some brain damage from industrial accidents and tends to have some “friends” attached to him when he comes home. Kitten will wait until late at night and then remove them by the Lord’s power and with the Lord.

One day she wasn’t as observant as she should have been and a demon on her husband jumped to her. She lay down for a nap and upon waking up there was a huge spirit world battle being waged all around her house and her yard, and she was hit with a massive blast of darkness in her chest. Dark entities were everywhere along her property line. Her guardian angel left her to go outside and take care of them.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

As she lay there in a stupor, her guardian told her to call me. I was on the way home from Salt Lake City when the cell phone rang. Kitten said she was under spiritual attack and couldn't do anything to stop it and asked if I could help. I was not in a place where I could concentrate on her problem. I told her that I would call her back.

Things like this have always intrigued me. This is a sighted person that has the other side of the veil wide open to her. I wondered why she would call someone so "less sighted" and why she would need my help. I have no particular abilities or talents that I felt could help her.

I got to the canyon when there was no cell phone reception so I was able to focus on her and what might be going on.

Having doubts about myself is nearly a passion for me. What I saw in my mind's eye I instantly doubted. How could something like this be real? The scripture in Ephesians came to mind:

"For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places." (Ephesians 6:12)

Does anyone really believe this stuff?

In my mind's eye I saw what looked like a huge net come and settle over her house. It was kind of like a fishing net, but quite dark, in fact very black. In the spaces between what looked like ropes was some kind of dark gelatinous substance, that had a "fishy" feel to it. (I really lack the words to even begin to describe this adequately). The bottom of the net had huge spikes attached to it. All of this descended over her house, and the spikes were driven into the ground. What drove them into the ground, I have no idea. This was like a huge balloon or umbrella over the house and kept the darkness in and kept the demons "safe" from any light. I was told that it required my physical presence to help take care of this.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

I called her back and told her that my presence was required and I would be there in about thirty minutes.

When I arrived she was sitting outside in the corner of her property, next to the road.

“What are you doing?” I asked with a smile.

She smiled back and said it was the only place she could get any type of relief.

“The Guardian is here and he is fighting them off the best he can.”

“So why do you need my help?” I asked. This really puzzled me. This “Guardian” was from the realms of light and was very powerful. Why did he need anything from me?

“This requires a mortal to be involved” was her answer. She described it as such: “What Doug did not know was it was going to take a combination of mortal and immortal beings, both possessed with bodies to win this battle. Both were required to be at the battle front. Doug had to know the real situation by experience which he could not know down the road someplace.”

We went into her home. An indescribable heaviness filled her living room. It was difficult to breath. Now I knew why she was sitting outside.

She sat on the floor, trying to get away from the heaviness. I sat on the couch, not really knowing what to do, so I closed my eyes and started to pray.

It came into my mind to pull out my spiritual sword and go outside and cut the “net” where it was attached to the ground. I did so in my mind, not noticing anything else around me. Then I went to where each spike had been driven into the ground, stuck my sword into the ground next to it and popped it out. Angels came and took them away. It amazed me how easily the spikes popped out. I attributed that to the sword and its “power.”

I fought alongside Kitten’s guardian angel — he with his sword and me with mine. After we conquered the demons and banished them, we sent silvery light over the property and a soft

Conquering Spiritual Evil

gold bubble around the house as well as a soft blue and gold bubble around Kitten. All was peaceful.

I opened my eyes and asked Kitten what she had seen. She confirmed all of it. After it was over I had more questions than answers, but I knew that the spiritual sword was real, that this event really did occur, and I had participated in it. The Lord has declared that the real battle is on the spiritual plane against darkness, dominions, principalities, and not against flesh and blood.

I had the opportunity to travel back to the old LDS chapel that the family had bought for a home and business. Their “sighted” daughter told me that after the first visit she didn’t really use any of the tools we had discussed. I spent three hours discussing many of these tools of light with her. Once again we talked about shielding, swords, and other tools she could use. I had her practice casting demons out and putting up shields to their property line. The day after I got home, her mother emailed me and said that she had used them that night to seal off her room against the demons. “It was the first peaceful night’s sleep she’s had in a long time.” What a blessing these tools are for her.

There are many weapons and tools of light that our Savior affords us. I have used many of them and hope to be able to develop enough so I can use all of them. The battle against spiritual evil is very real; it is fought daily in all parts of the world, and these are tools given to us by our Savior to help in that battle.

LEARNING TO DISCERN

Joseph Smith spent much time trying to understand spirits or how to discern spirits. One of his nephews said:

“There was no point upon which the Prophet Joseph dwelt more than the discerning of Spirits.” (Minutes, 1869)

Joseph understood the importance of discerning the world of spirits. I wish his history recorded the number of times he was deceived and the learning curve he went through before he felt he had a fairly complete understanding of the subject. Yes, Joseph was and is a Prophet; there is no question in my mind about that. But I also know he learned line upon line, precept upon precept and received grace upon grace. He made his share of mistakes, and like us, learned from those errors.

There is an incident in Church history in which Joseph Smith asked for a revelation and received one only to find out later that it did not come from the Lord. Here is the incident in David Whitmer’s words.

“When the book of Mormon was in the hands of the printer, more money was needed to finish the printing of it. We were waiting on Martin Harris who was doing his best to sell a part of his farm, in order to raise the necessary funds. After a time Hyrum Smith and others began to get impatient, thinking that Martin was too slow and under transgression for not selling his land at once, even if at a great sacrifice. . . He was wrong in thus judging Bro. Martin, because he was doing all he

Conquering Spiritual Evil

could toward selling his land. Brother Hyrum said it had been suggested to him that some of the brethren might go to Toronto, Canada, and sell the copyright of the Book of Mormon for considerable money: and he persuaded Joseph to inquire of the Lord about it. . . [Joseph did enquire and] received a revelation that some of the brethren should go to Toronto, Canada, and that they would sell the copyright of the Book of Mormon. Hiram Page and Oliver Cowdery went to Toronto on this mission, but they failed entirely to sell the copyright, returning without any money. Joseph was at my father's house when they returned. . . Well, we were in great trouble; and we asked Joseph how it was that he had received a revelation from the Lord for some brethren to go to Toronto and sell the copyright, and the brethren had utterly failed in their undertaking. Joseph did not know how it was, so he inquired of the Lord about it, and behold the following revelation came through the stone: **'Some revelations are of God: some revelations are of men: and some revelations are of the devil.'** So we see that the revelation to go to Toronto and sell the copyright was not of God, but was of the devil or of the heart of man. When a man enquires of the Lord concerning a matter, if he is deceived by his own carnal desires, and is in error, he will receive an answer according to his erring heart, but it will not be a revelation from the Lord. . . Without much explanation you can see the error of Hyrum Smith in thinking evil of Martin Harris without cause, . . . and also the error of Brother Joseph in listening to the persuasions of men and inquiring of the Lord to see if they might not go to Toronto to sell the copyright of the Book of Mormon, when it was made known to Brother Joseph that the will of the Lord was to have Martin Harris raise the money." (pp. 30-31)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Joseph probably learned from this that when a revelation is received, it should not be side stepped because of peer pressure. Joseph Smith did learn line upon line, precept upon precept, just like our Savior did, and like we must. Joseph made a mistake and learned from it. The greatest learning in my life has come from my errors and mistakes. Then I get the opportunity to reflect, repent, and understand how the Lord would have had me do it. In this there is growth. Joseph grew. This can be seen from his progressive use of the Urim and Thummin to the use of a seer stone, and finally he didn't need either one to see and receive revelation. They might be considered "training wheels" until he mastered the gift of being a seer and a revelator. All of us are to grow in our gifts and abilities as Joseph did. And yes, we will make mistakes, which is expected because we are practicing our gift and not burying it.

Over the past decade I have noticed that when some people "hear" or engage the spirit world or more precisely a being from the spirit world, they tend to assume they have made contact with a being of higher intelligence or light. That may not always be the case.

Amulek in the Book of Mormon testifies "that same spirit which doth possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of this life, that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world." (Alma 34:34) So when mortals pass over into the spirit world, they take with them all the quirks, problems, judgments, insights, understandings, love, hate, misinformation, and learned behaviors from mortality. In the spirit world one progresses in their "education" at different rates; some not at all. So just because a person may have the ability to communicate with deceased persons, angels, or even demons doesn't mean he or she will not ever be deceived. In fact the first deception is that they **can't** be deceived. We have a saying at our house that states "if someone declares they can't be deceived, run the other way as fast as you can." A man who had his veil drop while he was in the

Conquering Spiritual Evil

MTC in Provo, told me he spent the next eight years “going through hell trying not to be deceived.” (He learned by experience. Many times during those eight years he was deceived by beings from the world of spirits.)

Then there are those people who feel that just because they can hear or see the world of spirits, they have been endowed with the most profound wisdom and can say nothing but “infallible utterances”. They feel they have a pipeline to God, and what they are shown is directly from Him because it is impossible for them to be deceived. A challenge for them is being able to interpret what they have been shown. Is the Lord showing them something they perceive as a real event or is it really a metaphor for something else, or both? That is something to ponder. Nevertheless, it is a legitimate concern because I have seen gifted/sighted people declare the reality of an event the Lord had shown them only to never have the “event” come to pass. When I mentioned to them that it might be a metaphor for another event, I was promptly informed that they knew what they had seen, and it was not a metaphor. (Even though it had never come to pass, and as a metaphor it decidedly had). Joseph said:

“We may look for angels and receive their ministrations, but we are to try the spirits and prove them, for it is often the case that men make a mistake in regard to these things. God has so ordained that when he has communicated, no vision is to be taken but what you see by the seeing of the eye, or what you hear by the hearing of the ear. When you see a vision, **pray for the interpretation;** if you get not this, shut it up; there must be certainty in this matter. An open vision will manifest that which is more important. Lying spirits are going forth in the earth. There will be great manifestations of spirits, both false and true.” (TPJS p. 161, emphasis added)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Following are several experiences.

My family had the opportunity of meeting a young woman who suddenly had her veil drop and was having a hard time with it. She came to us to learn how to not be deceived because she couldn't tell what was good and what was evil. She was learning that she was suddenly very popular with many of types of beings. They want messages delivered or things done for them. They can and do appear as beings of light; they often pretend to be other people, even the Lord. This young lady now works with handicapped children because they are so pure. Nevertheless she had a hard time not being deceived by those beings of a dark nature.

I took a friend to meet a woman in Salt Lake several years ago that did healing and energy work. She claimed to be clair-audio, meaning she could hear the other side of the veil. Her "guides" would tell her many things. During our visit, she told my friend about his ex-wife, children, job and so much more. She knew nearly everything about him. It was so amazing we decided to come again and bring my daughter, Denise.

The first half of the meeting the following day was also amazing because she said many things that were correct. But the rest of the information became very strange. I should say that it felt "off."

Out in the car I mentioned how she had started saying "weird and goofy" things the last part of our visit. "Dad," Denise said, "She can hear the other side but doesn't know who is talking to her. She hears light and dark beings equally well and can't tell the difference between them."

This is a great example of someone who believes everything she hears from the spirit world is a "profound utterance." We can't afford to allow ourselves to be deceived like this. If we do, those lying spirits will lead us gently off the path to God. (Though assuredly they will tell us that all paths will get to God eventually.)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Denise went on to say that she felt this woman was deceived much of the time, but because she could hear “spirits,” she felt she was “enlightened” and could not be deceived. We felt sad that such a good woman, one that was doing much good in trying to help other people, was becoming prideful and feeling that it was impossible for her to be deceived.

“Pride goeth before destruction, and an haughty spirit before a fall.” (Proverbs 16:18)

“See that ye are not lifted up unto pride; yea, see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much strength.” (Alma 38:11)

Several years ago we had a really good friend who was probably the most gifted person I had met to that point. She had started a business with a group of people and discovered that she could use her gifts to control them. If anyone contradicted her, she would turn to face the person and say, “Thus saith the Lord.....” No one dared contradict her, because those with spiritual gifts can be very intimidating, and she had become that way. This woman has since passed away. The Lord has warned us against using the so-called “god card” to get what we want or to compel or control others to do what we want. The Lord has pronounced this to be evil and not of Him. When we use our gifts to control, it will leave us open to deception from the world of spirits, and because of pride and stiffneckedness, we will fail.

After discussing this subject with a good friend, I received the following email:

“One of the great temptations which faces anyone is what Section 121 alerts us about. ‘We have learned that when [people] get a little authority as they suppose, they will immediately begin to exercise unrighteous dominion...’ It doesn't matter if it is derived from office, position, wealth, calling,

Conquering Spiritual Evil

gifts, family name, or anything else; mankind tend to overuse their prerogatives and to subordinate others. We see people trying to command others all over the world, all the time, based upon any lever or advantage which someone obtains. The temptation is, therefore, to use the "god card" as a basis for advantages or dominion, or control of others.

Christ invites, persuades, guides, entices and informs. He does not demand. The closest He comes to demanding is when He warns. But the choice is always left to the individual to choose to either heed the warning or to ignore it.

It is one of the most frequent failings we encounter here; and one of the reasons democratic governments are so rare in history. Men want control. They have little patience for the messiness of freedom. Nor do they want to take the trouble and effort required to persuade others. So much easier just to demand something and expect people to fall in line. So it is with the Church itself. And so it is with gifted people. And so it is with the rich; and the powerful, and educated, and scholarly, and celebrities--- why do you think actors are so politically active? They want to control everything. It is their "right" because they have a following, you see.

When you encounter a gentle soul like Hugh Nibley, who was so kind in his persuasion, so compelling in his criticism, so discrete in his objections to misused authority, so consistent in his fidelity to the Church; well, you encounter a genuine disciple of Christ. When, on the other hand, you encounter someone who demands a following, compels others to agree with them, insists upon their view being the only correct one or who exercises control, compulsion or dominion in any degree of unrighteousness; well, they're not a

Conquering Spiritual Evil

disciple who has figured out what Christ wants them to become.

We all have a single standard we are expected to meet. We all are required to be measured against that single standard. There are no exceptions. No one gets a pass because they have any gift or gifts. Nor are they excused because they have another gift; or even if they presume they have no gift (actually everyone has at least one gift). It is still one standard which applies to all.

It is amusing to have people assert their spiritual superiority. The whole idea is so wrongly focused as to make you smile. I think of the woman you mentioned whose daughter was gifted, and the mother thought her daughter was better than Denise; and then claimed she (the mother) would be greater than either! What a foolish boast. What a foolish idea. As I recall Christ rebuked His aspiring Apostles for their spiritual ambitions. How can we claim that same ambition as our own once He rebuked it?"

This is a great warning along with being wonderful advice which applies to both sides of the veil. Many beings have passed from this mortal existence who now wish to assert authority and control over those mortal beings still here. Many of these are earthbound spirits that haven't moved on. As discussed previously some of these still have their addictions and try to satisfy them by attaching to mortals and getting them to use the drugs, alcohol, pornography or whatever their earthly addiction was. There are others who have moved on who will try to assert their "profound wisdom" and learning on those that can "hear" or "see" them. Yes, they will try to pass themselves off as a being of light, so they can then teach their profound truths. Then add the devils and demons to the mix, and it seems a futile battle. So it is imperative that we learn how not to be deceived, so the Lord has provided ways to know if we are being deceived or not.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

If we have received information from the world of spirits or even the Spirit, we are allowed to **ask for a witness**. We must pray and ask if it's true or not. We cannot rely on anyone's information without confirming it with God.

Gideon was told by the Lord that he was to gather an army to save Israel. He asked the Lord for a witness about what he had been asked to accomplish.

“And Gideon said unto God, If thou wilt save Israel by mine hand, as thou has said, behold, I will put a fleece of wool in the floor; and if the dew be on the fleece only, and it be dry upon all the earth beside, than shall I know that thou wilt save Israel by mine hand, as thou hast said.

And it was so: for he rose up early on the morrow, and thrust the fleece together, and wringed the dew out of the fleece, a bowl full of water.

And Gideon said unto God, Let not thine anger be hot against me, and I will speak but this once; let me prove, I pray thee, but this once with the fleece; let it now be dry only upon the fleece, and upon all the ground let there be dew.

And God did so that night: for it was dry upon the fleece only, and there was dew on all the ground.” (Judges 6:36-40)

We are allowed to ask for a witness, and God will abide that wish. He will witness to us that what has been asked is true, what we have seen is from Him, or that a being standing in front of us is from Him and is a true messenger. The scriptures tell us how to identify if a messenger is truly from God or from Satan.

“There are two kinds of beings in heaven, namely: Angels, who are resurrected personages, having bodies of flesh and bones — For instance, Jesus said: Handle me and see, for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Secondly: the spirits of just men made perfect, they who are not resurrected, but inherit the same glory. When a messenger comes saying he has a message from God, offer him your hand and request him to shake hands with you. If he be an angel he will do so, and you will feel his hand.

If he be a spirit of a just man made perfect he will come in his glory; for that is the only way he can appear — Ask him to shake hands with you, but he will not move, because it is contrary to the order of heaven for a just man to deceive; but he will still deliver his message.

If it be the devil as an angel of light, when you ask him to shake hands he will offer you his hand, and you will not feel anything; you may therefore detect him.

These are the three grand keys whereby you may know whether any administration is from God.” (D&C 129:1-9)

For a vision or other things that have been shared with us we must ask for an interpretation as Joseph Smith previously mentioned. Most witnessing from God will likely come as we get on our knees and ask Him. It is therefore quite important that we become familiar with how He communicates with each of us individually. Maybe we need to work on this aspect in our lives—hearing God’s voice and following it. We have a right to ask for an interpretation of any vision given to us. If we get an interpretation we know it is from God; if not, we are to do what Joseph Smith said: shut it up. (TPJS p. 161)

The bottom line is we should not fear making mistakes. We learn from them just as Joseph and all the prophets have done. They were and are not infallible! God allows them to repent just as He allows us the same privilege. We need to gain light—line upon line—until the perfect day. That day is when we receive Him, even the Second Comforter, our Lord Jesus Christ. Along the way we will be tricked by Satan’s helpers, but not all the time. So we must

Conquering Spiritual Evil

not fear. As long as we include the Savior, we learn from it and move on. Praise God for the Atonement that allows us to be able to do this.

NOTHING INDECOROUS

We need to understand that beings are progressing or regressing in the world of spirits just as they are here in the mortal world. In the various Near-Death-Experience (NDE) books, most people who have just entered the spirit world, called paradise or prison, depending on where they were spiritually, think they have entered heaven. Most have no gospel understanding. If they have been taught on earth that they will be in heaven when they die, that is where they believe they are. Some understand that they have a need to grow in understanding and intelligence; others don't.

The world of spirits is massively huge, and we have veils over our eyes and understanding in this world, so we don't see it, but occasionally we may "feel" the presence of someone. Some have been privileged to have partial veils removed and can see into the other realms in varying degrees. No matter if we are "not sighted," "partially sighted," or "fully sighted," we all need to walk cautiously when encountering spirits or beings from other dimensions. One of the areas in which we need to be cautious is in interpreting the "Spirit." Those from God can also bring a huge amount of light into our life if we allow them in. We need to do as Joseph suggested and try the spirits. We also need to realize the Spirit will not have us do things that are "lacking in propriety or good taste" (indecorous).

I once had the opportunity to be around some people that invited me to attend their worship services. These were good people that wanted to do what the Lord would have them do, at least that is what I supposed, so I agreed to attend their service. It started at 7 PM and lasted until three or four in the morning.

They went to the basement of the home where the service was held, lit candles and prayed. Some blessed others; some spoke

Conquering Spiritual Evil

in tongues. After a while the women started to swoon and fall over, declaring they were overcome by the spirit until there was a pile of women on the floor, laying all over each other, apparently overcome by the spirit. They just laid there for a while. Afterwards they would marvel at what a powerful experience it was. That was it. Joseph Smith said in Teachings:

“One great evil is, that men are ignorant of the nature of spirits; their power, laws, government, intelligence, etc., and imagine that when there is anything like power, revelation, or vision manifested, that it must be of God. Hence the Methodists, Presbyterians, and others frequently possess a spirit that will cause them to lie down, and during its operation, animation is frequently entirely suspended; they consider it to be the power of God, and a glorious manifestation from God — a manifestation of what? Is there any intelligence communicated? Are the curtains of heaven withdrawn, or the purposes of God developed? Have they seen and conversed with an angel — or have the glories of futurity burst upon their view? No! but their body has been inanimate, the operation of their spirit suspended, and all the intelligence that can be obtained from them when they arise, is a shout of ‘glory,’ or ‘hallelujah,’ or some incoherent expression; but they have had ‘the power.’

The Shaker will whirl around on his heel, impelled by a supernatural agency or spirit, and think that he is governed by the Spirit of God; and the Jumper will jump and enter into all kinds of extravagances. A Primitive Methodist will shout with his cries; while the Quakers moved as they think, by the Spirit of God, will sit and say nothing. Is God the author of all this? If not all of it, which does He recognize? Surely, such a heterogeneous

Conquering Spiritual Evil

mass of confusion never can enter into the kingdom of heaven.

Every one of these professes to be competent to try his neighbor's spirit, but no one can try his own, and what is the reason? Because they have not a key to unlock, no rule wherewith to measure, and no criterion whereby they can test it. Could anyone tell the length, breadth or height of a building without a rule? Test the quality of metals without a criterion, or point out the movements of the planetary systems, without a knowledge of astronomy? Certainly not; and if such ignorance as this is manifested about a spirit of this kind, who can describe an angel of light? If Satan should appear as one in glory, who can tell his color, his signs, his appearance, his glory, or what is the manner of his manifestations?...We answer that no man can do this without the Priesthood, and having a knowledge of the laws by which spirits are governed; for as no man knows the things of God, but by the Spirit of God, so no man knows the spirit of the devil, and his power and influence, but by possessing intelligence which is more than human, and having unfolded through the medium of the Priesthood the mysterious operations of his devices; without knowing the angelic form, the sanctified look and gesture, and the zeal that is frequently manifested by him for the glory of God, together with the prophetic spirit, the gracious influence, the godly appearance, and the holy garb, which are so characteristic of his proceedings and his mysterious windings.

A man must have the discerning of spirits before he can drag into daylight his hellish influence and unfold it unto the world in all its soul-destroying, diabolical, and horrid colors' for nothing is a greater injury to the children of men than to be under the influence of a false spirit when they think they have the Spirit of God." (pp. 204-5)

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Yet, in the scriptures there are instances of people being overcome by the Spirit and falling down. But as the Prophet Joseph Smith stated:

“The French Prophets” were possessed of a spirit that deceived; . . . they had strange fits, as in trembling and fainting, which made them stretch out their legs and arms, as in a swoon; they remained in trances, and coming out of them, uttered all that came in their mouths.

Now God never had any prophets that acted in this way; **there was nothing indecorous in the proceeding of the Lord’s prophets in any age;** neither had the apostles nor prophets in the apostles’ day anything of this kind. Paul says, ‘Ye may all prophesy, one by one; and if anything be revealed to another let the first hold his peace, for the spirit of the prophets is subject to the prophets;’ here we find that the prophets are subject to the spirit, and falling down, have twitchings, tumblings, and faintings through the influence of that spirit, being entirely under its control,’ but here we find the greatest disorder and indecency in the conduct of both men and women, as above described. The same rule would apply to the fallings, twitchings, swoonings, shaking, and trances of many of our modern revivalists.” (TPJS, pp. 208- 209, Emphasis added)

This swooning, fainting, falling of top of each other, yelling, or any other of hundreds of strange acts, are considered “indecorous.” There seems to be no purpose in their behavior, whereas there always is a purpose in what the Spirit does or has us do. As with Saul, King Lamoni, and Alma the Younger, there was a purpose in their being overcome by the Spirit. They were taught or had visions. Their experience was part of their conversion process.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

In the eighteenth and nineteenth chapters of Alma in the Book of Mormon, Ammon testified of Christ and taught the plan of redemption to King Lamoni.

“...the king believed all his words. And he began to cry unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, have mercy; according to thy abundant mercy which thou hast upon the people of Nephi, have upon me, and my people. And now, when he had said this, he fell unto the earth, as if he were dead.”

They took Lamoni to his wife and laid him on a bed. She and her children mourned over him for two days thinking he had died. However, when the people wanted to bury him, the Queen called for Ammon instead because she now did not believe he was dead. Ammon came to her and she asked him to go in to her husband, that she didn’t believe he was dead.

“Now, this was what Ammon desired, for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God; he knew that the dark veil of unbelief was being cast away from his mind, and the light which did light up his mind, which was the light of the glory of God, which was a marvelous light of his goodness—yea, this light had infused such joy into his soul, the cloud of darkness having been dispelled, and that the light of everlasting life was lit up in his soul, yea, he knew that this had overcome his natural frame, and he was carried away in God.”

Ammon told her that he was not dead and that “on the morrow he shall rise again.” She believed him. .

“And it came to pass that he arose, according to the words of Ammon; and as he arose, he stretched forth his hand unto the woman and said: Blessed be the name of God, and blessed art

Conquering Spiritual Evil

thou. For as sure as thou livest, behold, I have seen my Redeemer; and he shall come forth, and be born of a woman, and he shall redeem all mankind, who believe on his name. Now, when he had said these words, his heart was swollen within him, and he sunk again with joy; and the queen also sunk down, being overpowered by the Spirit.”

Ammon sees this and falls to his knees to thank God for this great miracle and he is overcome and sinks to the earth with the king and queen. In the group was a Lamanitish woman named Abish who had been converted to the Lord and who realized what was happening. She called the people together so they could see the power of God. The people came and were “astonished” and wondered what had happened. Some declared that Ammon was at fault, yet others defended him. One man “drew his sword and went forth that he might let it fall upon Ammon, to slay him; and as he lifted the sword to smite him, behold, he fell dead.”

Now that’s some protection! The people keep arguing amongst themselves about all of this when finally Abish takes the queen by the hand.

“...and as soon as [Abish] touched her hand she arose and stood upon her feet, and cried with a loud voice, saying: O blessed Jesus, who has saved me from an awful hell! O blessed God, have mercy on this people! And when she had said this, she clasped her hands, being filled with joy, speaking many words which were not understood; and when she had done this, she took the king, Lamoni, by the hand, and behold he arose and stood upon his feet.”

It was a time when they were converted to Christ.

Alma also experienced the same thing because of the prayers of his father. He was in the pains of hell for three days, visited by Christ, and converted.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Did these ladies have the same experience as King Lamoni and Alma? They were already converted and yet they do this every week and flop on top of each other. Spiritual manifestations can make us physically weak especially if we are not used to them. In my own life I have had several experiences where the Spirit was so strong that I was like a “wet noodle” afterwards. These experiences reminded me of Joseph and Sydney’s experience after receiving Section 76 of the Doctrine and Covenants. Joseph was fine, but Sydney was a “wet noodle.” Joseph simply said that Sydney was not as used to it as Joseph was. But the point is it was a “manifestation” and not something that just makes us flop on the ground for no reason.

The women’s behavior was certainly “indecorous” as mentioned by Joseph. It also seemed to be a “group thing.” If some didn’t fall over, slain by the Spirit, they might have been looked down upon — adult peer pressure. Joseph Smith made the following comment:

“Is there any intelligence communicated? Are the curtains of heaven withdrawn, or the purposes of God developed? Have they seen and conversed with an angel—or have the glories of futurity burst upon their view? No! but their body has been inanimate, the operation of their spirit suspended, and all the intelligence that can be obtained from them when they arise, is a shout of ‘glory,’ or ‘hallelujah,’ or some incoherent expression; but they have had ‘the power.’”

At this meeting they also spoke in tongues. I had never heard tongues spoken until we did an Ezekiel seminar in Salt Lake City at which a woman “spoke in tongues.” It was literally the most beautiful thing I have ever heard, clear and distinct. It was not gibberish. Immediately afterward a man stepped forward and gave an interpretation of it.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

But the tongues spoken at the meeting sounded like gibberish and no interpretation was offered by anyone there. I really didn't know what to think of it, but it just didn't feel like it came from the Spirit. This is how Paul felt about it in his letter to the people at Corinth:

“I would that ye all spake with tongues, but rather that ye prophesied: for greater is he that prophesieth than he that **speaketh with tongues, except he interpret**, that the church may receive edifying.

Now, brethren, if I come unto you speaking with tongues, what shall I profit you, except I shall speak to you either by revelation, or by knowledge, or by prophesying, or by doctrine?

Therefore if I know not the meaning of the voice, I shall be unto him that speaketh a barbarian, and he that speaketh a barbarian, and he that speaketh shall be a barbarian unto me. . .

Yet in the church I had rather speak five words with my understanding, than by my voice I might teach others also, than ten thousand words in an unknown tongue.” (1 Corinthians 14:5-6, 11, 19)

I had been advised to speak in an unknown tongue so the adversary would not know what my spirit was saying. There was no benefit for me when I tried it on several occasions, so I ceased doing it.

Joseph said, “Be not so curious about tongues, **do not speak in tongues except there be an interpreter present**; the ultimate design of tongues is to speak to foreigners, and if persons are very anxious to display their intelligence, let them speak to such in their own tongues. The gifts of God are all useful in their place, but when they are applied to that which God does not intend they

Conquering Spiritual Evil

prove an injury, a snare and a curse instead of a blessing.” (June 15, 1842; D.H.C. 5:32, emphasis added)

It seems to me that if the adversary can get us off “the way” in even the slightest degree, he has won. Jesus Christ is “the way.” He has given us the path to follow. I have seen many gifted people get hung up on various methods of healing, energy work, certain spiritual gifts, etc. They seem to be plunking on one key on the piano when a whole symphony awaits them. Jesus never just plunked one key; He played the entire keyboard, meaning He followed the will of His Father and did as He was directed in the moment. The adversary would like for us to be off just one degree so that we won’t arrive at our intended destination.

We should be careful about how we approach these things and do so in all humility, not being “indecorous” in any of our intentions, speech, or actions. Jesus Christ is the righteous example of proper decorum in all the various contexts of our lives. We could do no better than to follow that example.

Remember, there are two sides of the veil. We need to be sure whom we are dealing with when we hear or see the other side. Test the spirits and learn not to be deceived. Not all spirits who come to you are your friend and have your best interests at heart. There are many malevolent spirits, and they will do all in their power to divert and ultimately destroy you.

On this side we ought to bear in mind that when we are blessed with such gifts, we are to remain humble and teachable, realizing where the gifts came from in the first place. We have a right to get a witness to any revelation or information we might have received from across the veil. It is important to do so and probably will save much time and headache later on.

JESUS IS THE PATTERN

A young man gave a talk in Church a few months ago and something he said really made an impression on me. It is something I have known for a long time, but had taken no notice of. He stated simply that Jesus Christ is our pattern for everything. When we pay attention to the messages in the scriptures we see those patterns He established for us to follow. If we don't pay attention, these patterns escape us.

In relation to the events discussed in this book, there are patterns we can follow. First, Jesus and His disciples cast out demons and devils.

“And they cast out many devils, and anointed with oil many that were sick, and healed them.” (Mark 6:13)

“And as many as had devils cast out from them, and were healed of their sicknesses and their infirmities, did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the Spirit of God, and had been healed; and they did show forth signs also and did do some miracles among the people.” (3 Nephi 7:22)

Notice that He cast out devils **before** He healed in these two instances. Why did He do this? Is it something we should have taken a closer look at? Should we then also cast out devils or evil **before** we pronounce a healing? Or do we feel that we just “don't do it that way” anymore? Are we really so arrogant that we feel the Savior didn't understand the mind as we do? If we believe this in any degree, we have just ignorantly denied His atonement in which He suffered ALL things and learned how to set it right.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Therefore, He can succor us; He knows exactly what we are suffering from or going through and knows how to succor us.

In these latter times He has declared that we may do the same thing He did during His ministry. Remember, the Book of Mormon was written for us Gentiles of the latter times and not for unbelievers.

“And these signs shall follow them that believe—in my name shall they **cast out devils**; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover.” (Mormon 9:24)

“And whoso shall ask it in my name in faith, they shall **cast out devils**; they shall heal the sick; they shall cause the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear, and the dumb to speak, and the lame to walk.” (D&C 35:9)

“In my name they shall **cast out devils**; in my name they shall heal the sick; in my name they shall open the eyes of the blind, and unstop the ears of the deaf; and the tongue of the dumb shall speak.” (D&C 84:67-70)

Casting out devils was never on the agenda in priesthood meeting when I was a young Priest or even after I was made an Elder. It was never a topic of discussion in the LTM (Language Training Mission — which existed before the MTC). Before I left on my mission to Spain, I heard a few returned missionaries tell one or two stories about encountering the adversary. My only thought was that they were probably doing something wrong, and certainly I would never have to deal with such things.

About one year into my mission we had a loud knock on the door in the middle of the night, and two Elders burst through. They had run several miles over to our apartment, scared to death. The one related how he had been attacked by something he

Conquering Spiritual Evil

couldn't see. The unseen being felt very evil and had actually pushed him into the mattress. He was so out of breath, he could hardly tell us what it was like and how he was pushed so deep into it that his nose was even with the top of the mattress. We did nothing but talk about it for a few hours before going back to bed.

There was never any discussion on how to stop such things. We had never heard about shielding, and if we had, we probably would have scoffed at not only doing it, but also that there was even a need.

Secondly, as mentioned previously we should be specific about what we are casting out and from where. We normally cast out in our family prayer every night asking that all earthbound spirits, demons, devils, and any other thing of darkness be cast out of us, our rooms, our home, and off our property. Many times we will ask for angels to come and sweep all of it clean of all darkness. Then we will ask for a shield to be placed around us, our rooms, our home, and our property.

Some people have told me that they did cast out when they dedicated their home years ago and wondered why they might have to do it again. I would have thought the same thing a while back, but not now. After being around these kinds of things, I realize that keeping our homes and other places free from evil is an ongoing effort. There have been times when I have cast out many times in a day. Some days are like that, and other days are simply wonderful and full of light. (Good and evil will get equal time.) This life is a time of balance and testing.

The third pattern answers the question: Does it require priesthood to do this? Not all of the time. There are some instances where the entities are so powerful that a worthy Priesthood holder is required. But most of the time it just requires faith in our Lord, Jesus Christ, and it must be done in His name. My favorite example is our friend's young son raising his arm up and telling the demons that he can see to go away because Jesus doesn't want them there. He was not frightened because he knew

Conquering Spiritual Evil

his Savior and what happens when the name of Jesus Christ is included.

As parents, we have the right to cast out darkness from our young children, but for those older than eight, we need their permission. Agency must always be respected. Energy workers should get permission to “work” on individuals. If you have permission to work on someone, then you have permission to cast out for that individual. Much of this “work” can be done silently or in the mind if the person receiving the help would be disturbed if the process were voiced.

When a person asks for a blessing, the priesthood holder has permission to voice anything the Spirit might direct, even to cast out dark entities. Once again, Jesus is the pattern. He often cast out before blessing people.

However, if the Spirit is telling you beforehand that the person you are voicing a blessing to has a dark entity on them, it would be a good idea to shield yourself before even touching them. This is a good practice if you deal with individuals outside your family. You don’t know at that point if anything is attached to them. Be prepared and follow the Spirit. Never “go into fear” over any of these things. That will make the situation worse by attracting darkness and allowing them entrance into you.

In the book “Possibilities...Lessons from the Spirit” I shared an experience when a friend came to my home seeking a blessing. I will call him Steve. Steve, who was from a different State and was visiting his family, had called me for a blessing. When he and his wife showed up, I was sitting on the porch with Denise. She promptly got up and went inside. After we visited for a while, we went into the house to do the blessing. Denise promptly went outside the house. Denise’s behavior indicated that Steve must have had a bad devil or demon on him.

We went to the family room to voice the blessing, but I really didn’t want to approach him or touch him. I didn’t want whatever was possessing him to transfer to me. I didn’t realize how

Conquering Spiritual Evil

my “fear” would open me up to allowing the entity to do just that. But I did shield myself, laid my hands on his head, and voiced the blessing.

During the blessing my head felt like it was being shoved up and away from Steve. It was a strange experience, but by shielding myself I was not harmed.

Why do I call it “voicing a blessing” instead of “giving a blessing”? The one giving the blessing is to be **the voice for the Spirit**. We keep ourselves out of the way and let the Spirit say what God wants said. This is also patterned after Jesus. He kept Himself out of the way and did the will of the Father in all things. When He appeared to the Nephites that is one of the ways He introduced himself.

“. . . in the which I have suffered the will of
the Father in all things from the beginning.” (3
Nephi 11:11)

In our church, elders mainly learn how to voice a blessing by observing another elder or high priest voice one. I observed that the priesthood holder would talk to the person who had requested the blessing to find out information about what was wrong and what had been done. Then when the blessing was given, much of what was talked about was in the blessing. So this was the pattern that I had been taught and tried to follow. Then a few years later I was introduced to Allen Johns. He asked us to call him Poppa Johns.

Poppa Johns and his wife had served a service mission to Tonga several years earlier. After the eighteen months and while they were getting ready to leave, one of the stake presidents called him in to talk for a while.

He and his wife flew home. Meanwhile the stake president that had chatted with him called the LDS church headquarters and informed them that they wanted Poppa Johns to be their new stake

Conquering Spiritual Evil

patriarch in Tonga. The church informed him that it was not done this way, but he was so insistent that they turned “the problem” over to one of the Apostles. After the Apostle prayed about it, he said the stake president was right. Poppa Johns was to be called as the “English speaking patriarch to the ten Tonga stakes.

They called him in and asked if he would accept the call. He agreed. They told him they had run out of stake patriarch manuals and would have to send one to him. But Poppa Johns was a convert to the church. He knew the Spirit and the Lord. The following is how he prepared to voice a blessing.

The first time I went to his home to receive a blessing, he welcomed me at the door, had me sit down and handed me a paper to write my name on. Then he excused himself to “go prepare” for the blessing. Poppa Johns went to a separate room and knelt down. While on his knees he offered a prayer similar to the one below:

“Dear Heavenly Father, I approach Thee again to ask permission to voice a blessing to _____. I ask forgiveness of my imperfections and shortcomings and sins. I pray for strength, both physical and spiritual. I ask that I have the energy and strength to voice this blessing (or these blessings). I pray for an open, clear, and receptive mind, that I may receive Thy revelation from Thee, Thy mind and will relative to this person receiving the blessing. I pray for a shield about me to protect the blessing from outside interference, even Satan and his adversaries, also my own thoughts, feelings and emotions. I thank Thee for all that I have and all that I am. I ask with gratitude that I may continue to receive revelation from Thee. All this I do in the name of Jesus Christ. Amen.”

When he knew he had received permission, repented sufficiently, received strength and energy, had a receptive, clear mind, had shielded the blessing from the adversary and himself, and

Conquering Spiritual Evil

expressed gratitude, he was finally ready to voice the blessing. Whether he voiced a patriarchal or priesthood blessing, it was the same. Through him marvelous things would be revealed by the Spirit.

The Lord set the pattern for us, a true pattern I believe because He went about His work with an open mind and heart. Nephi also declared he would do the work of the Lord even though he did not know beforehand how it was to be accomplished. We call this a “not-knowing” mind. If we have already decided what to say to someone in a blessing, we have actually asked the Spirit to leave and have told the Lord that we know better than He does. Once again, Christ is the pattern. We are to remain open and voice the will of our Father in the blessing, hence “voicing a blessing.”

The reason I have discussed voicing a blessing is because it is wise to do the same when dealing with all aspects and forms of evil. Yes, there are things we can and should do to protect ourselves, but when confronted with something we know little or nothing about, it is best to go directly to the Father as Christ did. It requires revelation to follow the Spirit and do His will.

Are we afflicted in these latter days by evil entities? Absolutely we are. What are you to do if the home you purchased has poltergeist activity, or the job you work at has paranormal activity? What will you do if your niece tries to kill herself several times while claiming the voices or spirits she had tried to “send to the light” tell her she needs to kill herself in order to atone for her sins? Will you understand if your son comes home and is in a horrible mood after playing video games all night with his friend? Why does it take days for him to come back to “normal”? Would dark entities be in the games or near the games? When the game puts your child’s brain waves into a trance state, completely opening him to whatever is near, would he then receive evil attachments? What is the environment like in the home where he plays these games? Are you going in for a medical procedure which might

Conquering Spiritual Evil

open your aura to entities? The list of questions is endless. Darkness will attack us in every way possible.

Just yesterday my son wrote us from the mission field about a new contact they are teaching. “She has a lot of issues and had a hard time accepting anyone that wants to love and treat her right. She has been raped three times. She has three kids from three different dads, and to top it off she has demon problems. Whenever she starts getting closer to God, they start acting up. She’ll hear noises in her house, banging on the wall, etc. She feels evil presences. She even saw a table lift a few inches off the ground. She has been lying in bed and has had something holding her there where she couldn’t move, not even open her eyes.”

Would your missionary son know what to say to this woman? What kind of instruction could you give?

Whatever the help may be, it should always be Christ-centered, done in His name, and with His permission. He is the One we should look to in all things. He is our salvation and our redeemer. Christ understands how all of this works and why it works. I can offer advice, but He is the true teacher and our advocate to the Father. We have learned much and most likely will continue the “education.” I have no fear because I strive to walk with Him each day, and in Him there is no fear. I know He lives; I have felt Him, have heard Him.

I know that Jesus Christ is our Salvation. It is only through Him that we can overcome these things. Many have told me that He is just one of the Masters, equal to Buddha and the like. That is wrong. **There is no equal to Him.** He has shown us the way; He IS the Way. The others might be wonderful men, but they have not atoned for our sins. They have not conquered death so that all of us may have the same blessing to rise again. He is the only true Master. None of us will get back to the Father except through Him, and by obeying His commandments. That is why this book was written. By obeying Him we can then receive Him, even the Second Comforter, Who will then bring us to the Father. There is

Conquering Spiritual Evil

so much more I could say about Him, but for now I will just seal this work and express my love for my Lord Jesus Christ and our Father in Heaven. I love them and thank them for all things – especially the light that they have given me. All honor, praise, and glory be given to Them.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Chapter Thirty

CONCLUSION

What does the future hold for all of us in regards to **conquering spiritual evil**? We are told in the scriptures that Satan will be bound during the millennium, which is something we all look forward to because it will truly be Zion. (D&C 43:31; 45:55; 88:110; 84:100; Rev. 20:2) And, “. . . in that day Satan shall not have power to tempt any man.” (D&C 101:28)

There are many books, websites, and seminars about Zion and places of refuge. I have not studied them and most likely will not study them. This is why: Being prepared for the coming events is between me and the Lord, not between me and man. No man has the right to tell me that I will be going to some “city of refuge” and where it might be or what I will need to take. I feel it goes against my agency. It is up to each of us individually to find out what we are to do, where we are to go, and even IF we are to go. Somehow I doubt that Lehi went to a local “seminar” to learn that he was to leave Jerusalem and what to take. Was he nuts or what? He left all his gold and silver behind! Why would the Lord treat us differently than he did Lehi, Moses, or any other people? We must learn to rely on personal revelation.

First, it is important for us to understand what it means to be part of Zion. Zion is a wonderful place, a place of safety, peace, a city of refuge, and where the Lord dwells. (D&C 45:66) “And it shall be said among the wicked: Let us not go up to battle against Zion, for the inhabitants of Zion are terrible; wherefore we cannot stand” (D&C 45:70). The reason that the inhabitants of Zion will be “terrible” is because “the glory of the Lord shall be there, and the terror of the Lord also shall be there, insomuch that the wicked will not come unto it. . .” (D&C 45:67).

Conquering Spiritual Evil

What a great place to be, a place of peace where no wicked will dare enter. A place where Satan and his hosts will be bound and have no influence over them. Let's get our cars loaded and head off to Zion right now! Oh wait, Zion is where Enoch's Zion will come to. “. . . Then shalt thou and all thy city meet them there, and we will receive them into our bosom, and they shall see us; and we will fall upon their necks, and they shall fall upon our necks, and we will kiss each other. And there shall be mine (the Lord's) abode, and it shall be Zion, which shall come forth out of all the creations which I have made; and for the space of a thousand years the earth shall rest.” (Moses 7:63-64)

Enoch and his people are terrestrial beings. They have “entered His rest” and are holy beings because they have received Him. Also the “earth shall rest” because the Lord Jesus Christ will openly dwell here, just as he did with Enoch anciently. “And Enoch and all his people walked with God, and he dwelt in the midst of Zion. . .” (Moses 7:69)

We will have to be of like substance to be with them, to fall upon their necks, to be able to be with Jesus. It will require that we are terrestrial beings as well. **If we have not received the Lord, the Second Comforter, we will not be in Zion** because we will not have enough light, be of a high enough “frequency” to endure the presence of Terrestrial Beings, let alone the Lord. Did you notice in the above scripture where the Lord says, “and they shall see us.” Does that mean if we are of a lower frequency or lesser light, we cannot see Terrestrial Beings? Of course it does. As Alma asks in his book, “. . . have ye spiritually been born of God? Have ye received his image in your countenances? Have ye experienced this mighty change in your hearts? . . . I say unto you, can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands? I say unto you, can you look up, having the image of God engraven upon your countenances?” (Alma 5:14, 19) If we are not like Him and the people of Enoch, we cannot abide their glory, and we cannot see them. We have this myth in the church that Zion will be full of

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Mormons and “other good people.” The scriptures plainly state that the inhabitants of Zion are members of the Church of the Firstborn. It does not say they are “Mormons.”

Denver Snuffer (2010) said it quite well in his book *Removing the Condemnation*:

“When can a person know they have a part in Zion? **When the Lord Himself has made them a citizen.** When the description given below is the description of their lives, then they may know it will be well with them:

“They are they who received the testimony of Jesus, and believed on his name and were baptized after the manner of his burial, being buried in the water in his name, and this according to the commandment which he has given – That by keeping the commandments they might be washed and cleansed from all their sins, and receive the Holy Spirit by the laying on of the hands of him who is ordained and sealed unto this power; And who overcome by faith, and are sealed by the Holy Spirit of promise, which the Father sheds forth upon all those who are just and true. **They are they who are the church of the Firstborn.** They are they into whose hands the Father has given all things – They are they who are priests and kings, **who have received of his fulness, and of his glory;** And are priests of the Most High, after the order of Melchizedek, which was after the order of Enoch, which was after the order of the Only Begotten Son. Wherefore, all things are theirs, they are gods, even the sons of God – Wherefore, all things are theirs, whether life or death, or things present, or things to come, all are theirs and they are Christ’s, and Christ is God’s. And they shall overcome all things.’ (D&C 79:51-60)

These are they who have been told by the voice of God from heaven that they have

Conquering Spiritual Evil

eternal life. They are those who have obtained a hope in Christ.

When the Gospel of Christ is taught, it is always the purpose to bring people to this point. It is not Christ's Gospel when the teachings fall short of declaring this to the audience. Nephi was not trying to get you to improve your behavior or to become a good citizen. He was not attempting to make you a conservative, mainstream American. He was warning you to flee from this corrupt and failing society to a higher place where you can obtain communion with the Church of the Firstborn. A place where you join the household of God.

Zion is not and has never been the product of an institutional organization on this earth. **It is a byproduct of there being citizens of heaven living here.** Zion is the only way such persons can live with one another. First obtain a hope in Christ, and then all things will be added to you.

Why, then, should there be no ease among us? Because we have too few for the Lord to bring again Zion. Until then we do not have Zion, and our false claims to it only serve to make us at ease while there remains yet a great unfinished labor to perform.” (pp. 185-186, emphasis added)

It is absolutely necessary, then, for us to strive with all of our heart to become members of the Church of the Firstborn. This is the only way Satan will be bound. When we become that “holy place” talked of in the scriptures, we are not part of the world; we commune with those that are of the Church of the Firstborn.

What happens when our bodies experience this change to a terrestrial state and what will it be like in Zion?

“Therefore, that they **might not taste of death** there was a change wrought upon their bodies, that they might **not suffer pain nor sorrow**

Conquering Spiritual Evil

save it were for the sins of the world. Now this change was not equal to that which shall take place at the last day; but there was a change wrought upon them, insomuch that **Satan could have no power over them, that he could not tempt them;** and they were **sanctified** in the flesh, **that they were holy**, and that the **powers of the earth could not hold them.**” (3 Nephi 28:38-39)

That scripture says it all, “Satan could have no power over them, that he could not tempt them.” **“They were sanctified in the flesh, that they were holy.” That is how we will bind up Satan.** When we become sanctified and holy because of Christ, we are completely new beings, operating with His power. Nephi spoke of this time when we will live in peace, and Satan will have no power because of the people’s righteousness:

“And he gathereth his children from the four quarters of the earth; and he numbereth his sheep, and **they know him;** and there shall be one fold and one shepherd; and he shall feed his sheep, and in him they shall find pasture. And **because of the righteousness of his people, Satan has no power;** wherefore, he cannot be loosed for the space of many years; for he hath no power over the hearts of the people, for they dwell in righteousness, and the Holy One of Israel reigneth.” (1 Nephi 22:25-26)

We will “know Him,” meaning that we receive Him -- even the Second Comforter, are redeemed by Him, and stand in a “holy place” by becoming holy ourselves through Him. This is the greatest way we have to bind Satan. There are not many prepared in this manner yet.

Paul said, “know ye not that ye are the temple of God.” (1 Cor. 3:16) Our bodies are designed to be a temple where God and His Son can and will come to dwell if we are righteous. We become

Conquering Spiritual Evil

holy because He is with us and cleanses us every whit through His atonement. “. . . **For I am able to make you holy**, and your sins are forgiven you.” (D&C 60:7, emphasis added) Denver Snuffer talks about when Moses was told to remove his shoes from his feet. “. . . put off thy shoes from off thy feet, for the place whereon thou standest is holy ground.” (Exodus 3:5) He said we might want to look at it differently. It wasn’t the ground that was “holy,” it was Moses that was holy. The Lord told him the place where **thou** standest is holy. The Lord made him holy because He forgave his sins, and Moses received the Second Comforter.

When we become that “holy place” where God and Christ can dwell, a true temple of the Lord, then we have achieved a place where all hell can rage around us and we will be at complete peace. Jesus showed us this when He fell asleep in the ship while the sea raged around Him. He was at complete peace while the disciples feared for their lives. (Mark 4:37-41) This is the kind of peace He offers those who enter His rest. This is important because in the upcoming days all hell will rage around us. If we are not at peace, we might do what His disciples did in the ship – panic. Then we may not make it.

In the meantime, the Lord needs us to achieve this state so that we will then be able to help at a completely different level with the battle that is being waged now. He will especially need those who have received the higher or patriarchal priesthood. It will require men with this priesthood power which is the sealing power given to Nephi that allowed him “power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people. Behold I give unto you power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven; and thus shall ye have power among this people. And thus, if ye shall say unto this temple it shall be rent in twain, it shall be done. And if ye shall say unto this mountain, Be thou cast down and become smooth, it shall be done. And behold, if ye shall say

Conquering Spiritual Evil

that God shall smite this people, it shall come to pass.” (Heleman 10:6-10)

Without this priesthood and its accompanying power we cannot become a Zion people:

“For God having sworn unto Enoch and unto his seed with an oath by himself; that every one being ordained after this order and calling should have power, by faith, to break mountains, to divide seas, to dry up waters, to turn them out of their course; To put at defiance the armies of nations, to divide the earth, to break every band, to stand in the presence of God; to do all things according to his will, according to his command, **subdue principalities and powers**; and this by the will of the Son of God which was from before the foundation of the world.” (JST-Gen. 14:30-31, emphasis added)

This is the priesthood that is required to bring back Zion to this world because it is the authority required to subdue Satan and his hosts. This is a very important doctrine to understand and beyond the scope of this book. Denver Snuffer has treated this subject in two of his books, *Beloved Enos* and *Passing the Heavenly Gift*. I highly recommend reading them both. This doctrine must be understood in our day and only those who understand it and seek to receive the Lord, thereby receiving this priesthood, will stand in that day and be invited to build Zion with the remnant. It is also imperative that we receive the Second Comforter. A manual has been written by Br. Snuffer for this. It is called *The Second Comforter, Conversing with the Lord Through the Veil*.

This vital higher priesthood comes in only one way: “And it was delivered unto men by the calling of his own voice, according to his own will, unto as many as believed on his name.” (JST-Gen. 14:29) It comes directly from the Lord to those that qualify to

Conquering Spiritual Evil

enter His presence, and not from any man. Those who receive it have power to do what has been mentioned above. When one receives this priesthood, it does NOT give him authority to preside in the Lord's church or to start his own. The Lord's house is a house of order. But such individuals will always do the Lord's will, no matter the consequences.

Ultimately Satan and his hosts will be subdued by righteous people willing to follow the Lord in all things. This means receiving the higher priesthood and then using that priesthood to subdue and conquer spiritual evil.

It is my prayer that we will be standing side by side in this great work that is yet to be done. It would be great to stand side by side now in doing His work. In the meanwhile, the Lord has given us many tools that we can use to help us with this battle now. We can help eliminate darkness from our homes, families, and our lives, making it less of a burden until it can be completely subdued and we live in millennial peace. We can educate our families and friends who are open to these things. We must follow the Spirit in all of this. We must ask in humble prayer if these things are true. I have had and still have wonderful experiences opening up to me and my family. You can do the same.

Yes, we are required to contemplate the deepest abyss as Joseph stated. Brigham Young understood the same thing: "We are obliged to **know** and **understand** [good and evil], one as well as the other, in order to prepare us for the day that is coming, and for our exaltation. . . We must know the evil in order to know the good. There must be opposition in all things." (JD 4:373, emphasis added)

We will encounter evil in this life, for it is part of the learning and growing process we all agreed to. As I've mentioned several times in this book, the more light we receive, the more dark we will experience. Lehi taught this and Nephi recorded it in 2 Nephi chapter 2, verses 11-16. I've quoted parts of this in previous

Conquering Spiritual Evil

chapters, but I feel it is important to end with Lehi and Nephi's words to us concerning opposition:

“For it must needs be, that there is an opposition in all things. If not so, my first-born in the wilderness, righteousness could not be brought to pass, neither wickedness, neither holiness nor misery, neither good or bad. Wherefore, all things must needs be a compound in one; wherefore, if it should be one body it must needs remain as dead, having no life neither death, nor corruption nor incorruption, happiness nor misery, neither sense nor insensibility.

Wherefore, it must needs have been created for a thing of naught; wherefore there would have been no purpose in the end of its creation. Wherefore, this thing must needs destroy the wisdom of God and his eternal purposes, and also the power, and the mercy, and the justice of God.

And if ye shall say there is no law, ye shall also say there is no sin. If ye shall say there is no sin, ye shall also say there is no righteousness. And if there be no righteousness there be no happiness. And if there be no righteousness nor happiness there be no punishment nor misery. And if these things are not there is no God. And if there is no God we are not, neither the earth; for there could have been no creation of things, neither to act not to be acted upon; wherefore, all things must have vanished away.

And now, my sons, I speak unto you these things for you profit and learning; for there is a God, and he hath created all things, both the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are, both things to act and things to be acted upon.

And to bring about his eternal purposes in the end of man, after he had created our first parents, and the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air, and in fine, all things which are created, it

Conquering Spiritual Evil

must needs be that there was an opposition; even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life; the one being sweet and the other bitter.

Wherefore, the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself. Wherefore, man could not act for himself save it should be that he was enticed by the one or the other.”

Opposition is always equal to, and balancing the truth.

That, too, is part of the process. Do not fear it; just be prepared in the Lord for whatever He sends your way. May God bless us all.

Appendix I

Chapter fourteen of this book discusses the concept of sending demons and devils to the light where three categories of evil entities are discussed. These three categories have different status and therefore are governed by different laws. The first category is earthbound spirits and they are completely redeemable. These earthbound spirits are benign, confused, “stuck”, and of an evil nature. Those of an evil nature do work for the adversary though they reside on this plane of existence we commonly call mortality. They are men and women, like us, but now deceased, and still occupy their “second estate.”

The second category is the one third part that went with Lucifer and are called devils. They are not redeemable because they are perdition – those who knowingly and willingly rebelled and fought against the greatest light in this Kingdom, our Father and His Son, Jesus Christ. They had the opportunity for redemption and made the deliberate and fully informed decision to reject it. They did not keep their first estate.

The third category consists of those evil entities who are created by Satan and known as demons. Since they are creations of Satan, made from his essence, they are not redeemable. Such a creature is usually created for a singular purpose and is trained to do that one thing. (Though there can be exceptions). There is not much intelligence in such a being and no potential for growth in light or going to the light of Christ.

There needs to be another category of spirits that reside in hell. They were included in the first category in chapter fourteen as earthbound spirits, but they really ought to be discussed outside of that area since they really aren’t earthbound. They do not appear here on earth, but are bound below still in their “second estate.” They can choose to repent and return to Christ and the light, but also can choose to join those from the “first estate” who rebelled. When they join this rebellion, they are the fallen angels who are opposed to God, and make war against the Saints. When they do this, they return to fight here, joining with the rebellious. Since they remain in their “second estate,” it is possible – although improbable

Conquering Spiritual Evil

— for them to repent. They are spirits of our brothers and sisters who have lived here in mortality and have merited being sent to hell immediately upon their death. These spirits can be redeemed, but most likely can't be sent directly to the light.

Brigham Young mentioned these wicked spirits in the Journal of Discourses:

“I know very well that, whether we are active or not, the invisible spirits are active. And every person who desires and strives to be a Saint is closely watched by fallen spirits that came here when Lucifer fell, and **by the spirits of wicked persons who have been here in tabernacles and departed them, but who are still under the control of the prince of the power of the air.** Those spirits are never idle; they are watching every person who wishes to do right, and are continually prompting them to do wrong. This makes it necessary for us to be continually on our guard—makes this probation a continual warfare.” (7: 239, emphasis added)

In between the spiritual realms of light and dark there is an area of “gray” where both dark and light beings can go. It is known as the “Plane of Repentance”. Before we really get into it, I want to give some background to these dark spirits.

“And the glory of the Telesstial is one, even as the glory of the stars is one; for as one star differs from another star in glory, even so differs one from another in glory in the telesstial world; for these are they who are of Paul, and of Apollos, and of Cephas. These are they who say they are of one and some of another—some of Christ and some of John, and some of Moses, and some of Elias, and some of Esaias, and some of Isaiah, and some of Enoch; but received not the gospel, neither the testimony of Jesus, neither the prophets, neither the everlasting covenant...These are they who are liars,

Conquering Spiritual Evil

and sorcerers, and adulterers, and whoremongers, and whosoever loves and makes a lie. These are they who suffer the wrath of God on earth. These are they who suffer the vengeance of eternal fire. **These are they who are cast down to hell and suffer the wrath of Almighty God,** until the fulness of times, when Christ shall have subdued all enemies under his feet, and shall have perfected his work.” (D&C 76:98-106, emphasis added)

Those of us that receive not the gospel, testimony of Jesus, gossipers, harden our hearts, willingly disobey Father after receiving light and knowledge, atheists, evil people, Satanists, those that love to lie and make a lie, those that knowingly murder, and the like “are cast down to hell” and “are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell. (Alma 12:11) These are those who “work wickedness and abomination before him.” (1 Nephi 14:4) There are many other scriptures that tell of the requirements to be sent to hell after we die.

As I was contemplating these things and wondering about the qualifications of the chains of hell and how the adversary “captures” us I was told it is always our choice where we go, heaven or hell. We can choose eternal life or we can “choose eternal death, according to the will of the flesh and the evil which is therein, which giveth the **spirit of the devil power to captivate, to bring you down to hell,** that he may reign over you in his own kingdom.” (2 Nephi 2:29, emphasis added) I was shown people that had spiritual fetters on their ankles and the chain that came off of these fetters went down to hell. This is one of the ways the devil has power to captivate us and take us to hell.

“It is an iron yoke, it is a strong band; they are the very handcuffs, and chains, and shackles, and **fetters of hell.**” (D&C 123:8 emphasis added)

The next time my gifted daughter, Denise, was over to the house I asked her if she saw the spiritual fetters on people’s ankles

Conquering Spiritual Evil

that secured them to the adversary and hell. A fetter will have a chain or cord attached that goes down to hell.

“Yes, I see them” she said.

I asked another friend who has the gift of spiritual sight and she confirmed they are very real and there are many people who have them. “When they transition from mortality the demons in hell are able to just pull them down. The fetters make sure they can’t get away.”

Once in hell they have the choice to be tortured or become “recruits” of Satan. (Even if they become a “recruit” they will still be tortured for failures, thoughts, and actions). After choosing to become a recruit they are then trained in what they will be required to do to torment and take down those of us still on the mortal plane. After they are trained they are called “Legion” and are placed into battle while being governed by Satan’s generals in the spiritual warfare taking place.

We have experienced generational healing sessions in which individual’s ancestors have been redeemed from hell during the session. Of course it is our Lord, Jesus Christ, who offers redemption and makes this available to this group that resides in hell. They are taken by the angels to either a spiritual hospital or to the Plane of Repentance spoken of earlier.

The Plane of Repentance is between the area of light and dark. Both sides have access to those individuals in this area and can influence them. It is always their choice which direction they go. Every effort is made to help them into the light. They cannot be **commanded** to go into the light as that is against our Father’s law of agency, because it is ALWAYS our choice.

This is a group that does reside in hell and does work for the adversary but can still be redeemed. In this mortal existence those candidates for hell can be seen because they have not repented of their sins and those with spiritual sight can see the fetters and chains that literally bind them to Satan and hell. Once they are transitioned they will be pulled immediately down.

References

- Andrew, A., and Sherrill, John and Elizabeth. (1967, 2001). *God's Smuggler*. Grand Rapids, MI: Chosen Books.
- Bruce, R. (2002). *Practical Psychic Self-Defense*. Charlottesville, VA: Hampton Roads.
- Burdick, A. (2004). Review of *A Man After His Own Heart* by Charles Siebert. *Discover*, 5, 25.
- Busche, F. E. (2004). *Yearning For The Living God*. Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book.
- Cannon, G. Q., ed. (1882). *Early Scenes in Church History*. Salt Lake City: Juvenile Instructor Office.
- Ehat, Andrew F., and Cook, Lyndon W. (Eds. and Comps.). (1980). *The Words of Joseph Smith: The Contemporary Accounts of the Nauvoo Discourses of the Prophet Joseph*. Provo, Utah: Religious Studies Center, Brigham Young University.
- Firmage, E. B. (1976, January). Elder Hugh B. Brown, 1883-1975: In Memoriam. *Ensign*, 6.
- Fiore, E. (1988). *The Unquiet Dead, A Psychologist Treats Spirit Possession*. New York, NY: Ballantine Books.
- Hagin, K. E. (1986). *The Believer's Authority*. Tulsa, OK: RHEMA Bible Church.
- Hansen, L. T. (1963). *He walked the Americas*. Amherst, WI: Amherst Press.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Hatch, T. G. (2008). Visions Manifestations and Miracles of the Restoration. Orem, UT: Granite Publishing.

Huntington, O. B. (1878-1900). History of the Life of Oliver B. Huntington, Written by Himself. Typescript copy. Special Collections, Harold B. Lee Library, Brigham Young University.

Kimball, S. F. (1918). Life of David P. Kimball and Other Sketches. Salt Lake City: The Deseret News.

Lipton, B. H. (2008). The Biology of Belief: Unleashing the Power of Consciousness, Matter & Miracles. Carlsbad, CA: Hay House.

Lusseyran, J. (2006). And There Was Light, Sandpoint, ID: Morning Light Press.

Mendenhall, D. (2006). In His Arms, Experiences with the Other Side. Mt. Pleasant, UT: Publishing Hope.

Millennial Star. (1852). No. 18, June 26.

Modi, S. (1997). Remarkable Healings, A Psychiatrist Discovers Unsuspected Roots of Mental and Physical Illness. Charlottesville, VA: Hampton Roads.

Morris, R. M. (1995, June). Sherrie's Shield of Faith. Ensign.

Nibley, H. (2008). Eloquent Witness: Nibley on Himself, Others, and the Temple. Salt Lake City, UT: Deseret Book Company.

Poulton, R. L. (no year given). Understanding Spiritual Evil in the Context of Psychotherapy. Bountiful, UT: Self Published Paper.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Pulsipher, J. (1827-1891). *Autobiography of John Pulsipher*. Special Collections. Harold B. Lee Library, Brigham Young University.

Pratt, P. P. (1965). *Key to the Science of Theology*. Salt Lake City: Deseret Book.

Ritchie, G. G. (1978). *Return from Tomorrow*. Old Tappan, NJ: Spire Books.

Snow, E. R. (1996). *Biography and Family Record of Lorenzo Snow*. Salt Lake City: Deseret News, 1884. 53-54; Gibbons, Francis M. (1996). *Dynamic Disciples, Prophets of God: Life Stories of the Presidents of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints*. Salt Lake City: Deseret Book.

Snuffer, D. C. (2007). *Eighteen Verses, A Discussion of the Book of Mormon*. Salt Lake City, UT: Millcreek Press.

Snuffer, D. C. (2008). *The Second Comforter: Conversing With the Lord Through the Veil*. Salt Lake City, UT: Millcreek Press.

Snuffer, D. C. (2010). *Removing the Condemnation*. Salt Lake City, UT: Millcreek Press.

Thomas, M. C. (2010). *Light in the Wilderness: Explorations in the Spiritual Life*. Salt Lake City, UT: Digital Legend Press.

Whitney, O. F. (1992). *Life of Heber C. Kimball*. Collector's Edition. Salt Lake City: Bookcraft.

Woodruff, W. (1969). *The Discourses of Wilford Woodruff*, edited by G. Homer Durham. Salt Lake City: Bookcraft.

Conquering Spiritual Evil

Whitmer, D. (1887). *An Address to All Believers in Christ*,
Richmond, MO.

Yorgason, B. M. (1995). *One Tattered Angel*. Draper, UT: Breeze
Publications.

The things of God are of deep import and time and experience and careful and ponderous and solemn thought can only find them out.

Thy mind O man if thou wilt lead a soul unto salvation must search into and contemplate the darkest abyss and the broad expanse of eternity, thou must commune with God.

Joseph Smith (DHC 3:295)

Men and Women never could be prepared to be judged and condemned out of their own mouths . . . without the power both of God and the devil. We are obliged to know and understand them, one as well as the other, in order to prepare us for the day that is coming, and for our exaltation. Some of you may think that this is a curious principle, but it's true. . . We must know the evil in order to know the good. *There must needs be opposition in all things.*

Brigham Young (JD 4:373)